



Avactis Shopping Cart Manual

Table of Contents

Chapter I	Welcome to Avactis 2.0	6
Chapter II	Getting Started Guide	11
Chapter III	Avactis Shopping Cart Installation	15
Chapter IV	Avactis Shopping Cart Storefront	22
1	Understanding Avactis Tags.....	23
2	Overview of templates structure.....	24
3	CSS Customization.....	25
4	Integration of storefront to existing design.....	26
5	Creating Custom Designs for Categories and Products.....	27
6	Avactis Tags Library.....	29
Info Tags	.....	32
Category Info Tags	.....	32
Product Info Tags	.....	34
Shopping Cart Info Tags	.....	37
CMS Info Tags	.....	38
Store Owner Info Tags	.....	39
Customer Info Tags	.....	40
Manufacturer Info Tags	.....	43
Block Tags	.....	44
Store Block Tags	.....	44
Product Block Tags	.....	46
CMS Block Tags	.....	48
Account Block Tags	.....	49
Miscellaneous Tags	.....	52
Chapter V	Avactis Shopping Cart Admin Area	54
1	Catalog.....	56
Manage Products	.....	59
Product Options	.....	61
Product Options General Guidelines	.....	62
Add or Edit Product Option	.....	72
Product Options Inventory Tracking	.....	78
Product Options Combinations	.....	80
Add New Products	.....	82
Edit Products	.....	85
Move Products	.....	88
Copy Products	.....	89
Delete Products	.....	90
Sort Products	.....	91
Digital Products/E-Goods	.....	92
Product Detailed Images	.....	99
Products in Multicategories	.....	103

Quantity Discounts.....	103
Related Products.....	105
Product Attributes Descriptions.....	107
Manage Product Types	111
Edit Product Type.....	113
Large Text Attribute.....	116
Single Line Attribute.....	118
Manage Categories	119
Add Categories.....	122
Edit Categories.....	123
Category Attributes Descriptions.....	124
Bestsellers.....	126
Featured Products.....	129
Product Export	131
Google Base (Froogle) Export	134
Manufacturers	135
Product Import	137
Product Search	144
2 Reviews.....	145
Reviews managment Guide	147
3 Orders.....	150
Order Details	152
4 Marketing.....	156
Global Discounts	157
Manage Coupons and Promo Codes	158
Manage Newsletters	162
Manage Subscriptions	164
Affiliates / Manage transaction tracking	167
Gift Certificates	168
5 Content Management System.....	170
Default content blocks structure	176
6 Admin.....	178
Admin Members	179
Advanced Settings & Configuration	181
Reset Reports	193
System Logs	194
Backup & Restore	195
Setting up backup and restore scripts (Linux).....	197
Backup automation (Linux).....	202
Restore From Backup (Linux).....	207
Application/Server Info	210
Clear Cache	211
License	211
HTTPS Settings	212
Mail settings	216
7 Store Settings.....	216
Taxes	219
Tax Settings.....	225
Edit Tax Rate.....	226
Zip Code Based Tax Rates.....	228
General Settings	231
Store Owner's Profile	238

Payment Methods	239
Shipping Methods	241
E-mail Notifications	251
Digital Products/E-Goods	256
Product & Category Images	257
Search Engine Optimized URLs	259
Quickbooks	261
Checkout Form Editor	264
Customer Account Settings	268
Credit Card List Editor	271
Countries	272
Languages	273
Label Editor	274
States	275
Date and Time Format	276
Number Format	277
Weight Unit	278
Store Currencies and Exchange Rates	278
Currency format	281
8 Customers.....	281
9 Reports.....	285
10 Page Manager.....	312
11 Look & Feel.....	317

Chapter VI FAQs

324

1 Installation Problems.....	324
2 How to Move an Avactis Store	327
3 How to Setup Taxes?.....	330
Canada	331
UK/European Union	333
USA/International	336

Chapter



I

1 Welcome to Avactis 2.0

What is Avactis Shopping Cart?

Avactis Shopping Cart is a software package that allows you to open an online store on the Internet.



Avactis[®] 2.0
SHOPPING CART & ECOMMERCE CMS

Compared to other similar software, **Avactis** offers a unique advantage of very simple integration of the online store into your existing site.

For many similar systems, integration of an online store is a big problem that requires a lot of time and effort. We eliminated this labor-intensive task by using special tags.

As a result we can offer our customers a very convenient tool for the quick launch of an online business.

An electronic store comprises two parts - a client side (the [Storefront](#)) and an administrator side ([Admin Area](#)).

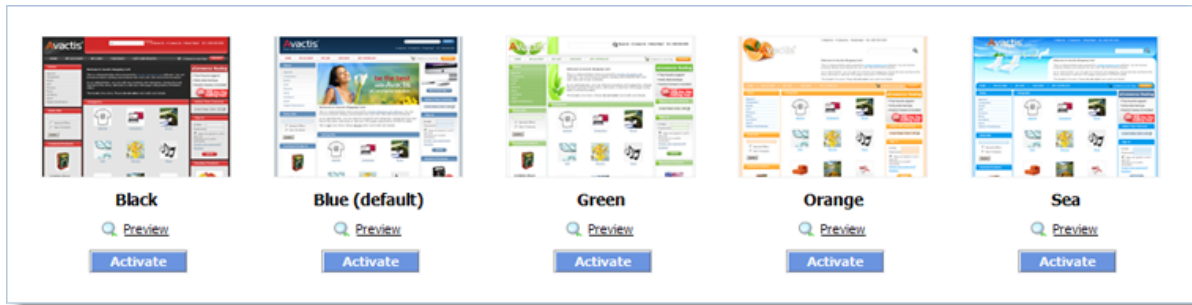
The client side (the storefront) is your website as seen by visitors. The **Avactis's** client side allows the visitors to your site to browse products in the online store, select products and put them into the shopping cart, as in a conventional supermarket, and then pay for the selected products using a credit card or other payment options.

The **Avactis's** administrator side allows you to stock up the store with products, as a conventional warehouse, maintain the inventory, track orders and payments.

New features in Avactis Shopping Cart 2.0

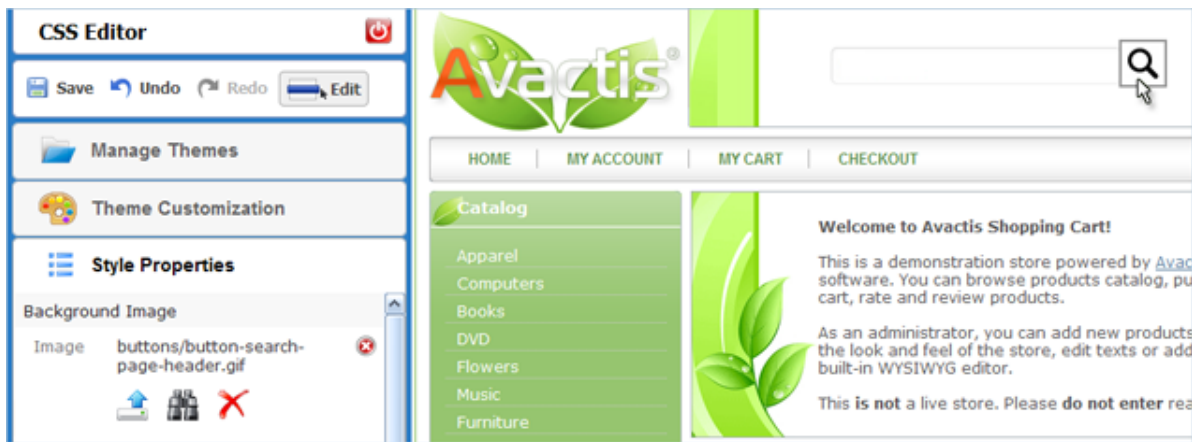
[Built-in design themes](#)

You can select any installed Avactis template for your storefront:



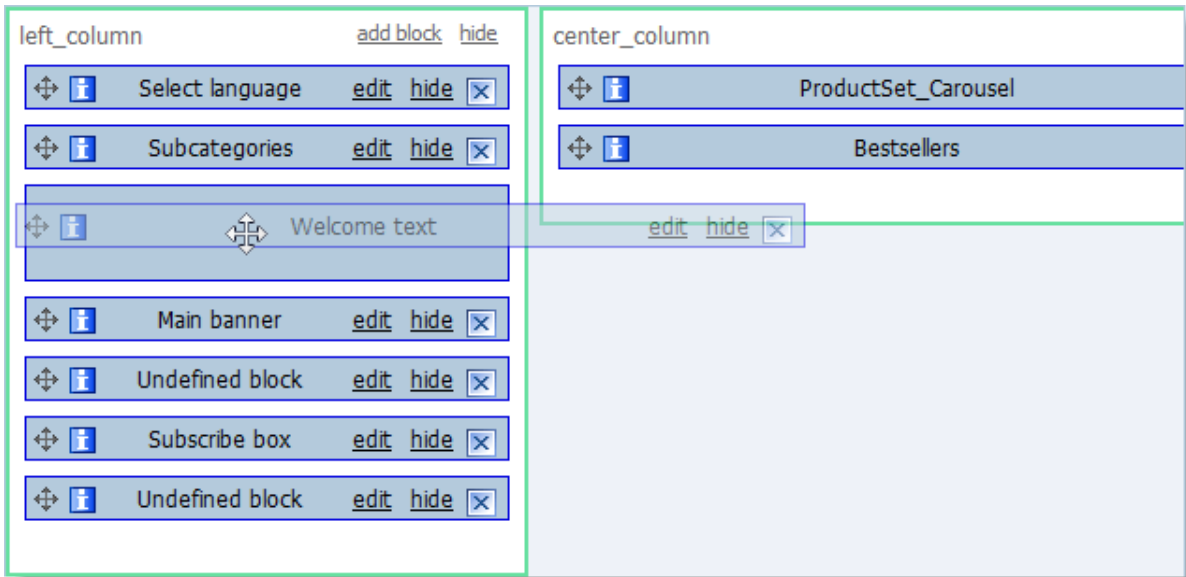
Visual CSS editor

You can modify the design using the built-in CSS editor:



Page Manager

The Page Manager allows a store administrator to move page elements in drag-n-drop mode:



Who may benefit from Avactis Shopping Cart?

Avactis is primarily targeted at companies planning to carry out their business on the Internet. Moreover, it is equally suitable both for companies selling clothes, cosmetics, footwear, furniture, jewelry, etc. and for companies offering digital products, such as software, music, games, e-books and e-documents.

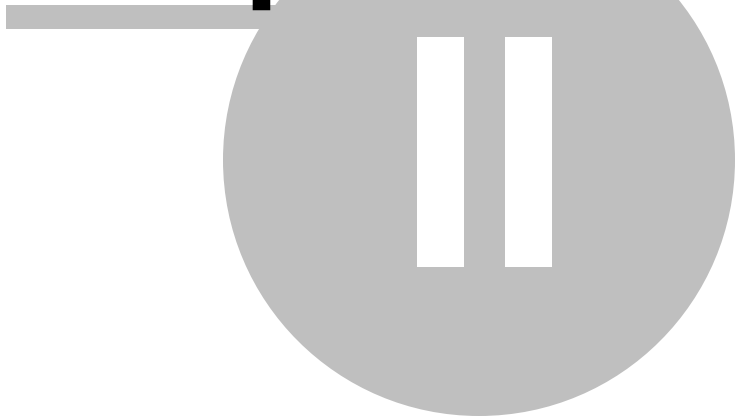
Advantages of Avactis Shopping Cart

One of the major advantages of Avactis, compared to other e-commerce solutions, is fast and easy integration of an online store into an existing website without any programmer's knowledge or skills. In addition, the complexity of design does not matter. It's equally easy to integrate Avactis into websites with simple design and into highly structured websites with complicated design and Flash intros. For this purpose we use a unique tag-based technology, which greatly facilitates the integration process.

Unlike other shopping cart software, **Avactis** is integrated into your website, instead of integrating your website into the online store.

This version of the manual was created: 12.22.2010

Chapter



2 Getting Started Guide



Now that you've got the shopping cart software, you're probably anxious to get started and set it up. Please follow the instructions below to configure your shopping cart and start doing business online.

After downloading the shopping cart software on your computer, install the shopping cart according to the Avactis Shopping Cart [Installation guide](#). Then, set up your shopping cart by following the steps described here. The recommended sequence is outlined below, although you can customize it by configuring certain settings at a later time.

- 1. Go to **Store Settings >> Location/Taxes/Localization >> Countries and States** and select the countries and states (provinces) to which your store will ship. If your store will not ship to some countries/states, exclude them from the list. Visitors from these locations will be able to browse your online store and products, but will not be able to place orders.**
- 2. Go to **Store Settings >> Location/Taxes/Localization >> Taxes** and define tax settings according to the "How to Set up Taxes?" section. If your state tax rates are based on the shipping address within the state, make sure to first upload the appropriate ZIP-based tax rates by going to **Store Settings >> Location/Taxes/Localization >> ZIP Code Based Tax Rates**.**
- 3. Go to **Store Settings >> Location/Taxes/Localization >> Date/Time Format, Number Format, Weight Unit** and use these settings to customize date, time, number and weight formats according to your local standards.**
- 4. Go to **Store Settings >> Currency Settings >> Currency Format and Store Currencies** and define the main store currency, as well as additional currencies used to display product prices. To define the exchange rates, go to **Store Settings >> Currency Settings >> Store Currencies**.**
- 5. Go to **Store Settings >> Store Configuration >> General Settings** and set your store time**

using the **Adjust store time** setting. All other **General Settings** may be customized later.

6. Go to **Store Settings >> Store Configuration >> Store Owner's Profile** and define your store name and contact information. These settings should be configured at the very beginning, because they will be used in receiving e-mail notifications of purchases, order status changes and so on.

7. Go to **Store Settings >> Store Configuration >> Payment Methods** and define the payment methods you plan to accept in your online store. Payment methods may be changed or added at any time. To pre-test your store, you can temporarily use the **Cash on Delivery** payment method. After your store set-up is finished, you can deactivate this method and activate one or more other payment methods.

8. Go to **Store Settings >> Store Configuration >> Shipping Settings/Methods** and set up the shipping methods you plan to offer. For some shipping methods (UPS, USPS, FedEx and others), you will need to open an account with that delivery service provider in order to enable online shipping cost calculation. To pre-test your store, you can temporarily use the **Custom Shipping Rates** or the **Standard Shipping Rates** shipping method. After your store configuration is complete, you can deactivate these shipping methods and activate other ones instead.

9. Go to **Store Settings >> Store Configuration >> E-mail Notifications** and configure the list of events that trigger e-mail notifications sent out to you and your customers, including changes in order status, payment status, etc. The system offers you a lot of flexibility in this regard, including creating your own rules for e-mail notifications.

10. If you plan to sell computer software, music or other downloadable products in your store, configure the download settings by going to **Store Settings >> Store Configuration >> Digital Products/E-Goods**.

11. Additional settings can be configured in the [Admin](#) section if necessary.

12. Create or import a product catalog. Refer to the [Product Import](#) section for help.

13. Make some test payments and verify that tax amounts and shipping costs are calculated correctly.

14. To customize the design of your storefront, refer to the Storefront Creation and Integration section.

- To manage the way your product URLs look, go to **Store Settings >> Store Configuration >> Search Engine Optimized URLs**.

- To change the product image settings, go to **Store Settings >> Store Configuration >> Detailed Product Images**.

15. The **Shopping cart system** has options for placing orders without opening an account (Quick Checkout), after opening an account, or both. These options can be customized by going to **Store Settings >> Checkout and Customer Account Settings >>Customer Account Settings**.

16. After you've set up your online store, you should delete any test products and reset your reports. Reports can be reset by going to **Admin >> Administration >>Reset Reports**.

17. If you plan to accept offline credit card payments, then, to activate the payment module **Manual/Offline Credit Card Processing**, you need to enable **https** support for the following sections at **Admin >> HTTPS Settings**:

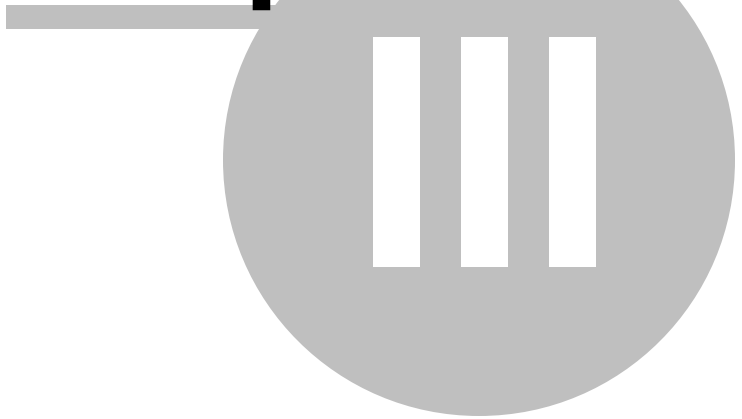
- Payment & Shipping Modules Settings
- Checkout
- Orders & Customers

18. You should configure the automatic data backup settings for keeping your data safe. This is done at **Admin >> Backup & Restore**.

IMPORTANT!

It is critical to set up your online store to be automatically backed up at least once a day. We also recommend downloading backup files to your PC at regular time intervals to prevent loss of data in the event of server failure. If a server failure occurs, you will be able to restore the online store from the backup files saved to your PC.

Chapter



3 Avactis Shopping Cart Installation

[Preparing to install Avactis Shopping Cart software](#)

[Installation steps](#)

[Step 1: License Agreement](#)

[Step 2: Database Setup and Admin Area Access Details](#)

[Step 3: Installation Progress](#)

[Step 4: Finish](#)

[Troubleshooting](#)

Preparing to install Avactis Shopping Cart software

After downloading the archive Avactis.X.Y.Z.type.zip from the Downloads page, follow these steps to get the online shop running:

- Unzip the file on your PC;
- Copy install.dat, install.php и index.php files to the Web server and place them in the destination folder (for example, "store") in which you want to install Avactis Shopping Cart software;
- Using your favorite browser, navigate to the following URL: www.your_site.com/store/install.php (where "www.your_site.com" is your Web server's address and "store" is the folder that contains the installation files)

Then follow the instructions on the screen.

Installation steps

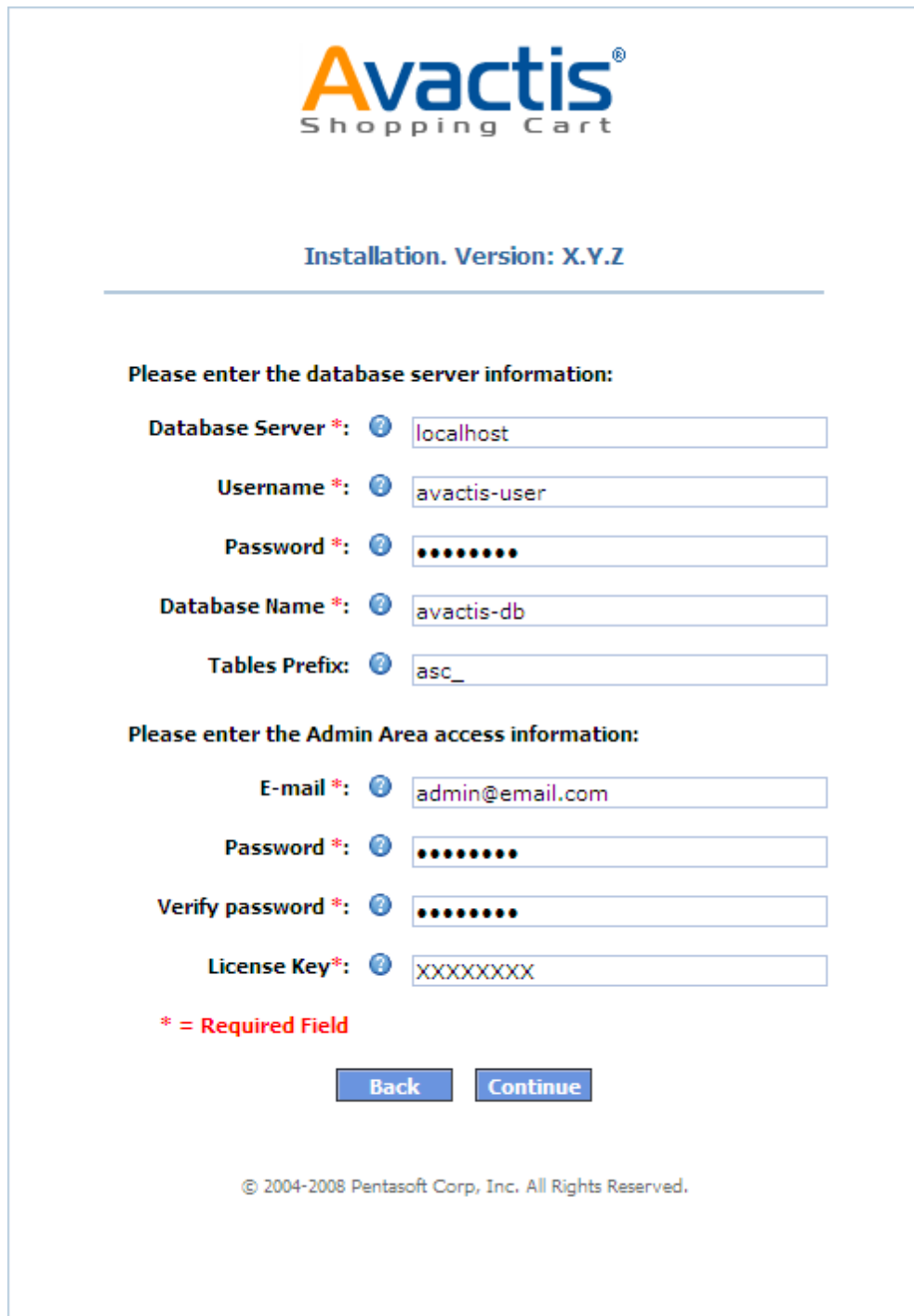
Step 1: License Agreement

The terms of the License Agreement can be found on the first page. Please read them very carefully and select the checkbox only if you agree to the terms and conditions of this License Agreement. Then click Continue.

Step 2: Database Setup and Admin Area Access Details.

A number of checks will be performed to ensure that Avactis can be installed on the Web host. If installation is possible, on the next page you will be able to enter the database server information; if not, the page will list the reason(s) for interrupting the installation process. For detailed information about errors and troubleshooting help, please see [Appendix 1](#).

Please provide the necessary information about your database server and to log in to the Admin Area.



The image shows a web-based installation form for Avactis Shopping Cart. At the top is the Avactis logo. Below it, the text 'Installation. Version: X.Y.Z' is displayed. The form is divided into two main sections: 'Please enter the database server information:' and 'Please enter the Admin Area access information:'. Each section contains several input fields with labels and asterisks indicating required fields. The database section includes fields for Database Server (localhost), Username (avactis-user), Password (masked with dots), Database Name (avactis-db), and Tables Prefix (asc_). The Admin Area section includes fields for E-mail (admin@email.com), Password (masked), Verify password (masked), and License Key (XXXXXXXX). A legend indicates that an asterisk denotes a required field. At the bottom of the form are 'Back' and 'Continue' buttons, and a copyright notice for Pentasoft Corp.

Avactis[®]
Shopping Cart

Installation. Version: X.Y.Z

Please enter the database server information:

Database Server *:

Username *:

Password *:

Database Name *:

Tables Prefix:

Please enter the Admin Area access information:

E-mail *:

Password *:

Verify password *:

License Key*:

* = Required Field

© 2004-2008 Pentasoft Corp, Inc. All Rights Reserved.

To proceed with the installation, you will need to complete the following input fields:

- **Database Server** : The name of the database server. The commonly used name is localhost.

This information is provided by your administrator or hosting provider.

- **Username** : The username for accessing the database. This information is provided by your administrator or hosting provider.
- **Password**: The password for accessing the database. This information is provided by your administrator or hosting provider.
- **Database Name**: The name of the database. You can enter the name of the existing database. Double check that the tables prefix name is unique by referring to the Tables Prefix field. Alternatively, you can enter a new name. A new database will be created. In this case, the choice of Tables Prefix is not significant.
- **Tables Prefix**: The prefix to be added to the names of Avactis database tables. The use of a prefix is recommended when reinstalling over an existing database. If no unique prefix is specified, the database may be accidentally deleted. The default Tables Prefix is asc_.
- **E-mail**: Installation information will be sent to this e-mail address, and it will be used to log in to the Admin Area.
- **Password**: Password to log in to the Admin Area. If you want, you can change your password by going to Admin >> Admin Members >> Edit Admin Details.
- **Verify Password**: Please repeat the password entered above.
- **License Key**: The key assigned for the domain on which you are installing. This field does not display when a trial version is installed.

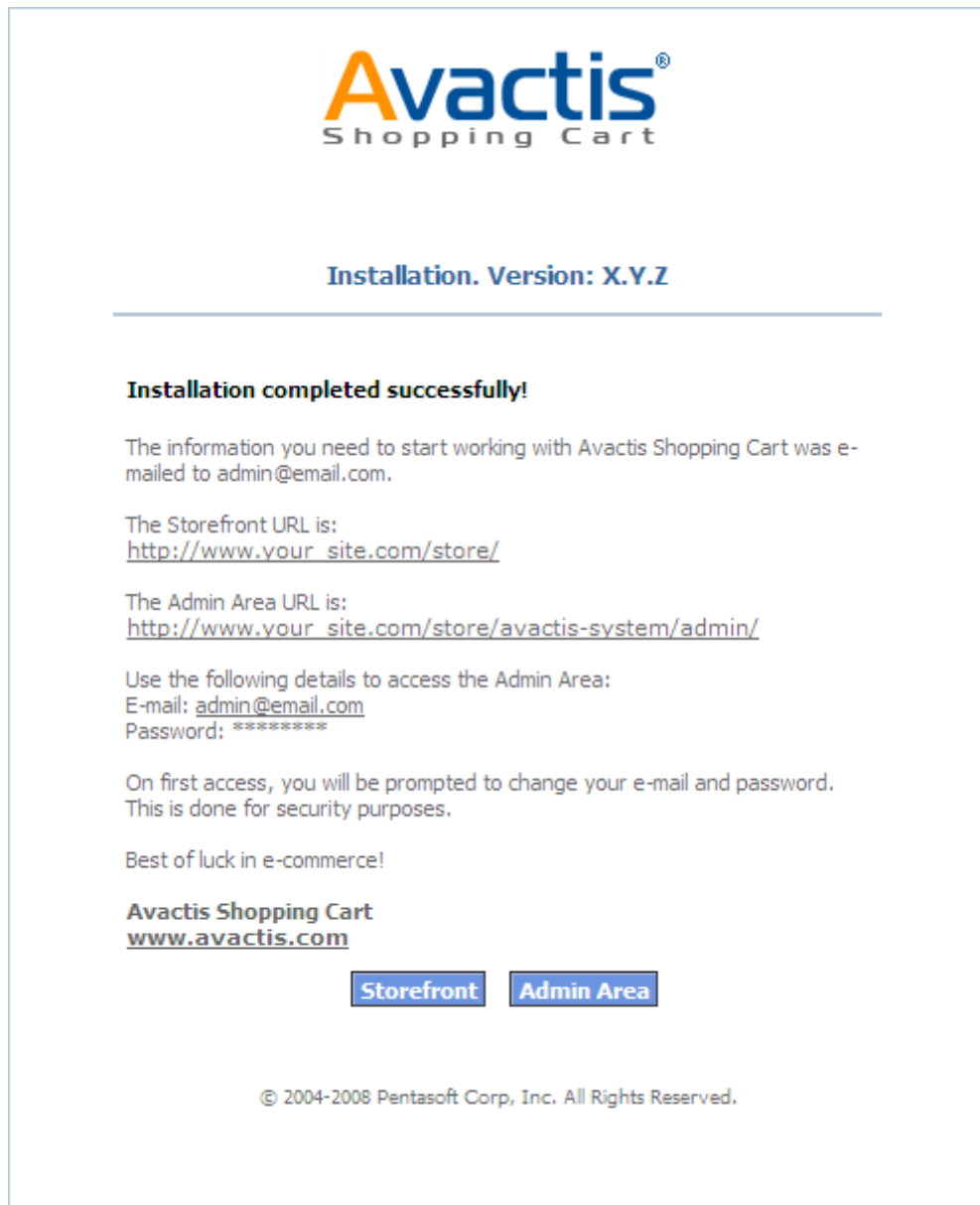
Please enter all fields. Make sure to specify an existing database. After completing the form, click Continue.

Step 3: Installation Progress

The installation process includes unpacking files, creating the database structure, and importing data. Please wait until installation is complete. If the progress bar does not move for a long while, contact [Customer Support](#).

Step 4: Finish

After the installation has finished, you will see a page informing you of successful installation. It will also provide the details for accessing the online storefront and the Admin Area. The same is sent to the e-mail address you provided.



The Storefront and the Admin Area can be accessed at the addresses given below:

The Storefront URL is: www.your_site.com/store/

The Admin Area URL is: www.your_site.com/store/Avactis-system/admin/ (where "www.your_site.com" is your Web server's address and "store" is the name of the folder containing the installation files)

After the installation has finished, the files install.dat and install.php are automatically deleted for system security purposes.

Please verify that they have been deleted. If they have not, please manually delete the files.

Troubleshooting

The following is a list of possible reasons you are unable to install Avactis Shopping Cart software:

Reason	Solution
You do not have permission to write to the folder that contains the installation files	Write access permission is required to install Avactis Shopping Cart software. For assistance, please contact your system administrator.
The PHP version installed on the Web host is earlier than 4.3.0	PHP version 4.3.0 or later is required to install Avactis Shopping Cart software. For assistance, please contact your system administrator.
Insufficient disk space available on the Web host	A minimum of 25 Mb of available disk space is required to install Avactis Shopping Cart software.
"Safe_mode" directive is enabled	To achieve normal system operation, you must set "safe_mode = Off" in php.ini.
PHP support for MySQL is missing	You should enable MySQL support for PHP. For Windows platforms, uncomment the string "extension=php_mysql.dll". For Unix platforms, uncomment the string "extension=php_mysql.so". For additional assistance, please contact your system administrator or hosting provider.
Your server's limitation of RAM allocated for running scripts is less than 64MB	The amount of memory available to PHP processes should be 64Mb. Modify the value of the directive "memory_limit" to 64M in your file "php.ini". For additional assistance, please contact your system administrator or hosting provider.
You do not have permission to write to the file init.php	Write access permission for this file is required. For assistance, please contact your system administrator.

Chapter

IV

4 Avactis Shopping Cart Storefront



Avactis Shopping Cart is designed to easily integrate an online store into an existing website, no matter how complex the site might be.

This section describes the modification of an Avactis online storefront and its integration into an existing website.

The document is designed to help webmasters, web designers and web developers who have a basic knowledge of HTML.

PHP programming knowledge is **not required** to develop and integrate an Avactis online storefront.

If you don't have time to develop a new storefront and integrate it into your site, you are welcome to use the standard online ecommerce store design, which is provided as part of Avactis Shopping Cart and is available after installation of the software.

[Understanding Avactis Tags](#)

[Overview of templates structure](#)

[CSS Customization](#)

[Integration of storefront to existing design](#)

[Creating Custom Designs for Categories and Products](#)

[Avactis Tags Library](#)

See also:

[Default CMS blocks structure](#)

[Content Management System \(CMS\)](#)

4.1 Understanding Avactis Tags

Avactis Shopping Cart is designed to easily integrate an online store into an existing website, no matter how complex the site might be. Using the special tags mechanism you are able to organize previously entered information on the online storefront just the way you want.

Avactis tags are *php functions* which display product attributes and even entire blocks of an online storefront.

For example, you can display the product name for product with ID=7 by including the tag `<?php ProductName(7); ?>` on any website page; the name of the product will then appear on the page (No programming skills are necessary!).

If you include the tag `<?php NavigationBar(); ?>`, the Navigation Bar block will be displayed on the page (Navigation Bar is an online storefront component that lets you navigate between the categories of a catalog).

Using this method for displaying product attributes and online storefront components (also called *store blocks*) you can easily customize the appearance of your storefront to any design. Product descriptions and attributes (text, images, etc) can be rendered in any font, color or size and can be placed anywhere on the site.

Ecommerce storefront components can be placed in any location and in any arrangement you like. In addition, you can use templates (located in a special folder) to change the design of any internet storefront component.

Note

The first line of any php page where Avactis tags are present must contain the following call to the shopping cart software initializer specifying the absolute software installation path: `<?php include('init.php'); ?>`

Avactis tags are divided into three groups:

- **Info Tags** display pieces of information about various online store components, e.g. product or category name
- **Store Block Tags** display large portions of online store webpages, using Info Tags and templates
- **Local Tags** are used only inside templates and are auxiliary tags. They are not listed in the library.

Writing the Tags

Throughout this manual, all tags are written in the largest possible form: `<?php SomeTag(); ?>`. This notation is supported by all servers. You will most likely achieve equal results writing the tags in a short form: `<?SomeTag()?>`. However, availability of this short form depends on hosting server setup: some servers disallow it.

Getting Avactis Tag Values

You can prepend any Avactis tag with **get** or **getVal** prefix to get the tag value instead of displaying it.

getSomeTag() returns a formatted value (the one that would be output), while **getValSomeTag()** returns a bare value as-is.

Example: If `ProductSalePrice()` tag outputs "\$10.00", then:

- **getProductSalePrice()** function returns (doesn't output!) "**\$10.00**" and this string value can be used in an expression:

```
<?php if( getProductSalePrice()=='$0.00' ) echo( 'FREE!!!' ); ?>
```

- **getValProductSalePrice()** function returns "**10**" (unformatted value), and it can be used as a number in an expression:

```
<?php if( getValProductListPrice() > 0 ) echo( 'You save: $' . ( getValProductListPrice() ) ); ?>
```

4.2 Overview of templates structure

Avactis is designed to make storefront customization as simple as possible.

You can use [Page manager](#) and built-in [CSS editor](#) to modify design.

The Page Manager allows a store administrator to move page elements in drag-n-drop mode.

The Look & Feel page allows a store administrator to activate a design template and modify the selected template design using the built-in visual CSS editor.

Avactis templates structure:

Main templates of the system theme are:

Avactis-themes\system\pages\templates\page.template.tpl.html

Avactis-themes\system\pages\templates\part.header.tpl.html

Avactis-themes\system\pages\templates\part.footer.tpl.html

It is recommended to use **Page manager** for templates structure modification.

The design of Avactis tags may also be customized using templates or CMS.

To modify the `<?php MiniCart(); ?>` tag or any other tag from [Avactis Tag Library](#), you should to modify its templates.

All templates of Tags are located in the **Avactis-themes\system** folder.

For example Mini Cart templates are located here: **Avactis-themes\system\catalog\shopping-cart\minicart**

Note

You can switch the default theme of Avactis to another one on the [Look & Feel](#) page

4.3 CSS Customization

Cascading Style Sheets (CSS) is a simple mechanism for adding style (e.g. fonts, colors) to Web pages.

The main Cascading Style Sheet file (CSS) of the default store design is **/Avactis-themes/system/css/styles.css**

Note:

You can modify theme design using built-in [CSS editor](#).

The content of the main CSS is divided into several CSS files:

CSS files for default elements and layout:

```
@import url("common.default.css");
```

```
@import url("common.box.css");
```

```
@import url("layout.css");
```

```
@import url("style.buttons.css");
```

CSS files for shopping cart pages and elements design:

```
@import url("style.menu.css");
@import url("style.search.css");
@import url("style.navigation_bar.css");
@import url("style.product_list.css");
@import url("style.product_list_sorter.css");
@import url("style.product_info.css");
@import url("style.shoppingcart.css");
@import url("style.checkout.css");
@import url("style.myaccount.css");
@import url("style.subscribe.css");
@import url("style.shipping_calculator.css");
@import url("style.subcategories.css");
```

IMPORTANT!

It is not recommended to use the following postfixes in the names of the CSS classes: *_db*, *_ql*, *_image*, *_html*, *_dom*, *_iframe*, *_ajax*, *_script*. For example: *product_image*. These postfixes are reserved for AJAX extensions.

4.4 Integration of storefront to existing design

You can use default design themes of Avactis, modify them, create new themes or **integrate Avactis tags into any existing design or PHP file** by using Avactis Tag Technology.

Note

The full list of Avactis Tags is available in the [Avactis Tag Library](#)

The integration is very simple and consists of 3 simple steps:

1

Lets imagine that you already have a ready-to-use site or HTML page, and want to add shopping cart elements to it, e.g. product search, minicart and so on.

First, you should rename your HTML page to PHP, e.g. **my_site.html** should be renamed to **my_site.php**

2

Second, include the initialization file of Avactis in this file by using the following code:

```
<?php include('init.php'); ?>
```



And finally, add the Avactis Tags to the appropriate places on the page, for example:

```
<?php SearchForm(); ?>
<?php MiniCart(); ?>
```

You can even use this method to show content articles from [Avactis CMS](#), for example:

```
<?php CMSPageContent('my_cms_page'); ?>
```

4.5 Creating Custom Designs for Categories and Products

With Avactis Shopping Cart you can create unique custom designs for pages displaying individual products or lists of products and/or subcategories, for any category of an ecommerce storefront.

Below you will find some examples showing how to create custom designs for a selected product and for the list of products and subcategories of a selected category.

Custom Category Page Design

When you select a product category in the catalog, the list of products and subcategories of that category is displayed. Avactis Shopping Cart allows you to create any custom design for the list of products and subcategories, for any given category.

To do this, in the file **Avactis-layouts/storefront-layout.ini**, in section [ProductList], use the directive **Categories { }** and specify category ID(s) in the braces.

Here is an example of using the directive Categories { }:

```
[ProductList]
Default = product_list.php
Categories{3+} = product_list_dvd.php
Categories{5,8,12} = product_list_books.php
Categories{7} = product_list_electronics_new.php
Categories{7+} = product_list_electronics.php
```

The statement in line "**Categories {3+}**" specifies that the layout **product_list_dvd.php** will be used for the root category with ID=3 and all its subcategories.

The statement in line "**Categories {5,8,12}**" specifies that the layout **product_list_books.php**

will be used for root categories with IDs equal to 5, 8 or 12.

Both "**Categories {7}**" and "**Categories {7+}**" are present in the file at the same time. This means that **product_list_electronics_new.php** will be used for the root category with ID=7, but for all its subcategories the specified layout is **product_list_electronics.php**. If the string **Categories {7}** wasn't there, then the instruction for **Categories {7+}** would be applied to the root category with ID=7.

For all other categories the layout is specified as **product_list.php**.

Custom Product Page Design

Example of section **[ProductInfo]**:

```
Default = product_info.php
Categories{3} = product-info-dvd.php
Categories{4,6} = product-info-CD.php
Categories{7+} = product-info-electronics.php
Categories{9} = product-info-books_new.php
Categories{9+} = product-info-books.php

Products{1} = product-id-1.php
Products{2,5,8} = product-id-2-5-8.php
```

The statement in line **Categories {3}** specifies that the product info layout **product_info_dvd.php** will be used for all products in the root category with ID=3.

The statement in line **Categories{4,6}** specifies that the product info layout **product-info-CD.php** will be used for all products in the root categories with ID=4 or 6.

The statement in line **Categories{7+}** specifies that the product info layout **product-info-electronics.php** will be used for all products in the root category with ID=7 and all its subcategories.

The lines **Categories{9}** and **Categories{9+}** are included in the file at the same time. This means that the product info layout **product-info-books_new.php** will be used for all products in the root category with ID=9, but all products in its subcategories will be displayed according to the layout **product-info-books.php**.

The statement in line **Products{1}** specifies that the product info layout **product-id-1.php** will be used for the product with ID=1. That is, this particular product will be displayed according to a distinctive detailed product description page.

The statement in line **Products{2,5,8}** specifies that that the product info layout **product-id-**

2-5-8.php will be used for the products with ID=2, 5 or 8. These three products will be displayed according to a distinctive detailed product description page.

4.6 Avactis Tags Library

Avactis tags are divided into three groups:

- **Info Tags** display pieces of information about various online store components
- **Store Block Tags** display large portions of online store webpages, using Info Tags and templates
- **Local Tags** are used only inside templates and are auxiliary tags. They are not listed in the library.

This section lists all the Avactis Tags currently available. Please see below for a general description of each tag type.

Info Tags

Avactis **info tags** are the most basic kind of tag. Info tags display product attributes, category attributes, links and so on. They usually display only one link, attribute or image at a time. For example, info tag `<?php ProductName(); ?>` displays just the product name, while `<?php CategoryName(); ?>` displays just the category name.

Info tags are global tags: they can be added to any PHP site page. A page is allowed to have any number of info tags, for any number of products.

The figure below provides an example of how some info tags are used.



Avactis Shopping Cart provides many individual info tags. If you find that the predefined products attributes do not adequately describe a particular type of product, in the Admin Area you can create custom attributes to suit a certain product type. After a new attribute is created, a new unique info tag is assigned to it automatically. You can use these new info tags the same way as system info tags.

The full list of store block tags and their descriptions is given in [Avactis Tag Library](#).

Store Block Tags

Store block tags are versatile tools for building an online store quickly and easily. The difference between store block tags and info tags is that a store block tag calls a template (an html page) where any number of tags can be used, including both block tags and info tags. By adjusting a block tag's settings you can use the same tag with different products, on any site page. There is no need to create a separate block tag for every product in the catalog.

Examples of store block tags, `<?php NavigationBar(); ?>` and `<?php ProductInfo(); ?>`.

The NavigationBar tag displays the Navigation Bar which lets customers navigate the catalog and its categories. During navigation, the appearance of the current category can be highlighted so as to stand out from all other categories.

For instance, in the example below, the currently selected category, Anniversary, has a distinctive text color and background color. All of these properties are user-defined via the

templates specified for the **NavigationBar** tag.

Templates are usual HTML pages which let you modify the design of the corresponding storefront component navigate – in this case the Navigation Bar – in a number of ways (e.g. by adding new fonts, pictures and so forth).

Store block tag **ProductInfo** invokes the template which displays product information (see Figure below). The template for this store block tag contains several info tags which display the product name, its description, price and so on. By modifying the template for the **ProductInfo** tag you can change and improve your website's design to your requirements.

The full list of store block tags and their descriptions is given in [Avactis Tag Library](#).

The screenshot displays a storefront for an Avactis T-Shirt. On the left, a navigation bar is shown with a red box around it, labeled with the code `<?php NavigationBar(); ?>`. The main content area, also outlined in red, is labeled with `<?php ProductInfo(); ?>` at the bottom. The product page features a blue t-shirt image, a sale price of \$15.99 (down from \$17.00), and a 10% discount badge. The product description lists features like 'Fitted', 'Short length sleeves', and '93% Cotton, 7% Elastane'. Below the description, there are input fields for 'Quantity' (set to 1) and 'Size' (set to S), and an 'ADD TO CART' button.

Avactis Local Tags

Info tags and store block tags can be used on any website page – they are both global tags. With these tags you can customize the look and feel of your site's design.

A different type of tag is a local tag. Local tags are used only inside templates and are auxiliary tags. They are not listed in the library.

Examples of local tags:

```
<?php Local_Field(); ?>
```

```
<?php Local_FieldValue(); ?>
```

Local tags are an integral part of templates and should not be deleted or changed. They ensure a reliable connection between templates and the online store software.

4.6.1 Info Tags

4.6.1.1 Category Info Tags

Avactis Info Tags are the most basic kind of tag. Info tags display product attributes, category attributes, links and so on. They usually display only one link, attribute or image at a time.

All info-tags mentioned below are "global" tags. This means they can be called from anywhere on the website: any site page or any template of any block-tag.

All of the info tags currently available in Avactis Shopping Cart software are listed below:

Category Info Tag	Category Info Tag Description
<code><?php CategoryID() ?></code>	The category ID.
<code><?php CategoryName(); ?></code>	The category name.
<code><?php CategoryDescription(); ?></code>	The category description.
<code><?php CategoryLargeImage(); ?></code>	The full <code></code> HTML tag including image size and alternate text.
<code><?php CategoryLargeImageSrc(); ?></code>	Only the image source path. The tag can be inserted into an <code></code> HTML tag.
<code><?php CategoryLargeImageWidth(); ?></code>	The image width in pixels. The tag can be inserted into an <code></code> HTML tag.
<code><?php CategoryLargeImageHeight(); ?></code>	The image height in pixels. The tag can be inserted into an <code></code> HTML tag.
<code><?php CategorySmallImage(); ?></code>	The full <code></code> HTML tag including image size and alternate text.
<code><?php CategorySmallImageSrc(); ?></code>	Only the image source path. The tag can be inserted into an <code></code> HTML

	tag.
<code><?php CategorySmallImageWidth(); ?></code>	The image width in pixels. The tag can be inserted into an <code></code> HTML tag.
<code><?php CategorySmallImageHeight(); ?></code>	The image height in pixels. The tag can be inserted into an <code></code> HTML tag.
<code><?php CategoryImageAltText(); ?></code>	The alternate text for the image. The tag can be inserted into an <code></code> HTML tag.
<code><?php CategoryPageTitle(); ?></code>	The text specified for Page Title on the category creation page. The tag can be inserted into a <code><title></code> HTML tag to specify the title of a site page.
<code><?php CategoryMetaKeywords(); ?></code>	The text specified for Meta Keywords on the category creation page. The tag can be inserted into a <code><meta></code> HTML tag of a site page.
<code><?php CategoryMetaDescription(); ?></code>	The text specified for Meta Description on the category creation page. The tag can be inserted into a <code><meta></code> HTML tag of a site page.
<code><?php CategoryProductsNumber(); ?></code>	The number of products in a category.
<code><?php CategoryProductsNumberRecursively(); ?></code>	The number of products in a category and all its subcategories.
<code><?php CategorySubcategoriesNumber(); ?></code>	The number of subcategories in a category.
<code><?php CategoryLink(); ?></code>	The category's URL. The tag outputs a URL which links to the product list page that is specified in section [ProductList] in the file storefront-

layout.ini. The tag can be used in HTML tag <A> for creating a hyperlink. Clicking this link brings up the list of products in the selected category.

4.6.1.2 Product Info Tags

Product Info Tags

Product Info Tag	Product Info Tag Description
<?php ProductID(); ?>	The product ID.
<?php ProductTypeID(); ?>	The product type ID for the specified product.
<?php ProductTypeName(); ?>	The product type name for the specified product.
<?php ProductUpdated(); ?>	The date of the last product update.
<?php ProductAdded(); ?>	The date the product was added to the catalog.
<?php ProductName(); ?>	The product name.
<?php ProductSalePrice(); ?>	The product sale price. The product is sold to customers at this price.
<?php ProductListPrice(); ?>	The product list price. The list price is not used for sales and purchases.
<?php ProductQuantityInStock(); ?>	The stock quantity for the product.
<?php ProductSKU(); ?>	The product SKU.
<?php ProductMinQuantity(); ?>	The minimum allowed quantity of the product that can be purchased.
<?php ProductLowStockLevel(); ?>	The minimum allowed product quantity in stock. Once the product stock level reaches this figure, notifications of low stock levels are e-mailed to the administrator on

	a regular basis.
<?php ProductAvailable(); ?>	"Yes" if the product is available for purchase, otherwise "No".
<?php ProductTaxClass(); ?>	The product tax class name.
<?php ProductLargeImage(); ?>	The full HTML tag including image size and alternate text.
<?php ProductLargeImageSrc(); ?>	Only the image source path. The tag can be inserted into an HTML tag.
<?php ProductLargeImageWidth(); ?>	The image width in pixels. The tag can be inserted into an HTML tag.
<?php ProductLargeImageHeight(); ?>	The image height in pixels. The tag can be inserted into an HTML tag.
<?php ProductSmallImage(); ?>	The full HTML tag including image size and alternate text.
<?php ProductSmallImageSrc(); ?>	Only the image source path. The tag can be inserted into an HTML tag.
<?php ProductSmallImageWidth(); ?>	The image width in pixels. The tag can be inserted into an HTML tag.
<?php ProductSmallImageHeight(); ?>	The image height in pixels. The tag can be inserted into an tag.
<?php ProductImageAltText(); ?>	The alternate text for the image. The tag can be inserted into an HTML tag.
<?php ProductShortDescription(); ?>	The short product description.
<?php ProductDetailedDescription(); ?>	The full product description.
<?php ProductPerItemShippingCost(); ?>	The shipping cost of the product (per item shipping

	cost), which is specified on the product creation page.
<?php ProductPerItemHandlingCost()	The handling cost of the product (per item handling cost), which is specified on the product creation page.
<?php ProductWeight(); ?>	The weight of the product.
<?php ProductFreeShipping(); ?>	Defines whether the product is free shipping.
<?php ProductPageTitle(); ?>	The text specified for Page Title on the product creation page. The tag can be inserted into a <title> HTML tag to specify the title of a site page.
<?php ProductMetaKeywords(); ?>	The text specified for Meta Keywords on the product creation page. The tag can be inserted into a <meta> HTML tag of a site page.
<?php ProductMetaDescription(); ?>	The text specified for Meta Description on the product creation page. The tag can be inserted into a <meta> HTML tag of a site page.
<?php ProductInfoLink(); ?>	Outputs the URL of the detailed product description page. This URL can be used in HTML tag <A> for creating a link. Clicking this URL brings up a page with the descriptions of products. The page to which the URL links is specified in section [ProductInfo] in the configuration file storefront-layout.ini.
<?php ProductBuyLink(); ?>	The URL of the page displaying the customer's current shopping cart. The product is added to the cart. This URL can be used in HTML tag <A> for creating a link to customer's current shopping cart and simultaneously adding the product to the cart. The page to which the URL links is specified in section [Cart] in the configuration file storefront-layout.ini.
<?php ProductCategoryLink(); ?>	Outputs the URL of the list of products in the category of the current product. Can be used in HTML tag <A> for creating a link. The page to which the URL links is

	<p>specified in section [ProductList] in the layout file (storefront-layout.ini). The look of the URL is affected by SEO URL settings.</p> <p>If you wish to output a link to the current category when the current product is unknown, use the <?php CategoryLink(); ?> tag instead.</p>
<?php Product*Custom (); ?>	<p>The value of a custom attribute. Replace the asterisk * with the name of the custom attribute. Custom attributes are created within the product type.</p> <p>For example if you have the product with the ISBN custom attribute, use the <?php ProductIsbnCustom (); ?></p>
<?php ProductOptionsWarnings(); ?>	Displays any warning messages regarding product options, for example, when the selected option combination is not available.
<?php ProductReviewsNumber(); ?>	The number of reviews for the current product.
<?php ProductReviewsAverageRating(); ?>	The average numeric rating value (the sum of all customer rates) for the current product.
<?php ProductReviewsLink(); ?>	The URL to the customer review page for the current product.
<?php ProductRating(); ?>	The average rating value (the sum of all customer rates) for the current product.

See also [Product Block Tags](#)

4.6.1.3 Shopping Cart Info Tags

Shopping Cart Info Tags

Shopping Cart Info Tag	Shopping Cart Info Tag Description
<?php ShoppingCartProductsQuantity(); ?>	Products quantity in the shopping cart, that is, the total number of product items

	in the cart.
<?php ShoppingCartSubtotal(); ?>	Shopping cart subtotal amount. The cost of the shopping cart calculated using the Product Options Sale Price modifiers and the product quantities.
<?php ShoppingCartGlobalDiscount(); ?>	Global discount amount. This amount will be subtracted from Shopping Cart Subtotal. Global Discounts can be defined on Marketing -> Global Discounts.
<?php ShoppingCartPromoCodeDiscount(); ?>	Promo code discount amount. This amount will be subtracted from Shopping Cart Subtotal after the customer enters a coupon number. Promo Codes can be defined on Marketing -> Promo Codes.
<?php ShoppingCartDiscountedSubtotal(); ?>	Shopping cart discounted subtotal amount. This sum of Global Discount and Promo Code Discount will be subtracted from Shopping Cart Subtotal.

4.6.1.4 CMS Info Tags

CMS Info Tags

CMS Info Tag	CMS Info Tag Description
<?php CMSPageName (); ?>	Name of the CMS page.
<?php CMSPageContent(); ?>	Content of the CMS page.
<?php CMSPageParentPage(); ?>	ID number of the parent page.
<?php CMSPageTitle(); ?>	SEO title of the CMS page.

<code><?php CMSPageMetaDescription(); ?></code>	SEO meta description of the CMS page.
<code><?php CMSPageMetaKeywords(); ?></code>	SEO meta keywords of the CMS page.
<code><?php CMSPageLink(); ?></code>	Link to the CMS page.

See also [CMS Block Tags](#)

4.6.1.5 Store Owner Info Tags

Store Owner Info Tags

Store Owner Info Tag	Store Owner Info Tag Description
<code><?php StoreOwnerName(); ?></code>	Displays the name of the online store. This setting is defined on the page Store Settings -> Store Owner's Profile, in the Name field.
<code><?php StoreOwnerWebsite(); ?></code>	Displays the URL of the online store. This setting is defined on the page Store Settings -> Store Owner's Profile, in the Web site field.
<code><?php StoreOwnerPhones(); ?></code>	The store owner's phone number. This setting is defined on the page Store Settings-> Store Owner's Profile.
<code><?php StoreOwnerFax(); ?></code>	The store owner's fax number. This setting is defined on the page Store Settings -> Store Owner's Profile.
<code><?php StoreOwnerStreetLine1(); ?></code>	The first line of the store owner's postal address. This setting is defined on the page Store Settings -> Store Owner's Profile.
<code><?php StoreOwnerStreetLine2(); ?></code>	The second line of the store owner's postal address. This setting is defined

	on the page Store Settings -> Store Owner's Profile.
<code><?php StoreOwnerCity(); ?></code>	The store owner's city. This setting is defined on the page Store Settings -> Store Owner's Profile.
<code><?php StoreOwnerState(); ?></code>	The store owner's state. This setting is defined on the page Store Settings -> Store Owner's Profile.
<code><?php StoreOwnerPostcode(); ?></code>	The store owner's zip code/postal code. This setting is defined on the page Store Settings -> Store Owner's Profile.
<code><?php StoreOwnerCountry(); ?></code>	The store owner's country. This setting is defined on the page Store Settings -> Store Owner's Profile.
<code><?php StoreOwnerEmail(); ?></code>	The store owner's e-mail address. This setting is defined on the page Store Settings -> Store Owner's Profile.
<code><?php StoreOwnerSiteAdministratorEmail(); ?></code>	The store administrator's e-mail address. This setting is defined on the page Store Settings -> Store Owner's Profile.
<code><?php StoreOwnerOrdersDepartmentEmail(); ?></code>	The e-mail address of the orders department. This setting is defined on the page Store Settings -> Store Owner's Profile.

4.6.1.6 Customer Info Tags

Customer Info Tags

Customer Info Tag	Customer Info Tag Description
-------------------	-------------------------------

<?php CustomerAccountName(); ?>	Displays a string that serves as the customer account name. For accounts created automatically during Quick Checkout, it consists of the word "Anonymous" and an unique number. For accounts manually created by customers, it matches the customer's e-mail address.
<?php CustomerID(); ?>	Displays the unique ID that the customer account has in the system.
<?php CustomerStatus(); ?>	Displays the current customer status. Can be either "Registered", "Not Activated", "Password reset" or "Quick Checkout".
<?php CustomerOrdersQuantity(); ?>	Displays the total number of orders placed by the customer.
<?php CustomerOrdersTotalAmount(); ?>	Displays the total cost of all orders placed in the store by the customer.
<?php CustomerOrdersTotalFullyPaidAmount(); ?>	Displays the total amount of money that the customer has already paid for his orders at the store.
<?php CustomerSignOutURL(); ?>	The URL address that the currently signed in customer can use to sign out of the store.
<?php CustomerFirstName(); ?> <?php CustomerLastName(); ?> <?php CustomerEmail(); ?> <?php CustomerPhone(); ?> <?php CustomerCountry(); ?>	<p>These tags display various pieces of customer's personal information.</p> <p>If the customer has manually created the account without providing any personal information, these tags display nothing.</p>

<pre><?php CustomerZipCode(); ?></pre> <pre><?php CustomerState(); ?></pre> <pre><?php CustomerCity(); ?></pre> <pre><?php CustomerStreetLine1(); ?></pre> <pre><?php CustomerStreetLine2(); ?></pre>	
<pre><?php CustomerBillingFirstName(); ?></pre> <pre><?php CustomerBillingLastName(); ?></pre> <pre><?php CustomerBillingEmail(); ?></pre> <pre><?php CustomerBillingPhone(); ?></pre> <pre><?php CustomerBillingCountry(); ?></pre> <pre><?php CustomerBillingZipCode(); ?></pre> <pre><?php CustomerBillingState(); ?></pre> <pre><?php CustomerBillingCity(); ?></pre> <pre><?php CustomerBillingStreetLine1(); ?></pre> <pre><?php CustomerBillingStreetLine2(); ?></pre>	<p>These tags display various pieces of customer's billing information.</p> <p>If the account has been created automatically, these tags display values supplied by the customer during the first checkout procedure.</p> <p>If the customer has manually created the account without providing any billing information, these tags display nothing.</p>
<pre><?php CustomerShippingFirstName(); ?></pre> <pre><?php CustomerShippingLastName(); ?></pre> <pre><?php CustomerShippingEmail(); ?></pre> <pre><?php CustomerShippingPhone(); ?></pre> <pre><?php CustomerShippingCountry(); ?></pre> <pre><?php CustomerShippingZipCode(); ?></pre> <pre><?php CustomerShippingState(); ?></pre> <pre><?php CustomerShippingCity(); ?></pre>	<p>These tags display various pieces of customer's shipping information.</p> <p>If the account has been created automatically, these tags display values supplied by the customer during the first checkout procedure.</p> <p>If the customer has manually created the account without providing any shipping information, these tags display nothing.</p>

<code><?php CustomerShippingStreetLine1(); ?></code>	
<code><?php CustomerShippingStreetLine2(); ?></code>	

4.6.1.7 Manufacturer Info Tags

Manufacturer Info Tags

These tags display information about product manufacturers defined in online store.

Manufacturer Info Tag	Manufacturer Info Tag Description
<code><?php ManufacturerName(); ?></code>	Displays the manufacturer name.
<code><?php ManufacturerID(); ?></code>	Displays the unique ID that the manufacturer has in the system.
<code><?php ManufacturerStatus(); ?></code>	Displays the current status of the manufacturer.
<code><?php ManufacturerDescription(); ?></code>	Displays the the manufacturer description.
<code><?php ManufacturerURL(); ?></code>	Displays the web address of the manufacturer's website.
<code><?php ManufacturerThumbnail(); ?></code>	Displays a complete <code></code> element that loads the thumbnail of the image associated with the manufacturer.
<code><?php ManufacturerThumbnailSrc(); ?></code> <code><?php ManufacturerThumbnailHeight(); ?></code> <code><?php ManufacturerThumbnailWidth(); ?></code> <code><?php ManufacturerThumbnailAltText(); ?></code>	These tags display various parts of the thumbnail <code></code> element above. They can be used to construct a custom <code></code> element or for any other purpose.
<code><?php ManufacturerImage(); ?></code>	Displays a complete <code></code> element that loads the full image associated with the manufacturer.

<pre><?php ManufacturerImageSrc(); ?></pre> <pre><?php ManufacturerImageHeight(); ?></pre> <pre><?php ManufacturerImageWidth(); ?></pre> <pre><?php ManufacturerImageAltText(); ?></pre>	<p>These tags display various parts of the element above. They can be used to construct a custom element or for any other purpose.</p>
--	--

4.6.2 Block Tags

4.6.2.1 Store Block Tags

Store Block Tags are versatile tools for building an online store quickly and easily. Store blocks display online storefront components - **Navigation Bar, Product Info, Shopping Cart**, etc, which are all integral parts of an online store. The difference between block tags and info tags is that a store block tag calls a template (an html page) where any number of tags can be used, including other block tags as well as info tags.

Store Block Tag	Store Block Tag Description	Directory of Templates Used to Render the Tag
<pre><?php Breadcrumb(); ?></pre>	The customer's current location in the category tree.	catalog/breadcrumb/default/
<pre><?php Checkout(); ?></pre>	The tag outputs a checkout page.	checkout/
<pre><?php CheckoutStepLi</pre>	The tag outputs a URL which links to the site page that is specified in section [Checkout] in the file storefront-layout.ini. Clicking this link starts the checkout process.	checkout/
<pre><?php NavigationBar()</pre>	The tree of categories. This block is the main navigational component of an online store.	catalog/navigation-bar/default/
<pre><?php NavigationBarC</pre>	The tree of the selected category. This tag is similar to the NavigationBar tag, the only difference being that you can	catalog/navigation-bar-custom/default/

	<p>send additional parameters to this tag to generate the tree for the selected category.</p> <p>The parameters of the tag are:</p> <p>Parameter: Catalog ID number. Value: The Catalog ID number.</p> <p>Parameter: Visibility of the parent category label. Values: <i>True</i> or <i>False</i></p> <p>Parameter: Category path selection. Values: <i>SELECT_CATEGORY_ONLY</i> or <i>SELECT_FULL_PATH</i></p> <p>Parameter: Expand tree nodes. Values: <i>EXPAND_TREE_NODES</i> or <i>NOT_EXPAND</i></p> <p>Example: <code><?php NavigationBarCustom (4, true, "SELECT_CATEGORY_ONLY", "EXPAND_TREE_NODES"); ?></code></p> <p>Description: This tag will generate the navigation bar for the category ID 4, the text label of this category will be visible, the category path will be not highlighted, and the categories tree will be expanded.</p>	
<?php PaginatorDropDown()	The drop-down list in which the user can select the number of products displayed per page. This block is not a stand-alone tag and can only be called from the template-container of a ProductList block.	catalog/paginator/dropdown/default/
<?php PaginatorLine()	The line containing the page numbers for situations when more than one	catalog/paginator/line/default/

	page is required for displaying the list of products. This block is not a stand-alone tag and can only be called from the template-container of a ProductList block.	
<?php CurrencySelect	The drop-down list of active currencies. When users select a currency from the list, all storefront prices are displayed in the selected currency.	catalog/currency-selector/default/
<?php SubscribeBox()	Subscribe form that allows customers to subscribe to newsletters.	subscriptions/
<?php PromoCodeForm	The form for entering promo codes to get a discount.	catalog/promo-code-form/default/
<?php SearchForm();	The form for entering keywords to search for products in the catalog.	catalog/search/search-form/default/
<?php ShoppingCart();	The content of the shopping cart (items currently added to the cart).	catalog/shopping-cart/default/
<?php DownloadProdu	The message seen by customers which purchased a digital product and clicked the download link in their confirmation e-mail message, along with the download link.	catalog/download-prompt/default/
<?php FullTaxExemptF	The small form that allows customers enter their tax exemption number so that their orders won't include taxes.	catalog/full-tax-exempt-form/default/

4.6.2.2 Product Block Tags

Product Block Tags display information about the product currently viewed by customer or about several products at once.

Product Block Tag	Product Block Tag Description	Directory of Templates
-------------------	-------------------------------	------------------------

		Used to Render the Tag
<?php ProductInfo(); ?	The detailed product information. Templates used to render this tag include Product Info Tags and other Product Block Tags also listed on this page.	catalog/product-info/default/
<?php ProductDetailed	The list of detailed images of the current product.	catalog/product-images/default/
<?php RelatedProducts	The list of products related to the current product.	catalog/related-products/default/
<?php ProductList(); ?	The list of products in the current category.	catalog/product-list/default/
<?php ProductListSort	Controls that allow customers to sort the current product list according to several criteria.	catalog/product-list-sorter/default/
<?php Subcategories()	The list of subcategories in the current category.	catalog/subcategory-list/default/
<?php Bestsellers(); ?	The list of best-selling products in the current category.	catalog/bestsellers/default/
<?php FeaturedProduct	The list of featured products in the current category.	catalog/featured-products/default/
<?php ManufacturerInf	Information about the product manufacturer. Must be used in templates where the current product is known (product-info, product-list-item, and such).	manufacturers/ manufacturer-info/default/
<?php ManufacturersFi	The drop-down list of all product manufacturers. Must be used on pages containing product lists. When users	manufacturers/ manufacturers-filter/default/

	select a manufacturer from the drop-down list, the current product list is filtered and displays only products of the selected manufacturer.	
<code><?php SearchResult();</code>	The list of products found during the last store search	catalog/search/search-result/default/
<code><?php ProductSet(); ?</code>	Return the custom product set, which could be filtered according to your requirements and shown on the Avactis storefront using the custom template you need.	catalog/product-set/default/
<code><?php ProductDetailed</code>	The detailed rating for the current product (all rates will be shown).	customer-reviews/product-detailed-rating/default/
<code><?php ProductReviewL</code>	The list of all reviews for the current product, including review text, customer name and rating value.	customer-reviews/product-review-list/default/
<code><?php ProductAddRevi</code>	The customer review form for the current product.	customer-reviews/product-add-review-form/default/
<code><?php ProductAddRevi</code>	The "Add Your Review" link for the current product.	customer-reviews/product-add-review-link/default/

See also [Product Info Tags](#)

4.6.2.3 CMS Block Tags

CMS Block Tags display [Content Management System](#) (CMS) components - **CMS page**, **CMS menu** etc.

CMS Block Tag	CMS Block Tag Description	Directory of Templates Used to Render the Tag
<code><?php CMSPage(); ?></code>	The tag outputs the whole CMS article (as HTML code) including H1 header,	cms/page/default/

	page content, and links to the parent page.	
<?php CMSPageTree()	<p>Displays the tree of sub-articles for the current CMS article.</p> <p>Without the parameters, the tag will display the tree for the current article.</p> <p>Parameter: CMSPageTree(0) Description: Display the full tree of the CMS articles.</p> <p>Parameter: CMSPageTree ('article_id') Description: Display the tree for the article with ID = 'article_id'</p>	cms/page-tree/default/
<?php CMSMenu(); ?>	<p>Displays the CMS pages menu.</p> <p>Parameter: Menu ID. Values: The ID of the CMS pages menu .</p> <p>Parameter: Custom template. Values: The custom template folder for the menu.</p> <p>Example: <i><?php CMSMenu (1, 'custom_template_folder'); ?></i></p> <p>Description: This tag will generate the menu for the menu ID 1. The template for the menu will be not default, but will be based on cms/menu/custom_template_folder/.</p>	cms/menu/default/ cms/menu/ <CUSTOM_PATH>/

See also [CMS Info Tags](#)

4.6.2.4 Account Block Tags

Account Block Tags are to be used in store pages related to customer accounts. If you did not

enable creation of customer accounts at your store, you don't need to use any of these tags.

Account Block Tag	Account Block Tag Description	Directory of Templates Used to Render the Tag
<?php CustomerChangePasswordForm(); ?>	The form that allows registered customers to change their account password.	account/change-password/default/
<?php CustomerForgotPasswordForm(); ?>	The form that allows registered customers to recover their forgotten account password.	account/forgot-password/default/
<?php CustomerNewPasswordForm(); ?>	The form that allows registered customers to set a new account password after their account has been automatically created during Quick Checkout or after a store administrator has reset the password.	account/new-password/default/
<?php CustomerPersonalInfo(); ?>	The form that allows registered customers to change their personal information. The visible set of fields is controlled in Customer Account Settings .	account/personal-info/default/
<?php CustomerRegistrationForm(); ?>	The form that allows online store visitors to create an account at the store to keep track of	account/ registration-form/ default/

	their orders. The visible set of fields is controlled in Customer Account Settings .	
<?php CustomerSignInBox(); ?>	The small form that allows registered customers to sign in to the store to see their order status and checkout faster, also contains Register and Forgot Password links.	account/sign-in/box/
<?php OrderDownloadLinks(); ?>	The list of download links for digital products (e-goods) ordered by the currently signed-in customer. Can be displayed on an order info page.	account/order-download-links/default/
<?php OrderHistory(); ?>	Displays the list of orders of the currently signed-in customer, filtering and search controls.	account/orders-history/default/
<?php OrderInfo(); ?>	Displays all information related to the currently selected order of the currently signed-in customer.	account/order-info/default/
<?php OrderInvoice(); ?>	Invoice for the currently selected order of the currently signed-in customer.	account/order-invoice/default/
<?php OrderList(); ?>	The list of orders placed	account/order-list/

	in the store by the currently signed-in customer.	default/
<code><?php OrderSearchByIdForm(); ?></code>	The form that allows the currently signed-in customer to quickly find an order by the order number (ID).	account/order-search/by-id-form/
<code><?php OrderSearchForm(); ?></code>	The form that allows the currently signed-in customer to find an order by several parameters (date, status).	account/order-search/full-form/
<code><?php MessageBox(); ?></code>	System messages related to customer account	account\message-box\default\

4.6.3 Miscellaneous Tags

Tag	Tag Description
<code><?php TransactionTrackingHtmlCode(); ?></code>	<p>Add the Google Analytics e-commerce transactions tracking code or ClixGalore affiliate code to the storefront pages.</p> <p>The Google Analytics and ClixGalore affiliate program settings could be configured on the Affiliates / Manage transaction tracking page.</p>

Chapter



V

5 Avactis Shopping Cart Admin Area

The Avactis Admin zone is divided into 3 sections: (1) an information panel on the left-hand side, (2) the Tabs and statistics dashboard on the right-hand side, and (3) the Store Settings, Help, Support and Sign out links:

The screenshot displays the Avactis Shopping Cart Admin Area. The interface is divided into three main sections:

- Section 1 (Information Panel):** Located on the left, it shows 'Store Status - ONLINE' and various statistics: Unique Products: 2, All Products: 2, Categories: 3, New Orders: 1, In progress: 0, and Ready to Ship: 0. It also includes 'Quick Links' for Manage Products and Manage Categories.
- Section 2 (Dashboard):** The central area featuring 'Recent Visitors' and 'Top 10 Sellers' tables. The 'Recent Visitors' table lists visitor details like time stamp, repeat visitor status, IP address, and status. The 'Top 10 Sellers' table lists product names and their sales counts.
- Section 3 (Store Settings/Help/Sign out):** Located in the top right corner, it includes links for Dashboard, Admin, Store Settings, Help, Community/Forum, and Support.

1 The information panel consists of 6 sections. Here is a short description of each section:

<p>Store Status - ONLINE</p> <p>Unique Products: 2 All Products: 2 Categories: 3</p> <p>New Orders: 1 In progress: 0 Ready to Ship: 0</p>	<p>Store Status contains key with statistics for products, categories and orders.</p> <p>Use Store Status to open and close your store. Double click ONLINE to close your store, or double click CLOSED to open it.</p>
<p>Quick Links</p> <p>Manage Products Manage Categories</p>	<p>Quick Links contains the most useful links for store management.</p>

Catalog Search <input type="text"/> <input checked="" type="radio"/> All words <input type="radio"/> Any word <input type="radio"/> Exact phrase <input type="button" value="Search"/>	Catalog Search allows you to search for products in the catalog from any page of the Admin zone.
Visitor Stats Currently Online: 0 Yesterday: 0 Maximum Online: 1	Visitor Stats shows key information about the activity of your customers.
Product Version Version: x.x Version Type: Build: Build Date:	Product version displays the version and build number of your Avactis Shopping Cart software.
Cache & System Logs 1.6 MBytes in cache Clear 5 records Clear	Cache & System Logs allows you to clear system logs and cache.

2 The right-hand section contains the sales and visitors statistics dashboard, as well as the following control Tabs:

[Catalog](#)

[Customers](#)

[Reviews](#)

[Orders](#)

[Marketing](#)

[Reports](#)

3 The Store Settings, Content Management System and Admin sections are described in details in these articles:

[Admin](#)

[Page Manager](#)

[Look & Feel](#)

[Content](#)

[Store Settings](#)

5.1 Catalog

The catalog page contains the following sections:

- **Catalog Management** section
- **Import/Export** section

In the **Catalog Management** section, you can manage the product catalog that is available to your online store visitors. The product catalog can contain an unlimited number of products, which are stored in a category structure. This allows you to create complex store structures with hundreds and thousands of products for sale.

The page contains links to different tools for maintaining your catalog. Each section serves a specific purpose. Detailed instructions for working with each section can be found on its associated help page.

The **Import/Export** section lets you import products into the catalog or export products from it. In addition, the **Import/Export** features allow you to quickly edit product attributes via a **CSV** file. Detailed instructions for working with each section can be found on its associated help page.

The screenshot displays the 'Catalog Management' section of the Avactis Shopping Cart Admin Area. At the top, there is a navigation bar with links for Storefront, Content, Page Manager, Look & Feel, Admin, Store Settings, Help, Community Forums, and Support. Below this is a secondary navigation bar with icons and labels for Home, Catalog, Customers, Reviews, Orders, Marketing, Reports, and Sign Out. The main content area is titled 'Catalog' and includes a 'Page Help' link. Underneath, there is a blue header for 'Catalog Management'. The interface is divided into two main sections: 'Catalog Management' and 'Import / Export'. The 'Catalog Management' section contains five boxes: 'Manage Products' (Add, edit and delete products.), 'Manage Categories' (Add, edit and delete categories.), 'Manage Product Types' (Manage the types of products to be added to the catalog.), 'Catalog Search' (Search products.), and 'Manufacturers' (Add, edit and delete manufacturers.). The 'Import / Export' section contains three boxes: 'Product export' (Export products to a CSV file.), 'Product import' (Import products from a CSV file.), and 'Google Base Export' (A free Google service to publish online product catalogs to Google search.).

Catalog Overview

The key concepts of catalog management include categories, products, and product types. They are described below.

Product Types

Imagine that your online store sells DVDs and books. Each of these types of products has different attributes that describe it. For example, books may have an attribute called 'ISBN' (International Standard Book Number), while DVDs may have attributes such as 'Length' or 'Available Languages'.

To help you process various kinds of products, we have created **Product Types**. In the above example, we can divide all our products into two product types - **DVDs** and **Books**, and define attributes for each type.

This will greatly simplify catalog management in the future.

A product's type is specified only once: either when adding a product manually or during import. Therefore, you should carefully plan your product types **before** creating your product catalog.

Categories and Products

Imagine that you own a huge bookstore with thousands of books in stock. The store has several departments, e.g. Finance, Small Business, E-Commerce, and so on. The book "*Selling Online: How to Become a Successful E-Commerce Merchant*" (ISBN - 0793145171) by Jim Carroll and Rick Broadhead is for sale in the E-Commerce department.

This book is called a **Product**. Products are the items that you deliver to customers, such as books, shirts, software, electronic documents, and so forth. A store department, such as Finance, Small Business, or E-Commerce is called a **Category**.

Categories offer a convenient way to separate different groups of products, and put similar products together. Customers can browse through different categories and see different products, but they can't buy a category.

There is no limit to how many categories you can create in your storefront.

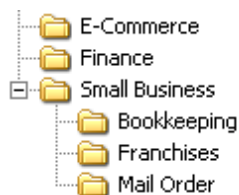
The **Manage Products** section allows you to edit, delete, move and add products in the catalog.

The **Manage Categories** section allows you to add, edit, move and delete categories and subcategories.

Categories, Subcategories and the Category Tree

A bookstore that has *Finance, Marketing, Small Business and E-Commerce* departments may further differentiate the books in a department by placing them on different bookshelves. For instance, the *Small Business* department can have bookshelves labeled "Bookkeeping," "Franchises" and "Mail Order."

This structure may be represented as a tree:



This is very similar to a filesystem, where files may be stored in folders (directories), and any folder may contain subfolders (subdirectories), as well as files.

Categories in catalog can also be organized this way. Any category can contain any number of other categories, as well as any number of products.

Categories contained within some other category are called **Subcategories** of that category. '**Category**' and '**subcategory**' terms are always relative. For instance, in the above example all of the following are categories: *Finance, Small Business, E-Commerce, Bookkeeping, Franchises, and Mail Order*.

However, *Bookkeeping, Franchises, and Mail Order* are **subcategories** of the *Small Business* **category**. In addition, all of the above categories are actually subcategories of the special top-level store category.

Finance, Small Business, and E-Commerce are called **first-level** categories in the category tree. *Bookkeeping, Franchises, and Mail Order* are called **second-level** categories, and so on. There is also a special **top-level** store category, similar to a root folder in a filesystem. It is the only category that exists after installation and is named '**Home**' by default, however, you can customize its name and other attributes.

Generally, when we mention a category, we mean to include all its subcategories and products it contains as well, unless otherwise specified.

5.1.1 Manage Products

The **Manage Products** page is one of the main tools for managing a product catalog. It includes several sections which facilitate product management and catalog navigation. From this page you can access and manage any product in your online catalog:

Storefront Content Page Manager Look & Feel Admin Store Settings Help Community Forums Support






Home Catalog Customers Reviews Orders Marketing Reports Sign Out

Catalog >> Manage Products [Page Help](#)

Current Category: Home [Switch to Categories](#)

Product(s) 1 - 5 of 5 in this category. 24 product(s) in 5 included subcategories of this category.

Search Products Browse Categories Add Product Move Copy Edit Delete Sort

N	Image	ID	SKU	Info/Status	Name	Sale Price	Quantity	
1.		3	SKU-0003	Status: Online Location: In 2 categories	Teleflora's Fiesta Gerbera Vase	\$100.00	10 Item(s)	<input type="checkbox"/>
2.		4	SKU-0004	Status: Online Location: In 1 category	Lavender Essence	\$57.95	2 Item(s)	<input type="checkbox"/>
3.		6	SKU-0006	Status: Online Location: In 1 category	Teleflora's Uniquely Chic Bouquet	\$67.95	2 Item(s)	<input type="checkbox"/>
4.		7	SKU-0007	Status: Online Location: In 1 category	Teleflora's Clear Day Bouquet	\$54.95	5 Item(s)	<input type="checkbox"/>
5.		25	SKU-0025	Status: Online Location: In 1 category	Teleflora's Be Happy Bouquet	\$39.95	3 Item(s)	<input type="checkbox"/>

Toolbar Description

Current Category	This line shows the name of the current category and the path to this category from the root category. Using the links, you can move up the category tree, up to the root category.
Switch to Categories	Switches to Manage Categories section (a time-saving button).
Catalog Search	Allows finding products whose names match one or more keywords, in all categories.
Browse Categories	Opens a window with your store's current category tree where you can select any category, open it in the main window and edit the products it contains.
Add Product	Allows adding a new product to the current category. A new window will open where you can enter all product details. Follow the

	instructions in this window.
Move	Moves the selected products to some other category. Select the necessary products with checkboxes and click the button. A window with your store's current category tree will be opened. Select the category you want to move the products to.
Copy	Similar to the Move button, but instead of moving a product, makes a copy of it in another category.
Edit	<p>Opens a window where you can edit all product attributes. The same can be done by clicking the product name.</p> <p>If you want to modify several products at once, you can select the product group using the checkboxes on the right side and click the Edit button. For more information, please refer to the Edit Products article.</p>
Delete	Deletes the selected products. Select the unneeded products with checkboxes and click the button. A confirmation window will open to show the products that will be deleted. Click the Delete button in this window to permanently delete the products.
Sort	Allows changing the order of products in the current category. A window opens with the list of products where you can change the position of a product by moving it with the arrow buttons.

5.1.1.1 Product Options

This section provides information about product options.

Available topics:

[Product Options General Guidelines](#)

[Add or Edit Product Option](#)

[Product Options Inventory Tracking](#)

[Product Options Combinations](#)

5.1.1.1.1 Product Options General Guidelines

Product Options page allows you to add product options to a basic product description. Using options is advisable if several versions (options) of a single product have nearly identical appearance. You don't have to create new product catalog items in such cases, as it's sufficient to specify the necessary options in the Product Options section.

Shopping cart system provides powerful tools for creating and managing product options. We recommend studying available documentation carefully before you use Product Options.

Consider several examples of product options.


Example 1. You sell t-shirts of assorted sizes (S, M, L, XL), which all look the same. It doesn't make sense to create a new product for every single size. All you have to do is enter a description of the general item in Product Details, add the Size option in Product Options, and define parameters S, M, L, and XL for the Size option.

Example 2. You sell T-shirts of three colors: Blue, Red and Green, with several sizes available: S, M, L and XL. Prices differ depending on specific color and size, as shown in the table below. For example, if the basic price for a T-shirt is \$50, then a red L-sized shirt will cost \$70 since the Red option and the L size increase the total price by \$7 and \$13, respectively. Thus, the final price is \$70 = (\$50 + \$7 + \$13).

Option	Value	Price
Color	Blue	+ \$5
	Red	+ \$7
	Green	+ \$9
Size	S	+ \$8
	M	+ \$12
	L	+ \$13
	XL	+ \$15

In this particular case we have two options, **Color** and **Size**, with several values for **Color (Blue, Red, Green)** and **Size (S, M, L, XL)**. Applying one or more of these values affects the basic product price to produce the final price for a combination of options.

After product options have been created, customers are able to choose specific options when viewing a product in the storefront. Speaking of example 2, that can be implemented as shown in the figure below.



The screenshot shows a product option selection interface for a T-shirt. At the top, the product name "T-shirt" is displayed in bold black text, followed by the price "\$50.00" in red. Below the price, there are two dropdown menus. The first is labeled "Color" and has "Blue+\$5.00" selected. The second is labeled "Size" and has "S+\$8.00" selected. A list of size options is visible below the "Size" dropdown, including "S+\$8.00", "M+\$12.00", "L+\$13.00", and "XL+\$15.00".

Add Product Options

By default, no options are assigned to a product. Use the **Add Option** button to add product options. A new window opens where you can add a product option. Depending on specific needs of your online store, shopping cart allows adding various options. The number of options is unlimited. See detailed description of available options on the **Add/Edit Product Option** page in **Page Help**. Additional useful information about using product options is available on the Tips and Tricks page of Product Options.

Delete/Edit Product Options

After you've added a product option, its description is displayed on the Product Options page as shown in the following figure. Click Delete to remove or **Edit** to modify a product option. Clicking **Edit** opens a new window where you can change option parameters.

Current Product: T-shirt

Details Options

Manage Product Options [Page Help](#) [Sort](#) [Settings](#) [Add Option](#) [Close](#)

Option: Color [Delete](#) [Edit](#)

Value	Modifiers			
	Price	Weight	Shipping cost	Handling cost
Blue (default)	+5.00 \$	0.00 lb	0.00 \$	0.00 \$
Red	+7.00 \$	0.00 lb	0.00 \$	0.00 \$
Green	+9.00 \$	0.00 lb	0.00 \$	0.00 \$

Option: Size [Delete](#) [Edit](#)

Value	Modifiers			
	Price	Weight	Shipping cost	Handling cost
S (default)	+8.00 \$	0.00 lb	0.00 \$	0.00 \$
M	+12.00 \$	0.00 lb	0.00 \$	0.00 \$
L	+13.00 \$	0.00 lb	0.00 \$	0.00 \$
XL	+15.00 \$	0.00 lb	0.00 \$	0.00 \$

[Add Option](#)

Product Option Combinations [Manage Combinations](#)

The Green, XL combination DOES NOT exist. Other combinations do exist.

Product Options Inventory Tracking [Manage Inventory](#)

Inventory Tracking table is current: Yes
 Number of entries: 11
 Allow adding products to cart ignoring the Inventory: Yes

Sort Product Options

The **Sort** button lets you change the order of options in the storefront. Note that customers see options sorted in the storefront exactly the same way as they appear on the Product Options page in Admin Area.

Manage Product Option Combinations

The **Product Options** page lets you create product options. For example, as shown before, T-shirts can have two options, **Color (Blue, Red, or Green)** and **Size (S, M, L, or XL)**. Several combinations can be made from these options, specifically:

Color: Blue

Size: S

Color: Red

Size: S

Color: Green

Size: S

Color: Blue

Size: M

and so on. It's perfectly possible for certain option combinations to represent nonexistent objects. For instance, Blue XL T-shirts may be not available. Providing for that kind of cases, you can disable nonexistent option combinations in the **Product Option Combinations** section.

The **Product Option Combinations** section helps create various rules for product option combinations. Click the **Manage Combinations** button to start managing combinations. A new window, Product Option Combinations, displays where you can edit combinations using multiple rules.

See detailed instructions on combination management on the **Product Option Combinations** page and in the **Product Options Tips and Tricks** section.

Important!

Combination rules created in the **Product Option Combinations** section specify the list of various product options which users are able to select. These rules affect the list of products available for selection in the Product Options Inventory Tracking section. For example, if you have set an option combination that rules out T-shirts with color Blue and size XL, this combination becomes unavailable in the Product Options Inventory Tracking section. In addition, users are denied the possibility of choosing this combination.

Manage Product Options Inventory Tracking

In the example above, T-shirt options Color and Size make up T-shirt combinations that are actually available in stock in certain quantity and are assigned certain numbers (SKU). The product options inventory tracking section lets you manage the stock of product having defined options.

Click **Manage Inventory** to start managing product options inventory. A new page, **Product Options Inventory Tracking**, displays where you can edit the inventory.

Detailed overview of the product options inventory tracking management feature can be found on the **Product Options Inventory Tracking** page in Page Help.

Important!

If you have disabled certain option combinations in Product Option Combinations, they will not show up in the Product Options Inventory Tracking section.

Product Options Settings

The Product Options page contains several settings which are described below.

<p>Do you want to allow adding products to cart without selected options?</p>	<p>This setting determines what happens in the storefront when a customer tries to add a product which has options to the cart. If the customer adds a product from a page which has no options available for selection, then, provided this setting's value is 'Yes', the product will be added with the default set of options. If the setting's value is 'No', the customer will be redirected to a page with product information in order to select a set of options. If that page does not have any options available for selection, the product will be impossible to add to cart.</p> <p>Example: On the products list page, products are displayed with no option selection available. When you click Add to Cart, this setting is checked, and if it is set to 'Yes', the product will be added with the default set of options. Otherwise, you are redirected to the product information page.</p>
<p>Add product to cart ignoring the combinations specified in Product Options Inventory Tracking?</p>	<p>If Yes is selected, customer can add to cart products having option combinations not defined in the Product Options Inventory Tracking section. Option combinations are only restricted by rules specified in the Product Option Combinations section.</p> <p>If No is selected, customers can only fill their carts with products having the option combinations defined in the Product Options Inventory Tracking section.</p>
<p>Nonselected options message</p>	<p>It is possible that, during the operation of the storefront, a product with defined options is passed to cart without any options selected. If the setting "Do you want to allow adding products to cart without selected options?" is switched to NO, a message specified in the following field is displayed.</p>

Text of message displayed when a product option combination is not defined in Product Option Combinations	<p>This message is displayed if a user attempts to order a combination of options which is not allowed according to the rules specified in the Product Option Combinations section.</p> <p>Default Message: Product option combination does not exist.</p>
Text of the message displayed when a product option combination is either not defined in Product Option Inventory Tracking or not available in stock	<p>The Product Options Inventory Tracking section contains product option combinations available in stock. If a customer attempts to order a combination that doesn't exist or is out of stock, the message specified in this field is displayed.</p> <p>Default Message: Product option combination doesn't exist or is out of stock.</p>

Product Option Tips and Tricks

Question 1.

I sell shirts. Every shirt is assigned a basic price of \$50. The final cost of a shirt is determined by its color and size according to the following table.

<i>Option</i>	<i>Value</i>	<i>Price</i>
<i>Color</i>	<i>Blue</i>	<i>+\$5</i>
	<i>Red</i>	<i>+\$7</i>
	<i>Green</i>	<i>+\$9</i>
<i>Size</i>	<i>S</i>	<i>+\$8</i>
	<i>M</i>	<i>+\$12</i>
	<i>L</i>	<i>+\$13</i>
	<i>XL</i>	<i>+\$15</i>

I'd like customers to choose color in a drop-down menu and choose size with radio buttons as shown in the figure. Also I'd like to be able to keep records of shirts available in stock. How do I do that?

Answer 1. Click Add Option to add Color. Set Option Type to Single Select, since a single shirt

can have only one color (Blue, Red or Green). If you wish to provide a drop-down menu to choose color, set **Option Display Type** to Drop-Down. Since this option affects inventory tracking, choose Inventory Tracking=YES.

Set **Option may be left unselected** to No, since the Color of a shirt should always be required. Click Add in the Add New Value section to display fields for entering Color parameters. Enter Blue in the Name field and +5 in the Price field, since Blue color increases final cost by \$5. Set the remaining field to 0, since shirt color doesn't modify other item values specified in Product Details. Enter Red and Green parameters in the same way. The resulting page is shown in the following figure.

Specify **Size** option similarly.

Current Product: T-shirt

Add/Edit Product Option [Page Help](#) [Return](#)

Option has been updated.

Option Name	<input type="text" value="Color"/>
Option Text in Storefront	<input type="text" value="Color"/>
Option Type	<input type="text" value="Single Select"/>
Option Display Type	<input type="text" value="Drop-Down"/>
Option may be unselected	<input type="text" value="No"/>
Text displayed when an option may be unselected	<input type="text"/>
Inventory Tracking	<input type="text" value="Yes"/>

[Update](#)

Edit values [Sort](#)

Name	Is default?	Modifiers				
		Price	Weight	Shipping cost	Handling cost	
<input type="text" value="Blue"/>	<input checked="" type="radio"/>	<input type="text" value="5.00"/> \$	<input type="text" value="0.00"/> lb	<input type="text" value="0.00"/> \$	<input type="text" value="0.00"/> \$	<input type="checkbox"/>
<input type="text" value="Red"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="text" value="7.00"/> \$	<input type="text" value="0.00"/> lb	<input type="text" value="0.00"/> \$	<input type="text" value="0.00"/> \$	<input type="checkbox"/>
<input type="text" value="Green"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="text" value="9.00"/> \$	<input type="text" value="0.00"/> lb	<input type="text" value="0.00"/> \$	<input type="text" value="0.00"/> \$	<input type="checkbox"/>

[Update](#) [Sort](#) [Delete](#)

Add New Value

Name	Is default?	Modifiers			
		Price	Weight	Shipping cost	Handling cost
<input type="text"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="text" value="0"/> \$	<input type="text" value="0"/> lb	<input type="text" value="0"/> \$	<input type="text" value="0"/> \$

[Add](#)

[Return](#)

Since products are accounted for in stock, go to the Product Options Inventory Tracking section and enter SKU and quantity of items in stock for every combination. The resulting Product Options Inventory Tracking page is shown in the following figure.

Current Product: T-shirt

Product Options Inventory Tracking Page Help (Re-)Build Return

Combination	SKU	Quantity
1. <input type="checkbox"/> Color: Blue Size: S	<input type="text"/>	<input type="text" value="10"/>
2. <input type="checkbox"/> Color: Blue Size: M	<input type="text"/>	<input type="text" value="3"/>
3. <input type="checkbox"/> Color: Blue Size: L	<input type="text"/>	<input type="text" value="3"/>
4. <input type="checkbox"/> Color: Blue Size: XL	<input type="text"/>	<input type="text" value="3"/>
5. <input type="checkbox"/> Color: Red Size: S	<input type="text"/>	<input type="text" value="3"/>
6. <input type="checkbox"/> Color: Red Size: M	<input type="text"/>	<input type="text" value="3"/>
7. <input type="checkbox"/> Color: Red Size: L	<input type="text"/>	<input type="text" value="3"/>
8. <input type="checkbox"/> Color: Red Size: XL	<input type="text"/>	<input type="text" value="2"/>
9. <input type="checkbox"/> Color: Green Size: S	<input type="text"/>	<input type="text" value="3"/>
10. <input type="checkbox"/> Color: Green Size: M	<input type="text"/>	<input type="text" value="3"/>
11. <input type="checkbox"/> Color: Green Size: L	<input type="text"/>	<input type="text" value="4"/>
<input type="checkbox"/>		

Page 1 |

Delete Update

Number of combinations displayed: 20 ▾

New Record

Combination Blue_S

SKU

Quantity

Add Return

Question 2. *As in Question 1, I have the same shirts and I want to keep records of them in stock. However, my vendor does not ship Green XL shirts. How do I make it so that customers are not given the option to choose this combination of color and size during checkout?*

Answer 1: To disable a certain combination, go to Product Option Combinations section and specify that Color (Green) does not exist with Size (XL).

Current Product: T-shirt

Current Combination Rules [Page Help](#) [Return](#)

The Green, XL combination DOES NOT exist. Other combinations do exist.

[Delete](#) [Check](#)

New Combination Rule

Rule template:

The [.....] combination DOES NOT exist. Other combinations do exist.

[.....] options are unavailable in combination with [.....] options. Other combinations exist and are available.

The Green, XL combination DOES NOT exist. Other combinations do exist.

[Add](#) [Return](#)

© 2004-2007 Pentasoft Corp. All Rights Reserved.
[License Agreement](#) [Privacy Policy](#)

After this rule is created it appears in the Product Option Combinations section as shown below.

Current Product: T-shirt

Details
Options

Manage Product Options

[Page Help](#)
[Sort](#)
[Settings](#)
[Add Option](#)
[Close](#)

i Option: Color

Delete
Edit

Value	Modifiers			
	Price	Weight	Shipping cost	Handling cost
Blue (default)	+5.00 \$	0.00 lb	0.00 \$	0.00 \$
Red	+7.00 \$	0.00 lb	0.00 \$	0.00 \$
Green	+9.00 \$	0.00 lb	0.00 \$	0.00 \$

i Option: Size

Delete
Edit

Value	Modifiers			
	Price	Weight	Shipping cost	Handling cost
S (default)	+8.00 \$	0.00 lb	0.00 \$	0.00 \$
M	+12.00 \$	0.00 lb	0.00 \$	0.00 \$
L	+13.00 \$	0.00 lb	0.00 \$	0.00 \$
XL	+15.00 \$	0.00 lb	0.00 \$	0.00 \$

Add Option

Product Option Combinations
[Manage Combinations](#)

The Green, XL combination DOES NOT exist. Other combinations do exist.

Product Options Inventory Tracking
[Manage Inventory](#)

Inventory Tracking table is current: Yes
 Number of entries: 11
 Allow adding products to cart ignoring the Inventory: Yes

5.1.1.1.2 Add or Edit Product Option

On the **Add/Edit Product Option** page you can add new and edit current options. Any option may have an unlimited number of values.

The Add/Edit Option Values sections let you enter and edit options values. Suppose you've created a Size option. In the Edit Option Values section you enter the values for this option and specify how each value affects the product's price, weight, per item shipping cost and/or per item handling cost.

When entering the value of change in price/weight/per item shipping cost/per item handling cost, please remember that this value increases or decreases the basic price/weight/per item shipping cost/per item handling cost of the product.

For instance the **Sale Price (per item)** for a T-shirt equals \$50. The S value for the Size option

contains the price modifier of 8. This means that an S-size T-shirt of costs \$58 (\$50+\$8). If the modifier is meant to decrease the price by \$8, you should enter the value of -8.

The following figure illustrates adding a Size option.

Current Product: T-shirt

Add/Edit Product Option [Page Help](#)

Values have been deleted.

Option Name ?	<input type="text" value="Size"/>
Option Text in Storefront ?	<input type="text" value="Size"/>
Option Type ?	<input type="text" value="Single Select"/>
Option Display Type ?	<input type="text" value="Radio Group"/>
Option may be unselected ?	<input type="text" value="No"/>
Text displayed when an option may be unselected	<input type="text"/>
Inventory Tracking ?	<input type="text" value="Yes"/>

Edit values

Name	Is default?	Modifiers				
		Price	Weight	Shipping cost	Handling cost	
<input type="text" value="S"/>	<input checked="" type="radio"/>	<input type="text" value="8.00"/>	<input type="text" value="0.00"/> lb	<input type="text" value="0.00"/>	<input type="text" value="0.00"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
<input type="text" value="M"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="text" value="12.00"/>	<input type="text" value="0.00"/> lb	<input type="text" value="0.00"/>	<input type="text" value="0.00"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
<input type="text" value="L"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="text" value="13.00"/>	<input type="text" value="0.00"/> lb	<input type="text" value="0.00"/>	<input type="text" value="0.00"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>

Add New Value

Name	Is default?	Modifiers				
		Price	Weight	Shipping cost	Handling cost	
<input type="text" value="XL"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="text" value="15"/>	<input type="text" value="0"/> lb	<input type="text" value="0"/>	<input type="text" value="0"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>

Name	The value of the option that customers will be able to choose.
Is default?	If checked, the value will be pre-selected when a customer opens the product page.
Price	The amount that should be added to the product sale price when a customer selects this value for the option. To subtract an amount from the price, enter a negative value.
Weight	The amount that should be added to the product weight when a customer selects this value for the option. To subtract an amount from the weight, enter a negative value.
Shipping cost	The amount that should be added to the product shipping cost when a customer selects this value for the option. To subtract an amount from the shipping cost, enter a negative value.
Handling cost	The amount that should be added to the product handling cost when a customer selects this value for the option. To subtract an amount from the handling cost, enter a negative value.

Option Name	The name of the option. For example, for shirts this can be Color or Size.
Option Text in Storefront	The message appearing in the storefront, For example, for the Size option you can have the storefront text say "Please choose shirt size."
Option Type	<p>Option type lets you define the way in which customers will be able to choose options in the storefront.</p> <p>Single Select This type lets customers choose only one option value. For example, if you have the Size option with values S, M, L, and XL, then Single Select will allow to select only one shirt size from those four.</p> <p>Multiple Select This option type lets customers choose multiple values for an option. For</p>

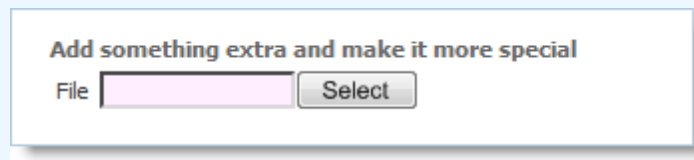
example, you have a Front Text shirt option with parameters "Hello!" and "How are you?". If Option Type is selected as Multiple Select, then a customer will be able to select either one of these labels to be placed on the shirt or both of them together.

Custom Input

This option type lets customers enter their own text value for the option. For example, if Custom Input is chosen for the Front Text option, customers can enter their personal custom words to be put on the front of the shirt.

File upload

This option type allows a customer to upload file. The permitted file types are defined in **Admin >> Advanced Settings & Configuration >> File Upload Settings for Product Options** ([Advanced Settings & Configuration](#)).

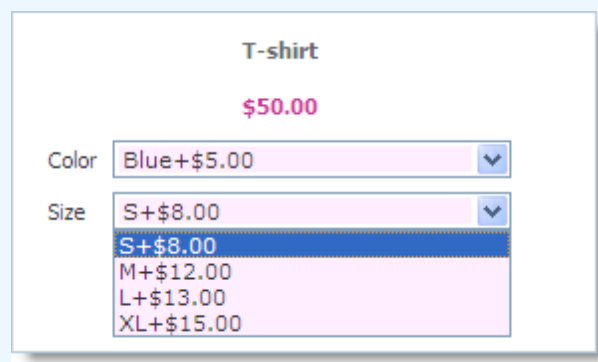


Option Display Type

Depending on the Option Type selected, the option can be displayed in different ways in the storefront. For instance, if Option Type is set to Single Select, the option may be represented as a drop-down list or its values may appear as a group of radio buttons. The following lists the possible options display types for the storefront.

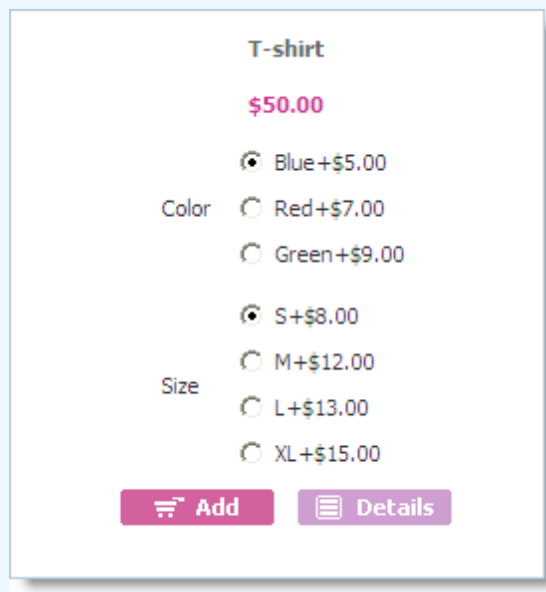
Drop-Down

The list of option values displays in a drop-down list.



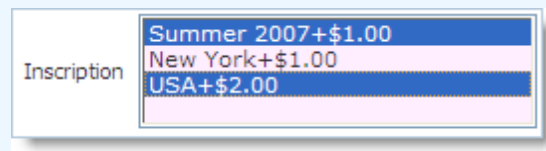
Radio Group

The list of option values displays as a group of radio buttons.



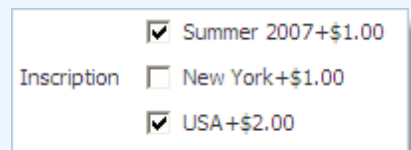
Multiple Select

The list of option values displays as a multiple selection listbox.



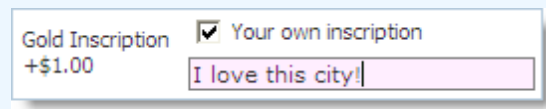
Checkbox Group

The list of option values displays as a group of checkboxes.



Checkbox + Simple Input

The option value displays as shown on the figure below. The checkbox text is specified by the Checkbox text input field.



Checkbox + Text Area

The option value displays as shown on the figure below. The checkbox text

is specified by the Checkbox text input field.

Simple Input

The option value displays as shown on the figure below.

Text Area

The option value displays as shown on the figure below.

Checkbox Text

The text for Option Display Type set to 'Checkbox + Simple Input" or 'Checkbox + Text Area'.

This text is displayed next to the checkbox as shown on the figure below.

Option may be unselected

If the value is YES, this option is allowed to remain unselected in the storefront. At the same time, this option in the storefront displays the text specified in the field "Text displayed when an option may be unselected."

If the value is NO, this option must be selected at all times.

Example: You sell T-shirts and you have three T-shirt options: Color, Size and Front Text. Front Text is the text that your customers want to put on the front of the T-shirt. Suppose that you offer two such messages: **Hello!** and **How are YOU?** However, a person may want to buy your T-shirt with no message at all. In this case you should select **Option may be unselected = YES** thus permitting customers to select no messages to be put on their

	T-shirt. For this example, you can simply put "- -" in the field Text displayed when an option may be unselected .
Inventory Tracking	Inventory Tracking lets you define whether a certain option affects the inventory accounting. For example, you sell T-shirts of different color and sizes, and also offer to manually put messages on the front of those T-shirts. Thus, you have three product options: Color, Size and Front Text. Since the Color and Size options produce a unique combination of T-shirt which is stored in your stock, these options must have Inventory Tracking = YES . On the other hand, the Front Text option does not affect the inventory, so it should have Inventory Tracking = NO .

To select the default option value which will appear in the storefront by default, select the **Is default?** checkbox.

Click the **Update** button to update and save the current option values. Click the **Add** button to add new option values. Click the **Delete** button to delete option values.

Click the **Return** button to return to the Options page.

5.1.1.1.3 Product Options Inventory Tracking

The **Product Options Inventory Tracking** page lets you enter the Stock Keeping Numbers (SKU) and the number of products in stock for existing product option combinations.

Current Product: T-shirt

Product Options Inventory Tracking Page Help

Combination		SKU	Quantity
1.	<input type="checkbox"/> Color Size	Blue S	<input type="text" value="10"/>
2.	<input type="checkbox"/> Color Size	Blue M	<input type="text" value="3"/>
3.	<input type="checkbox"/> Color Size	Blue L	<input type="text" value="3"/>
4.	<input type="checkbox"/> Color Size	Blue XL	<input type="text" value="3"/>
5.	<input type="checkbox"/> Color Size	Red S	<input type="text" value="3"/>
6.	<input type="checkbox"/> Color Size	Red M	<input type="text" value="3"/>
7.	<input type="checkbox"/> Color Size	Red L	<input type="text" value="3"/>
8.	<input type="checkbox"/> Color Size	Red XL	<input type="text" value="2"/>
9.	<input type="checkbox"/> Color Size	Green S	<input type="text" value="3"/>
10.	<input type="checkbox"/> Color Size	Green M	<input type="text" value="3"/>
11.	<input type="checkbox"/> Color Size	Green L	<input type="text" value="4"/>
	<input type="checkbox"/>		

Page **1** |

Number of combinations displayed:

New Record

Combination	<u>Blue, S</u>
SKU	<input type="text"/>
Quantity	<input type="text"/>

You can generate existing product option combinations for inventory tracking either manually or automatically.

To **manually** enter SKUs and the stock number of items for a certain combination, you should define an option combination in the **New Entry** section, enter the SKU and the stock number of items for the selected combination, and then click **Add**. The selected combination is then added to the product options inventory tracking list.

To **automatically** create all possible option combinations for inventory tracking click the (Re-) Build button. All possible combinations will be automatically created for inventory tracking.

IMPORTANT!

It must be noted that the system does not allow you to perform inventory tracking for those option combinations which involve an option with Inventory **Tracking = NO**. If a particular product option needs to affect inventory tracking, you should set its **Inventory Tracking** parameter to **YES** in the **Manage Product Options** section.

To delete an option combination, click the **Delete** button. To update the changes you've made click the **Update** button.

To return to the **Product Options** page, click **Return**.

5.1.1.1.4 Product Options Combinations

Product Options page lets you create option values. For example, T-shirts can have a Color option (Blue, Red, or Green) and a Size option (S, M, L, or XL). These option values make for the following combinations:

Color: Blue

Size: S

Color: Red

Size: S

Color: Green

Size: S

Color: Blue

Size: M

and so on. It's perfectly possible for certain option combinations to represent nonexistent objects. For instance, Green XL T-shirts may be not available. Providing for that kind of cases, you can disable nonexistent option combinations in the Product Option Combinations section.

Current Product: T-shirt

Current Combination Rules Page Help [Return](#)

The Green, XL combination DOES NOT exist. Other combinations do exist.

[Delete](#) [Check](#)

New Combination Rule

Rule template:

The [.,.,.] combination DOES NOT exist. Other combinations do exist.

[.,.,.] options are unavailable in combination with [.,.,.] options. Other combinations exist and are available.

The Green, XL combination DOES NOT exist. Other combinations do exist.

[Add](#) [Return](#)

© 2004-2007 Pentasoft Corp. All Rights Reserved.
[License Agreement](#) [Privacy Policy](#)

If you have no restrictions on option combinations (i.e. all option combinations are allowed), you can leave this section empty.

Important!

Combination rules created in the Product Option Combinations section specify the list of various product options which users are able to select. These rules affect the list of products available for selection in the Product Options Inventory Tracking section.

For example, if you have set an option combination that rules out T-shirts with color Blue and size XL, this combination becomes unavailable in the Product Options Inventory Tracking section. In addition, users are denied the possibility of choosing this combination.

The Product Options Combinations page has two parts: **Current Combination Rules** and **New Combination Rule**.

The **Current Combination Rule** section displays all combination rules which are valid for the current product's options.

In the **New Rule** section, you can allow or disallow option combinations by using the following rules:

The [.,.,.] option combination DOES NOT exist. Other combinations do exist.

[.,.,.] options are unavailable in combination with [.,.,.] options. Other combinations exist and are available.

You may select multiple rules.

After you select the appropriate rules, you get the set of option combinations which will be available for customers in the storefront. If an option combination is not available, the customer will be prompted with an appropriate message, which is defined in the **Product Options** page of the **Settings** section.

To verify that option combinations have been defined correctly, use the Check button. Clicking the button opens the list of available and unavailable option combinations for the product:

The list of option combinations AVAILABLE to be ordered by customers.

The list of option combinations UNAVAILABLE to be ordered by customers.

Check Combination Rules (Product: T-shirt)	
The list of option combinations AVAILABLE to be ordered by customers:	
Color: Red Size: S	Color: Red Size: M
Color: Red Size: L	Color: Red Size: XL
Color: Blue Size: S	Color: Blue Size: M
Color: Blue Size: L	Color: Blue Size: XL
Color: Green Size: S	Color: Green Size: M
Color: Green Size: L	
The list of option combinations UNAVAILABLE to be ordered by customers:	
Color: Green Size: XL	

Use these lists to check that the rules you created are working correctly.

5.1.1.2 Add New Products

This page allows you to enter information and attributes for a new product:

Current Category: Home

Details Options E-Goods Images Multcategories Discounts Related Products

Add New Product Page Help Save Save and Add another Cancel

Key Product Details Show/Hide

Product Type*	?	General Products
Product Name*	?	
Sale Price (per item)*	?	
List Price (per item)	?	
Quantity in Stock	?	
Low level in Stock	?	
SKU	?	
Minimum Quantity in Order	?	
Product Status	?	Online
Product Tax Class	?	Nontaxable
Product Manufacturer	?	Not defined

* = Required Field

Main Product Image Show/Hide

Product Descriptions Show/Hide

Shipping Information Show/Hide

Search Engine Information Show/Hide

Customer Reviews Information Show/Hide

Membership Visibility Show/Hide

Save Save and Add another Cancel

All fields indicated by red color and marked with an asterisk (*) are mandatory fields. You can input data into the remaining fields later.

To close the window, click the **Cancel** button. In this case no new product will be created.

Once you have finished entering the data, click the Save button (if you intend to create another product in the same category, use the Save and Add Another button). This will create a new product in the current category.

After you click Save, new product sections become active, including Options, E-Goods, Images, Multcategories, Discount, and Related Products. These sections allow you to enter additional information for a product as described below:

Options	Lets you manage product options. For example, you can sell the a product in different sizes. Then you should create an option for this product called Size.
E-Goods	If your product is downloadable, you can attach the necessary files to it.
Images	This section lets you add extra images to a product.
Multicategories	In this section you can specify the list of product categories in which this product will appear.
Discount	Lets you set up discounts for this product depending on quantity ordered.
Related Products	Lets you "link" related products to this product, such as accessories.

Current Category: Home

Details Options E-Goods Images Multicategories Discounts Related Products

Edit Product Page Help Save Close

i New product has been successfully added

Key Product Details Show/Hide

Product Type*	<input type="text" value="General Products"/>
Product ID*	<input type="text" value="34"/>
Product Name*	<input type="text" value="My first product"/>
Sale Price (per item)*	<input type="text" value="999.00"/> \$
List Price (per item)	<input type="text"/> \$
Quantity in Stock	<input type="text"/> Item(s)
Low level in Stock	<input type="text"/> Item(s)
SKU	<input type="text"/>
Minimum Quantity in Order	<input type="text"/> Item(s)
Product Status	<input type="text" value="Online"/>
Product Tax Class	<input type="text" value="Nontaxable"/>
Product Manufacturer	<input type="text" value="Not defined"/>

Main Product Image Show/Hide

Product Descriptions Show/Hide


Shipping Information Show/Hide

Search Engine Information Show/Hide

Customer Reviews Information Show/Hide

Membership Visibility Show/Hide

Save Save and Add another Cancel

To view information about a specific attribute, click the question mark . This will open a new window with the description of this attribute of the product.

See also: [Product Attributes Descriptions](#)

5.1.1.3 Edit Products

This page allows you to edit information and attributes for an existing product. All fields indicated by red color and marked with an asterisk (*) are mandatory fields. You can input data into the remaining fields later.

Current Category: Home

Details Options E-Goods Images Multicategories Discounts Related Products

Edit Product Page Help Save Close

Key Product Details [-] Show/Hide	
Product Type*	General Products
Product ID*	7
Product Name*	<input type="text" value="My first product"/>
Sale Price (per item)*	<input type="text" value="499.00"/> \$
List Price (per item)	<input type="text"/> \$
Quantity in Stock	<input type="text" value="500"/> Item(s)
Low level in Stock	<input type="text"/> Item(s)
SKU	<input type="text"/>
Minimum Quantity in Order	<input type="text"/> Item(s)
Product Status	Online ▾
Product Tax Class	Nontaxable ▾
Product Manufacturer	Not defined ▾
Main Product Image [+] Show/Hide	
Product Descriptions [+] Show/Hide	
Shipping Information [+] Show/Hide	
Search Engine Information [+] Show/Hide	
Customer Reviews Information [+] Show/Hide	
Membership Visibility [+] Show/Hide	

Save Close

You can change the **Search engine information**, such as Page title of the product page, SEO URL prefix, META Keywords and META Description.

Select the **Main product image** and enter your own ALT image description for the image.

Also you can change the **Customer Reviews Information**: it is possible to allow or disallow the Customer reviews and Rates for the product.

You can assign a specific membership level to any product in the **Membership Visibility** section, customers from the specified group(s) will be able to see this product in the storefront catalogue:

Membership Visibility Show/Hide

Membership Visibility ?

Visible for all

Visible for groups below

Default

Save **Save and Add another** **Cancel**

Once you have finished editing the data, click the **Save** button. You can enter additional information for a product in the sections as described below:

Options	Lets you manage product options. For example, you can sell the a product in different sizes. Then you should create an option for this product called Size.
E-Goods	If your product is downloadable, you can attach the necessary files to it.
Images	This section lets you add extra images to a product.
Multicategories	In this section you can specify the list of product categories in which this product will appear.
Discount	Lets you set up discounts for this product depending on quantity ordered.
Related Products	Lets you "link" related products to this product, such as accessories.

Bulk Product Updater

If you selected several products at once and clicked on the "Edit" button, you will see the **Bulk Product Updater** page. This page allows you to modify all the selected products on one "Bulk Product Updater" page:

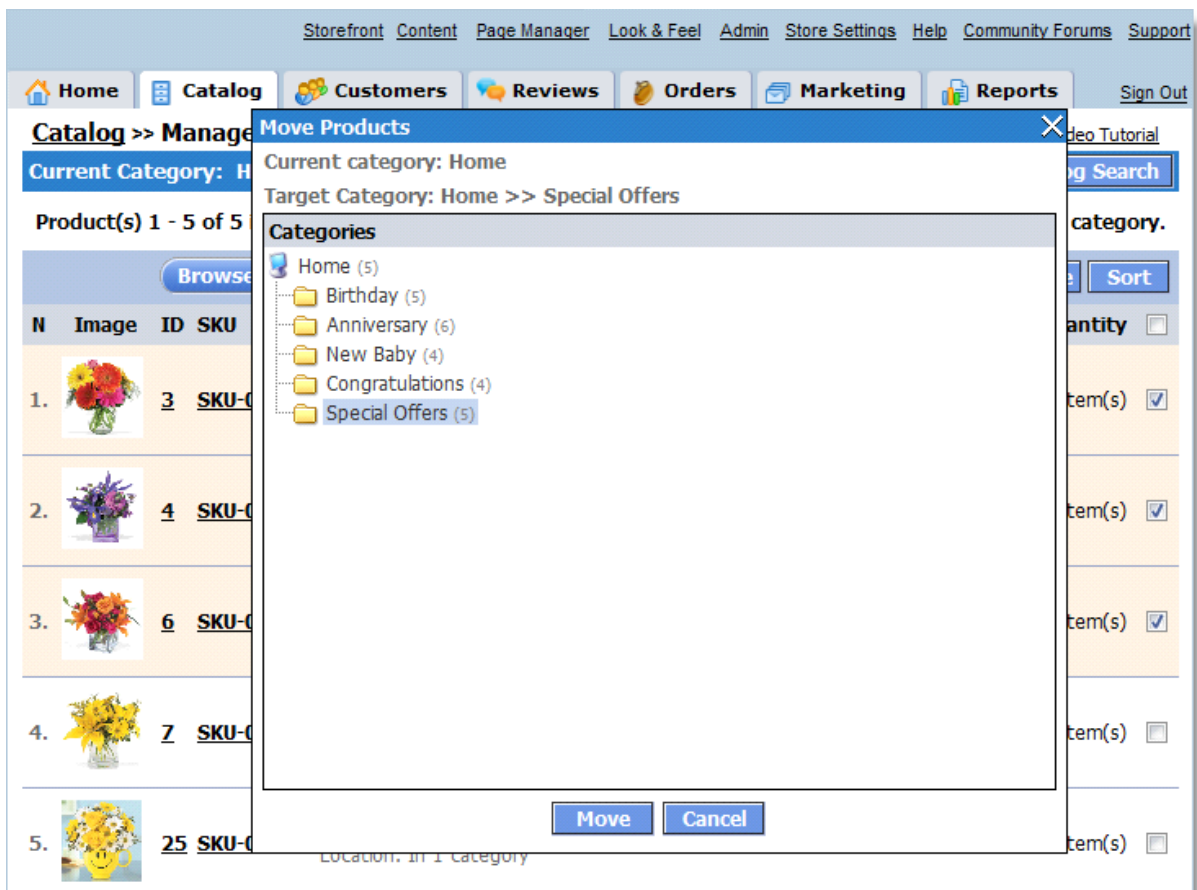
Product ID	Product Name	Sale Price (per item)	List Price (per item)	Quantity in Stock	Low level in Stock
1	<input type="text" value="New Product"/>	<input type="text" value="10.10"/>	<input type="text"/>	<input type="text" value="9"/>	<input type="text"/>
2	<input type="text" value="New Product 2"/>	<input type="text" value="25.10"/>	<input type="text"/>	<input type="text" value="15"/>	<input type="text"/>

See also: [Product Attributes Descriptions](#)

5.1.1.4 Move Products

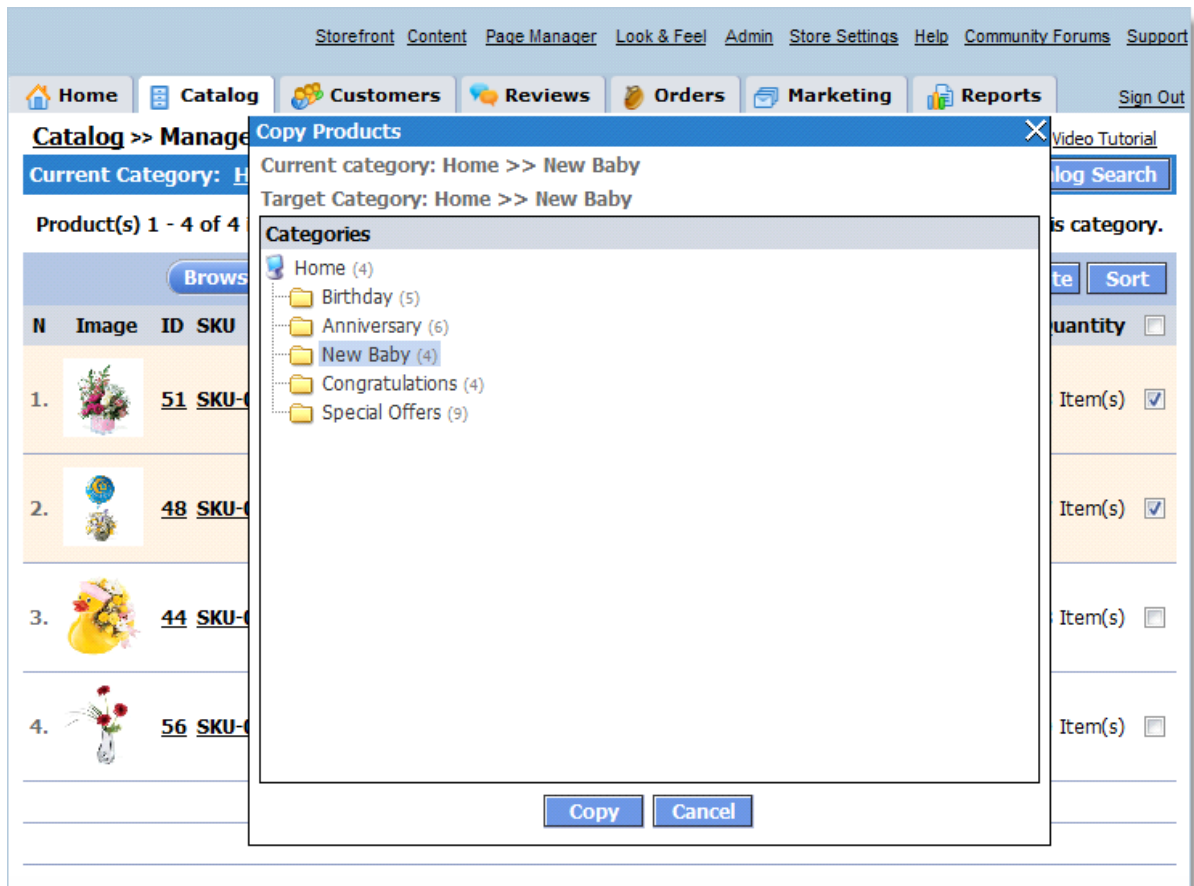
Use the **Move** command to move products between categories.

To move one or more products, select them in the current category and click the **Move** button. A new window will appear with the category tree. Select the target category and click Move in this pop-up window. The selected products will be moved to the end of the list of products in the target category.



5.1.1.5 Copy Products

When adding many similar products to a catalog, you can add new products based on existing ones. To do this, copy one or more products and click the **Copy** button. A new window will appear with the category tree. Select the required category and click Copy in this pop-up window. The product you selected will be pasted at the end of the list of products in this category.

**IMPORTANT!**

After you have copied a product, a new product is created which is identical with the original one. This means that after a copy operation, two completely independent products exist and can be individually edited. If you would like a single product to appear in multiple categories (without creating copies), use the Multicategories feature.

5.1.1.6 Delete Products

This page allows you to delete selected products. The entire list of products to be deleted is displayed on this page.

To delete products, click the **Delete** button. To close the window without any action, click the **Cancel** button.

IMPORTANT! You cannot restore products after they are deleted!

Current Category: Home

Products to be deleted [Page Help](#) [Video Tutorial](#)

Teleflora's Fiesta Gerbera Vase
The product will be deleted from the current category, but will still display in the following categories:
Home/Special Offers

Lavender Essence
The product will be deleted permanently; you will not be able to restore it.

Teleflora's Uniquely Chic Bouquet
The product will be deleted permanently; you will not be able to restore it.

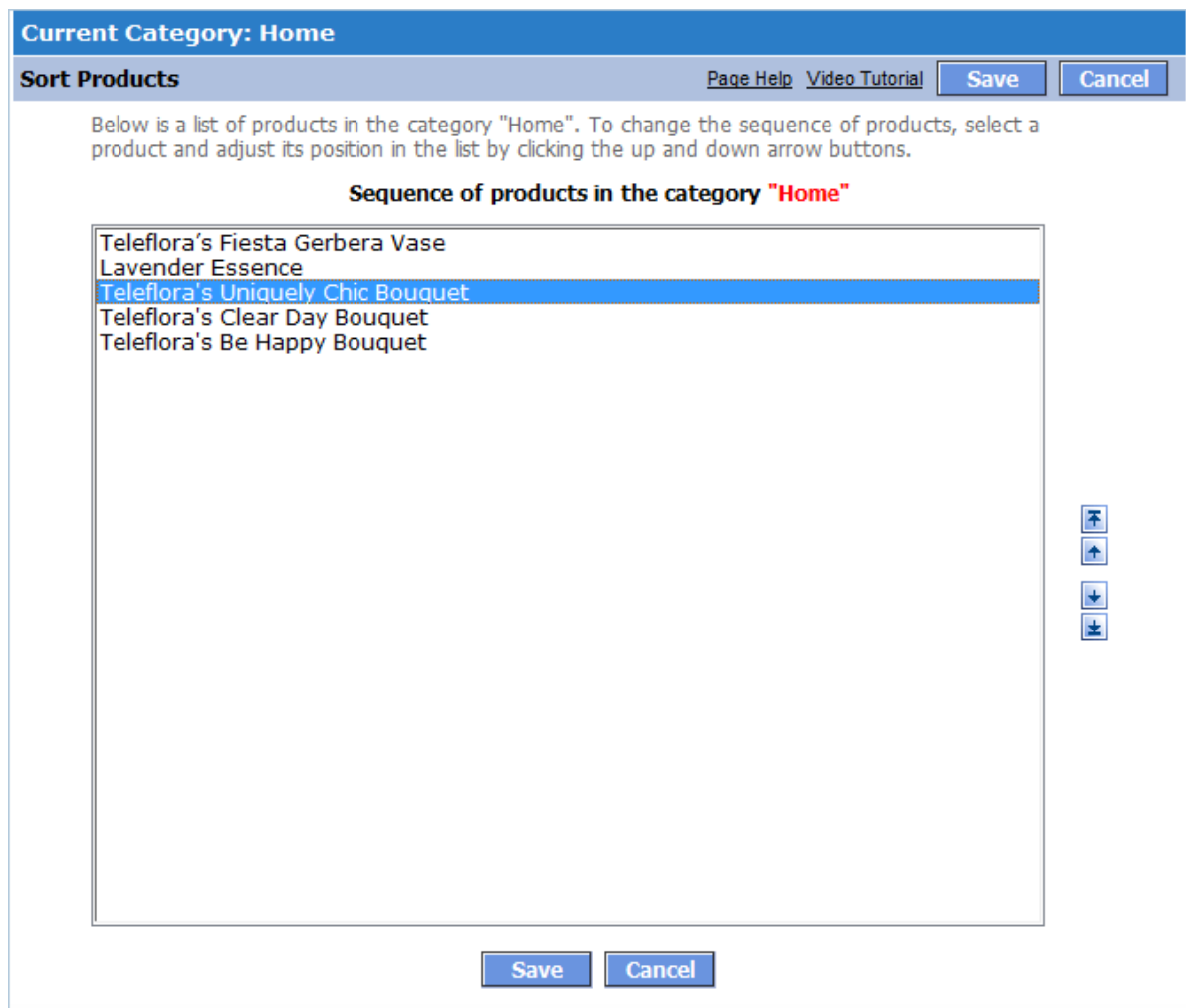
Teleflora's Clear Day Bouquet
The product will be deleted permanently; you will not be able to restore it.

5.1.1.7 Sort Products

On this page you can sort the products in the current category.

To change the position of a product, select it and move to the new position using the up and down arrow buttons.

To save the changes, click the **Save** button.



5.1.1.8 Digital Products/E-Goods

The **Digital Products/E-Goods** mechanism lets you sell electronic products such as software, images, music recordings, videos, and so on.

To create a **Digital Product**, you create a product and then assign a number of files to it. When the customer orders the product, he or she is granted access to download these files.

The buyer receives a confirmation by e-mail containing the links to file downloads.

Note. This confirmation is sent only after the order payment status is changed to **Fully Paid**.

Typically, the process looks like this:

1. You create a regular product.
2. You click the **E-Goods** tab.

3. On the **E-Goods** tab, you assign the appropriate files to the product, which your customers will be able to download.
4. A customer orders the product.
5. In the order, links to all of the product's files are generated with the Locked status, meaning that they cannot be downloaded yet.
6. The order payment status is changed to **Fully Paid**. This happens either automatically, when the customer's payment has been accepted via a payment gateway, or when the administrator changes the status manually.
7. The shopping cart system automatically sends the buyer a confirmation e-mail containing the download links for files defined in **Step 3**. The status of all files is changed to Unlocked, and now the buyer is able to download them by navigating to the links provided.
8. You can set limits on file download activity by setting an Expiration date and/or maximum download attempts allowed for a file, or by preventing the file from being downloaded (using the Lock file / Unlock file mechanism). You can also allow repeated downloads by setting the current number of download attempts to zero. All of these options are available on the Link Management page, available on the Order Info page. Default values for the **Expiration date** and **the maximum download attempts** are defined on the page **Store Settings -> Digital Products/E-Goods**.

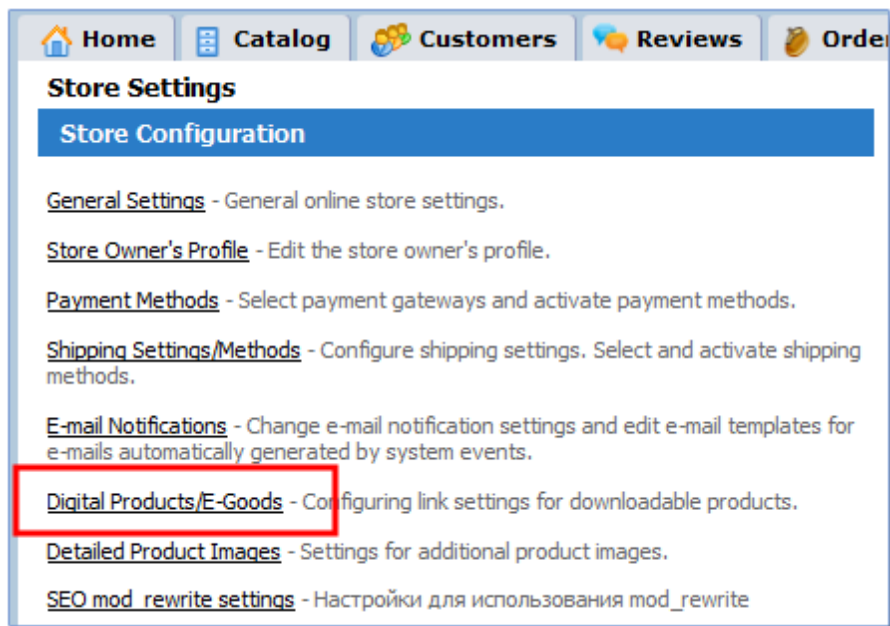
Defining global parameters for links to Digital Products/E-Goods

When a Digital **Product** is ordered, the shopping cart system automatically generates a unique link for each of the corresponding product files.

These links have the following limitations:

- Link lifetime
- Maximum download attempts allowed per link

These parameters are defined on the page **Store Settings -> Digital Products/E-Goods**.



After you click **Digital Products/E-Goods**, a new window opens.

Store Configuration	
Digital Products/E-Goods Settings	
Link lifetime	<input type="text" value="72"/> hours
Maximum download attempts allowed	<input type="text" value="3"/>

Select the required parameters:

- **Link lifetime** - the lifetime of the link, in hours, from the moment the order is generated. After this time expires, the link will become inactive.
- **Maximum download attempts allowed** - the number of attempts allowed for downloading a file using the link provided. After these attempts have been used, the link will become inactive

Note: These link parameters are default values applied globally. In any individual order, you can change any parameter for any link.

Creating an Digital Products/E-Goods

There are two types of **Digital Products/E-Goods**:

1. A pure Digital Product, which is delivered to the customer via file download. No shipping cost calculations apply to this kind of product. If the shopping cart consists of only such products, the Shipping and Handling Cost will be zero.
2. A combined product. This is a product that is shipped to the customer as a regular product, but in addition, the customer can also download additional electronic materials related to the product. An example might be a user manual in .pdf format.

Shopping cart system lets you create both types of **Digital Products/E-Goods**.

Here's how you can create a **Digital Product**:

- Go to the **Manage Products** page.
- Select the appropriate category for your product.
- Click the **Add Product** button to create a new product.
- Until the product is created, the **E-Goods** tab is unavailable.
- Enter the required fields for the product.
- If you want to create a "**Pure Digital Product**", the Need Shipping setting should be set to 'No'. This means that the shipping cost calculation will not apply to this product.
- If you want to create a "**Combined product**", the Need Shipping setting should be set to 'Yes'.
- Click **Save** to finish creating the new product.

After the product is created, the **E-Goods** tab will become available on the **Product info** page. Click the tab to manage the product files.

Assign all the required files to the product. The number of files you can add is unlimited. When ordering this product, the customer will receive links for every file related to this product.

For every file you can add a short description.

After this, the **Digital Product** is created.

Buying Digital Products/E-Goods

Digital Products/E-Goods are bought the same way as regular products. Your storefront's customers browse their products, add them to cart, go through checkout and pay for the order.

A new order is then created in the system. If the order contains at least one **Digital Product**, then for each file a unique download link is generated.

The links are generated with the Locked status. This means that files cannot be downloaded via these links just yet.

After the order payment status changes to **Fully Paid**:

- All links in the order are set to **Unlocked**.
- A confirmation e-mail is sent to the customer, which contains all of the download links.

Note: The administrator is able to switch the status of any link (**Locked/Unlocked**) manually regardless of the order payment status.

Note: Order payment status may be changed to **Fully Paid** automatically if the customer has paid for the order via a real-time payment processing system, for example, PayPal. If your store uses an offline processing of payments, then the order status must be changed manually by the administrator.

After receiving the confirmation e-mail, the customer can use the links to download the appropriate files.

Managing Digital Products/E-Goods Links in an Order

Go to the **Manage orders** page (the **Orders** tab). You will see a list of orders. Click the ID of an order that contains one or more **Digital Products**.

A new window opens listing detailed information about the order. The **Product(s) Ordered** section shows the list of products ordered. For each **Digital Product** in this list there will be a link to "**Link Management**".

Order Number: 00001

Key Order Details [Page Help](#) [Video Tutorial](#) [Update](#) [Edit](#) [Close](#)

Order ID	?	00001
Invoice		Invoice
Packing Slip		Packing Slip
Payment Processor Order ID	?	
Order Date		17-07-2007
Order Amount		\$193.89
Order Status	?	New Order
Payment Status	?	Waiting
Payment Method	?	No available payment methods
Shipping Method	?	No available shipping methods
Tracking Number	?	<input type="text"/>

Product(s) Ordered [Show/Hide](#)

Product ID	Product Name	Quantity	Price	Amount
36	Teleflora's Uniquely Chic Bouquet Link management	1	\$54.95	\$54.95
35	A Dozen Premium Red Roses Link management	1	\$94.95	\$94.95

When you click **Link Management**, a new window opens so you can manage links for downloading this product's files.

Order Number: 00001	
Links for a product: Teleflora's Uniquely Chic Bouquet	
File: Our-Poster.pdf	Locked
Link http://www.my-first-shop.com/download.php?key=77835asedfr402343456560aba22d32d32	<input type="button" value="Unlock"/>
Expire Date 20 Jul 2007, 14:20	<input type="button" value="Change"/>
Attempts 0/3	<input type="button" value="Set to zero"/>
File: User-Manual.pdf	Locked
Link http://www.my-first-shop.com/download.php?key=15558cf345rv6443895fdk0aba54e9121d	<input type="button" value="Unlock"/>
Expire Date 20 Jul 2007, 14:20	<input type="button" value="Change"/>
Attempts 0/3	<input type="button" value="Set to zero"/>
<input type="button" value="Close"/>	

This windows displays the following information on each product file:

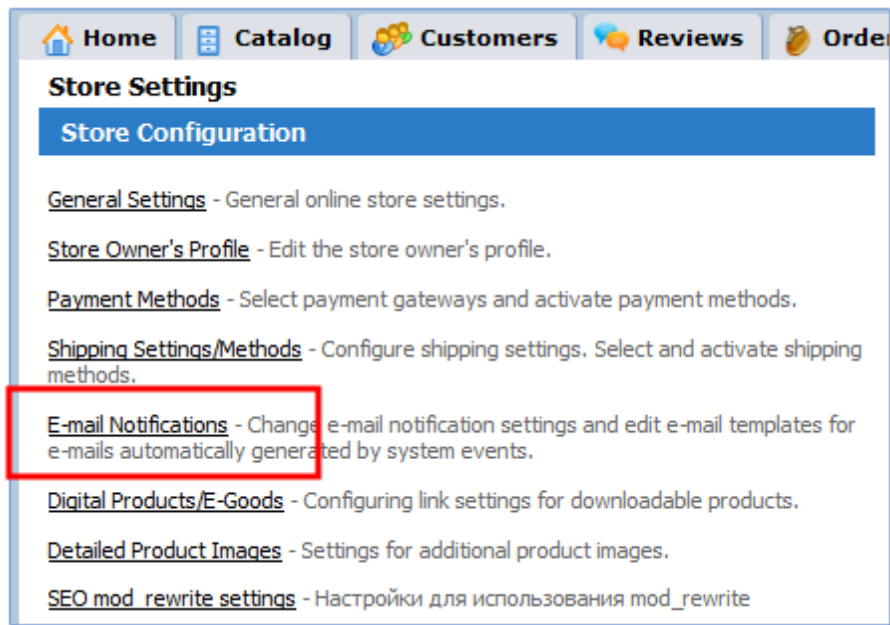
- File name
- Link
- Expire Date
- Attempts
- Current link status (**Locked/Unlocked**)

Using this window, you can:

- Change the link status
- Change the **Expire Date**
- Set the current download attempts to zero

E-mail Notifications

To customize the notification message that will be sent to the customer after they order an **Digital Products/E-Goods**, go to **Store Settings -> E-mail Notifications**.



Click **E-mail Notifications**. A window opens in which you can manage all available notifications.

The default version of the notification sent when an **Digital Product** is ordered has already been created.

Click the **Digital Products/E-Goods** Links notification type to open a new window and then edit the text and links information which will be sent to the customer.

5.1.1.9 Product Detailed Images


This page lets you add any number of large images to better illustrate your product.

Current Product: Teleflora's Fiesta Gerbera Vase

Details Options E-Goods Images Multicategories Discounts Related Products

Image Management Page Help Sort Update Close

Image List

<input type="checkbox"/>		Alt Text: <input type="text" value="Fiesta Gerbera Vase"/>	140x140, ~6.93 Kb
--------------------------	---	--	-------------------

Delete Sort Update

Add New Image

Image Path: Browse... Preview

Alt Text:

Add

* Maximum allowed file size is 2.00 Mb
* Current maximum thumbnail size is 70x70

Close

All additional images can be displayed on the product page in the storefront by using the `<?php ProductDetailedImages(); ?>` tag.

Here is an example of a block of additional product images in the storefront:

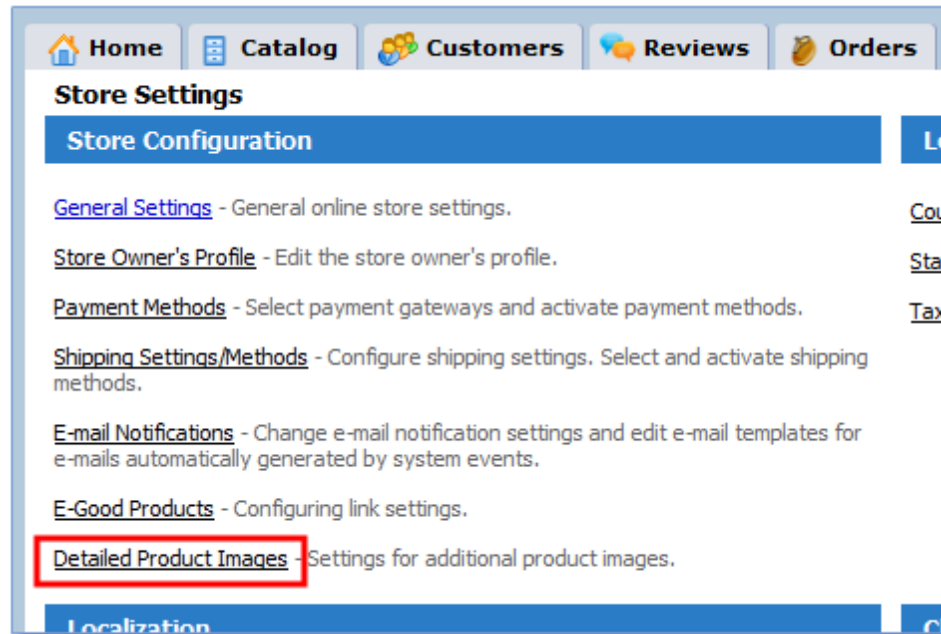
Teleflora's Be Happy® Bouquet[Larger image](#)

Cheer someone up — or just share a happy thought. Our joyful mug arrives brimming with yellow and white daisies and roses. It's like delivering a smile to their doorstep.

- **Daisies** and **roses** are delivered in Teleflora's Be Happy® Mug.
- Approximately **9-1/2" W x 10" H**
- This item is hand-arranged and delivered by a Teleflora florist.

Price: AUD39.95Quantity: [Add to cart](#)**Detailed Images**[← | RETURN TO CATALOG](#)

The block parameters can be set in **Store Settings**, in the **Store Configuration / Detailed Product Images** section.



You can set the size of the generated thumbnails as well as the number of columns for the additional images block in the storefront.

Adding Images

To add a detailed image to a product, use the form in the **Add New Image** section.

1. Select the image file with the **Browse...** button.
2. Make sure this is the right image by clicking the **Preview** button. The image will be shown above the form.
3. Optionally specify the text that customers will see instead of the image until it completely loads in their browsers.
4. Click the **Add** button.

The image will be uploaded to the server. The system will automatically generate a thumbnail for the image of the specified size. It will be shown in the **Image List** along with the alternate text, image dimensions and size.

Editing Image List

To edit an image's alternate text, type the new text in the corresponding field and then click the **Update** button to save the changes.

To change the order in which images appear in the storefront, click the **Sort** button. A window

will open where you can edit the order of images with the arrow buttons. To save the new order, click the **Update** button.

To delete an image, select it with the corresponding checkbox and then click the **Delete** button. A confirmation dialog will appear. Click **OK** to delete the image.

You can delete more than one image at the same time.

5.1.1.10 Products in Multicategories

A product may belong to one or more categories at the same time.

To assign a product to multiple categories, click the **Multicategories** tab.

The screenshot shows a web interface for managing product categories. At the top, a blue header reads 'Current Product: Teleflora's Fiesta Gerbera Vase'. Below this is a navigation bar with tabs: 'Details', 'Options', 'E-Goods', 'Images', 'Multicategories' (which is active), 'Discounts', and 'Related Products'. The main area is titled 'Product Category Management' and contains a list of categories with checkboxes. The categories are: Home (checked), Birthday, Anniversary, New Baby, Congratulations, and Special Offers (checked). The 'Special Offers' category is highlighted in light blue. At the bottom right of the dialog, there are 'Update' and 'Close' buttons.

In the category tree, select the additional categories in which the selected product should appear. To apply the changes, click the **Update** button.

5.1.1.11 Quantity Discounts

The **Discounts** section allows you to define product discounts based on quantity ordered.

To define a discount, first enter the quantity range in the 'from' and 'to' fields, and then enter

the discount value in the 'discount' field. You can use the store currency or a % value. Click the **Add** button to activate the discount:

Current Product: My first product

Details Options E-Goods Images Multicategories Discounts Related Products

Quantity Discounts Management [Page Help](#) [Update](#) [Preview](#) [Close](#)

Sale Price: \$500.00

	Product Quantity Range	Product Price/Discount	Customer group	Delete
Active ▼	from 5 Item(s) to 9 Item(s)	price per item - \$490.00 (discount - \$10.00)	Default	<input type="checkbox"/>
Active ▼	from 10 Item(s) to 49 Item(s)	price per item - \$475.00 (discount - 5%)	Default	<input type="checkbox"/>
Active ▼	from 50 Item(s) to infinity	price per item - \$350.00	Default	<input type="checkbox"/>

[Update](#) [Close](#)

from \$ discount ▼ group Default ▼ [Add](#)

Discount types

Discount type	Example
\$ discount	Product price: \$500 Discount: \$10 Price per item for this product will be \$490
% discount	Product price: \$500 Discount: 5% Price per item for this product will be \$475
fixed price	Product price: \$500 Discount: Fixed price \$350 Price per item for this product will be \$350

A discount can be temporarily deactivated. To do so, change its status to Disabled, and then click the **Update** button.

To delete a discount, select it and click the **Delete** button.

You can assign a specific membership level to any discount (using **group** drop down), customers from the specified group(s) will be able to use this discount in the storefront catalogue.

NOTE:

You can also define global discounts based on order subtotal range. This is done in the section **Marketing >> Manage Global Discounts**.

In addition, you can use the page **Admin >> Advanced Settings & Configuration >> Quantity Discount Settings** to define the way **Quantity Discount** will be applied in case the cart contains several items of the same product with different options.

5.1.1.12 Related Products

On the **Manage Related Products** page, you can add an unlimited number of related products for a product. This tells your customers about products they may be interested in addition to the product they are browsing, which can lead to added sales. For instance, a customer who is buying a notebook (laptop) could be interested in buying a mouse or a headset. To make this possible, you can add a mouse and/or headset as a related product to that notebook in your product catalog.

Here's how you can add a related product:

1. On the **Manage Related Products page**, use the Product Navigator to select the category with the related product and then select the related product.
2. After selecting the product, click **Add**. The added product displays in the list of Related Products.
3. You can select more than one related product from different categories as shown on the figure. Add them one by one using the **Add** button.

Current Product: Sony VAIO N365E/B Notebook

Details Options E-Goods Images Multicategories Discounts Related Products

Manage Related Products [Page Help](#) [Save](#) [Close](#)

Add Related Products [Show/Hide](#)

Current category: Home >> Accessories >> Mice, Trackballs, PC Remotes

Categories	Products in selected category
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Home Carring Cases Accessories <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Mice, Trackballs, PC Remotes Headsets Books Computer Upgrades Computers Monitors Notebooks & Tablet PCs PDAs 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Microsoft Comfort Optical Mouse 3000, USB

[Add](#)

Related Products [Sort](#)

- Microsoft Comfort Optical Mouse 3000, USB
- Labtec Stereo 342 Headset with Microphone

[Delete](#)


* Click 'Save' to save your changes.

[Save](#) [Close](#)

4. After all related products are selected, click **Save** to store your changes. All changes will be saved in the database. To delete or sort the related products, click **Delete** or **Sort**, respectively.

5. All the related products you've added in the **Admin Area** immediately display in the storefront (see figure). To display them related products in the storefront, use the tag `<?php RelatedProducts(); ?>`, which is available in the storefront templates for version 1.7.2 and later versions.

Sony VAIO N365E/B Notebook



[Larger image](#)


Price: \$829.00

SKU: 463746
Mfg Part #: VGN-SZ691N/X


Quantity:

[Add to cart](#)

Related Products



Microsoft Comfort Optical Mouse 3000, USB



Labtec Stereo 342 Headset with Microphone

[← | RETURN TO CATALOG](#)

5.1.1.13 Product Attributes Descriptions

Product Type	<p>Mandatory input field. This field defines the product type. Prior to entering any data for a new product, you must select the existing product type it belongs to. There are default and user-defined product types. To create a new product type, please refer to the user manual.</p> <p>Attribute Tag: <?php ProductTypeName(); ?></p>
Product ID	<p>Product ID is a unique digital product identifier. This identifier is assigned to a product by the system as a numeric value (e.g. 7693). This assigned number uniquely identifies the product among multiple other products.</p>

	Attribute Tag: <?php ProductID(); ?>
Product Name	Mandatory input field. Defines the product name. Attribute Tag: <?php ProductName(); ?>
Sale Price (per item)	The product sale price. The product is sold to customers at this price. Attribute Tag: <?php ProductSalePrice(); ?>
List Price (per item)	The product list price. The list price is not used for sales and purchases. Attribute Tag: <?php ProductListPrice(); ?>
Quantity in Stock	Goods remaining in the warehouse. The shopping cart will automatically deduct this quantity after an order is placed. Attribute Tag: <?php ProductQuantityInStock(); ?>
Low level in Stock	Shows the minimum level of a product in the warehouse, at which the stock is considered to be low. To receive e-mail notifications about low stock levels of products, manage the e-mail notification settings on the page Store Settings >> E-mail Notifications. Attribute Tag: <?php ProductLowStockLevel(); ?>
SKU	Stock Keeping Unit. Shows the product identifier according to the inventory numbering. Attribute Tag: <?php ProductSKU(); ?>
Minimum Quantity in Order	The minimum quantity of goods that may be ordered. Attribute Tag: <?php ProductMinQuantity(); ?>
Product Status	Shows whether the product is available in stock. If a product is not available in stock, or if you want to suspend selling this product, you can change its status to Offline. Then it will no longer be visible in the Storefront. Attribute Tag: <?php ProductAvailable(); ?>

Product Tax Class	<p>This field lets you select the Product Tax Class. Depending on the applicable tax assessment laws, a tax may or may not be charged at the time of sale of a product. By default, all products belong to the Nontaxable tax class. The Product Tax Class is defined in Store Settings > Taxes.</p> <p>Attribute Tag: <code><?php ProductTaxClass(); ?></code></p>
Product Manufacturer	<p>This field lets you specify the product manufacturer. Customers will be able to use it to sort products in the storefront, search by it and view products for a selected manufacturer.</p> <p>Attribute Tag: <code><?php ProductManufacturer(); ?></code></p>
Large Image	<p>Allows you to upload a corresponding image for the product.</p> <p>Attribute Tag: <code><?php ProductLargeImage(); ?></code> - Complete path to the product image.</p>
Small Image	<p>Allows you to upload a corresponding thumbnail image for the product.</p> <p>Attribute Tag: <code><?php ProductSmallImage(); ?></code> - Complete path to the product thumbnail image.</p>
Image Description	<p>Description of the image. Regular text only.</p> <p>Attribute Tag: <code><?php ProductImageAltText(); ?></code></p>
Short Description	<p>Short description of the product. You may enter HTML text.</p> <p>Attribute Tag: <code><?php ProductShortDescription(); ?></code></p>
Detailed Description	<p>Detailed description of the product. You may enter HTML text.</p> <p>Attribute Tag: <code><?php ProductDetailedDescription(); ?></code></p>
Per Item Shipping Cost	<p>Shows the costs associated with shipping the product to the customer (per item shipping cost). This cost is always added to the amount calculated by the shipping modules Flat Shipping Rates, Custom Shipping Rates, UPS, FedEx, UPS etc.</p>

	<p>The Per Item Shipping Cost represents the cost of shipping one item of a product and does NOT include its handling cost. To enter the handling cost for a product, use the Per Item Handling Cost.</p> <p>Example:</p> <p>A customer ordered 5 products, each of which has a Per Item Shipping Cost = \$2 and is shipped by FedEx. Meanwhile, the shipping cost calculated by the FedEx online module equals \$17. Thus, the total shipping cost equals \$27 ($\\$2 * 5 \text{ items} + \\$17$).</p> <p>Attribute Tag: <code><?php ProductPerItemShippingCost(); ?></code></p>
Per Item Handling Cost	<p>Represents the cost of handling one item of a product. This cost is always added to the Per Order Handling Fee.</p> <p>Example: A customer ordered 10 products, each of which has a Per Item Handling Cost = \$3.</p> <p>The Per Order Handling Fee for the order equals \$9. Thus, the Total Order Handling Charge equals \$39 ($\\$3 * 10 \text{ items} + \\9).</p> <p>Attribute Tag: <code><?php ProductPerItemHandlingCost(); ?></code></p>
Weight (per item)	<p>The weight of the product. This value is used by shipping systems for calculating shipping charges.</p> <p>Attribute Tag: <code><?php ProductWeight(); ?></code></p>
Free Shipping	<p>Shows whether the product can be delivered to the customer free of charge.</p> <p>Attribute Tag: <code><?php ProductFreeShipping(); ?></code></p>
Need Shipping	<p>Indicates whether the product should be shipped via the default shipping method.</p> <p>Attribute Tag: <code><?php ProductNeedShipping(); ?></code></p>
Page Title	<p>You can enter the page title for a given product here. This title will be displayed in the top part of the browser, in the title bar. This title is also used by search engines for page indexation purposes.</p>

	Attribute Tag: <?php ProductPageTitle(); ?>
META Keywords	Key words for this product. This information is used by search engines for page indexation purposes. Attribute Tag: <?php ProductMetaKeywords(); ?>
META Description	The description of the product to be used by search engines. This information is used by search engines for page indexation purposes. Attribute Tag: <?php ProductMetaDescription(); ?>
SEO URL prefix	This string will be added to the beginning of the URL which leads to the product info page. The following characters are accepted: 'a-z', 'A-Z', '0-9', '-', and '_'. All other symbols will be automatically replaced with an underscore '_'. Attribute Tag: <?php ProductSEOPrefix(); ?> Example: If the SEO URL prefix for a product is "Multi-Colored_Roses," then the product URL will look as follows: <i>http://www.my-first-shop.com/pid-22/Multi-Colored_Roses.html</i>
Customer Reviews	It is possible to allow or disallow the Customer reviews and Rates for the product. The available options are: <ul style="list-style-type: none">• Message and Rate,• Message only,• Rate only,• None Attribute Tag: <?php ProductCustomerReviews(); ?>

5.1.2 Manage Product Types

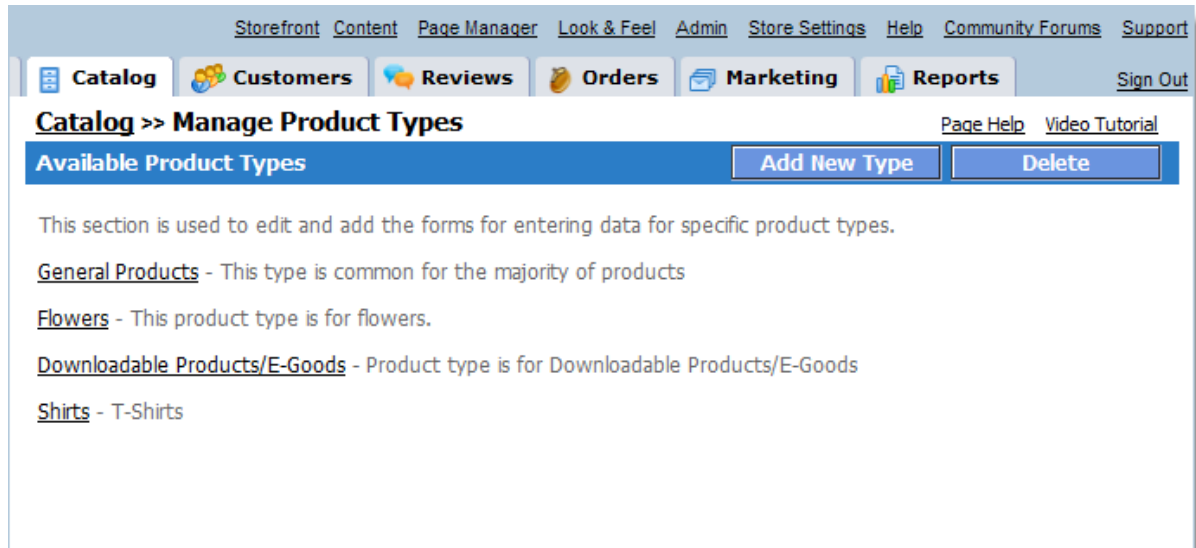
This page is used for managing product types.

The installation program creates three default product types: **General Products**, **Flowers** and

Downloadable Products/E-Goods. You're free to change them as needed, or delete them and add your own types.

To create a new product type, click the **Add New Type** button. A page will open where you can set all properties of the new type.

To edit an existing product type, click its name. The same page will open where you can edit all the details of the selected type.



To delete one or more product types, click the **Delete** button. A new window will open where you can select the product types to be deleted.

IMPORTANT!

You will not be able to delete product types already assigned to products.

Manage Product Types

Product types to be deleted [Video Tutorial](#)

Select product types to be deleted.
WARNING!!! You will not be able to restore product types after deletion.

<input type="checkbox"/> General Products	- This type is common for the majority of products. This product type is system-defined and cannot be deleted.
<input type="checkbox"/> Flowers	- Deletion impossible, because there are 24 product(s) of this product type in the catalog. To continue, please first delete product(s) of this type.
<input type="checkbox"/> Downloadable Products/E-Goods	- Product type is for Downloadable Products/E-Goods
<input type="checkbox"/> Shirts	- T-Shirts

5.1.2.1 Edit Product Type

This page lets you define the product type name and description as well as the attributes that products of this type can have. You can disable unneeded attributes, add your own attributes, and specify default attribute values that will be assigned to newly created products of this type.

Home Catalog Customers Reviews Orders Marketing Reports Sign Out

Catalog >> Manage Product Types >> Edit Product Type [Page Help](#) [Video Tutorial](#)

Edit Product Type [Product Options](#) [Save](#) [Cancel](#)

This section shows attributes that define the parameters of the selected product type. You can add/delete product attributes as required. You can also hide unwanted attributes using the 'Visibility' option.

Visibility	Attributes	Default Values
	Product Type ID*	1
	Product Type*	General Products
	Product Type Description*	This type is common for the majority of products
Key Product Details		
	Product ID*	No Default Value
	Product Name*	No Default Value
	Sale Price (per item)*	0.00 \$
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	List Price (per item)	0.00 \$
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	Quantity in Stock	10 Item(s)
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	Low level in Stock	5 Item(s)
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	SKU	SKU-00000001
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	Product Status	Online ▾
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	Product Tax Class	Taxable ▾
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	Product Manufacturer	Not defined ▾

Product Type Details

The first section contains the following fields:

Product Type ID	<i>Informational field.</i> The number assigned to this product type.
Product Type	The string used as the name of this type throughout the Admin Area, for example, in the Product Type field in the Add Product window.
Product Type Description	Information about the purpose of this product type or a list of products that should be assigned to this type. Appears on the Manage Product Types page.

Attribute List

The remaining sections of the page list all attributes that products of the current product type can have.

The attributes on this page are organized the same way as in the **Add Product** or **Edit Product** windows. There is a small '?' icon next to every attribute that you can click to open a small window with the attribute description and the corresponding template tag.

Default Attributes

The system provides default attributes common to the majority of products. They exist in every product type and cannot be deleted.

Custom Attributes

The default attributes may not be enough to properly describe some products. For instance, they do not include a Length attribute. If your store sells any products characterized by length, you should create the missing attribute and specify the length for each product of a certain product type.

To add new attributes to the product type, use the **New Custom Attributes** section.

The shopping cart system allows you to create two types of additional attributes:

Text and Numbers (Single Line)	Attributes of this type can hold a number or a single-line text up to 256 characters in length. For instance, the Length attribute, which is a numeric value, should use this attribute type.
Large Text	Attributes of this type can hold large volumes of text, optionally marked up with HTML tags. This attribute type may be useful for displaying large textual product descriptions.

Select the appropriate attribute type and click the **Add** button. A new window will open where you can specify the details of the new attribute. After you complete the form, the new attribute will be added to the page.

Existing (previously defined) custom attributes are listed in the **Custom Attributes** section. Every custom attribute has two links, **Edit** and **Delete**, which can be used to edit an attribute's details or delete an attribute, respectively.

Default Values

For every attribute listed on the page, you may set a default value. This value will be assigned to the corresponding attribute of every product added to the catalog, if the product is assigned

the current product type. Thus, you won't need to specify the same values for every new product of this type.

For instance, you can set the default value for the **Product Tax Class** attribute to 'Taxable.' Consequently, you will not need to set the 'Taxable' value each time you enter a new product of this type. Of course, these values can be changed later for any product.

Disabling Attributes

If products of the current type do not have one or more of the listed attributes (or you do not want to specify them), you can disable them.

Clear the corresponding checkboxes in the **Visibility** column on the left and then click the **Save** button (located at the top or at the bottom of the page). You will then never be prompted to enter the corresponding attribute(s) values when you add or edit a product.

Saving Changes

To save the changes made on this page, click the **Save** button.

To return to the list of product types without saving any changes, click the **Cancel** button.

5.1.2.1.1 Large Text Attribute

This page is used to create and edit custom attributes having a **Large Text** format. This format allows input of text strings of unlimited length.

To create an attribute having this format, enter the appropriate values into the **Attribute Tag**, **Attribute Name** and **Attribute Description** fields. Click the **Add** button to add the attribute to the product type being created or edited. To save the added custom attribute and all changes, click **Save** on the **New/Edit Product Type** page.

Product Type: General Products

Attribute Format: Large Text [Page Help](#)

Attribute Tag* ?	<input style="width: 95%;" type="text"/>
Attribute Name* ?	<input style="width: 95%;" type="text"/>
Attribute Description* ?	<input style="width: 95%; height: 40px;" type="text"/>

* = Required Field

Field Descriptions:

Attribute Tag	<p>The store tag name. The tag name distinguishes a given attribute from other attributes created by the user or attributes available in the system by default. The tag name must be entered without any blank spaces. The following letters and digits are allowed: 0-9, A-Z, a-z, -, and _. For instance, if you create an attribute describing the features of a TV set, you may use TVSetFeatures (no blank spaces) as its name.</p> <p>Attention: You cannot change or edit Attribute Tags after creation.</p> <p>Note: Functional word Product at the beginning will be automatically appended to the tag name. For instance, if you have created custom attribute TVSetFeatures, you need to use the tag <code><?php ProductTVSetFeatures() ?></code></p> <p>in the templates. The tag assigned to the attribute in the system is displayed below the Attribute Tag line. Please refer to the documentation for additional details about tags.</p>
Attribute Name	<p>Defines the attribute name. For instance, you may use "TV Set Features" to describe the features of a TV set. An attribute name can contain any characters, including blank spaces.</p>
Attribute Description	<p>Contains the attribute description. For instance, you may provide a description such as "This attribute allows you to specify TV set</p>

	features."
--	------------

5.1.2.1.2 Single Line Attribute

This page is used to create and edit custom attributes having the **Single Line Text and Numbers** format. This format allows storing of both numerical product parameters and short text strings up to 256 characters long.

Product Type: General Products

Attribute Format: Single Line Text and Numbers [Page Help](#)

Attribute Tag* ?	
Attribute Name* ?	
Attribute Description* ?	

* = Required Field

You must specify the following details of the custom attribute:

Attribute Tag	<p>Every product attribute has the corresponding tag that you can insert in a custom template to display the attribute value. This custom attribute tag name will be composed of the string specified in this field, put between the "Product" and "Custom" words. As you type the string, you can see the resulting tag below this field. It must be unique and cannot copy any other tag defined either in the system or by you.</p> <p>The tag may contain no spaces. Allowed symbols: 0- 9, A- Z, a- z, -, and _.</p> <p>For instance, if you create an attribute describing TV set features, you can enter "TVSetFeatures" (no blank spaces) in this field, and the resulting tag will be</p> <p><?php ProductTvsetfeaturesCustom(); ?>.</p>
----------------------	--

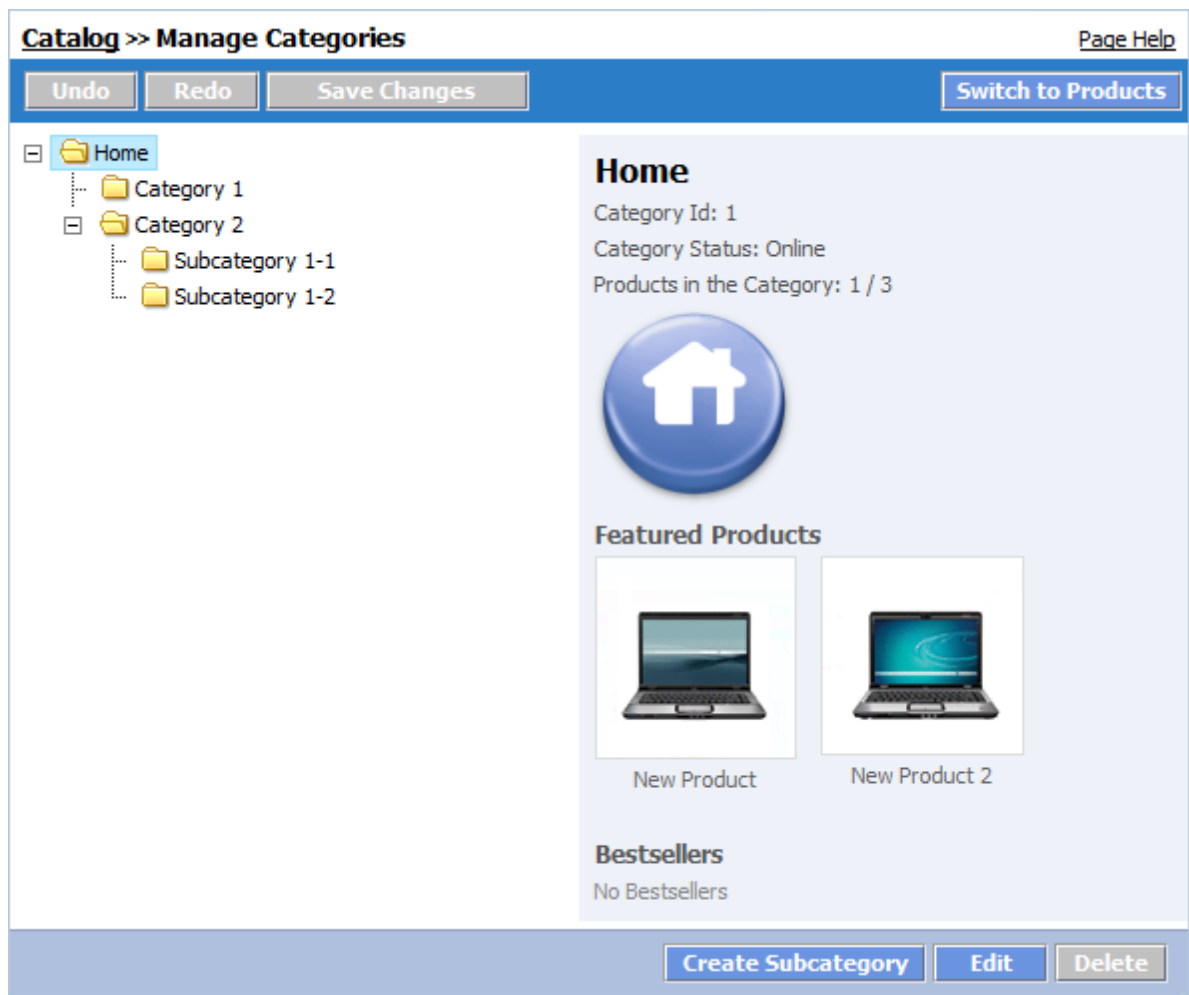
	Important! You cannot change the Attribute Tag after creation!
Attribute Name	The string that will be used as the attribute name throughout the Admin Area, for example, in the Add Product window. For instance, you may use "TV Set Features" as an attribute name for describing TV set features. An attribute name can contain any characters, including spaces.
Attribute Description	A description of the attribute's purpose. Displayed in the hint that opens when you click the small ? symbol next to the attribute name in the Add Product window. For instance, the string may be entered as "Specify the TV set features, such as Teletext, S-video input or remote control."

After you specify all attribute details, click the **Add** button to add the new attribute to the product type.

To close the window without making any changes, click the **Cancel** button.

5.1.3 Manage Categories

This page is designed to help you manage your product categories: **add**, **delete**, **sort**, or **move** them to another category, or **edit** their attributes. The categories management page is AJAX-based, so you can drag-n-drop categories and subcategories to move them.



How to create, move and delete categories using the AJAX-based interface

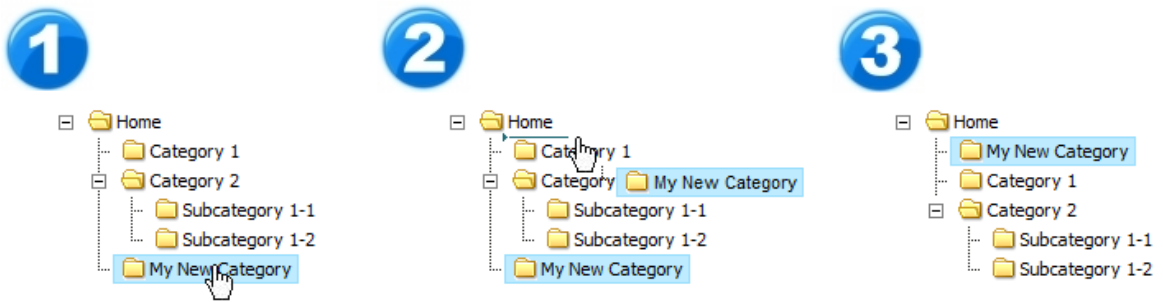
First, create a new category by clicking the Create Subcategory button. In the Add Category window, enter the name of the new category and save the results. For more details, please refer to the [Add Categories](#) link.

The created category will appear in the category tree.

Moving categories and changing their order

To move a category, select it and drag-n-drop it using the mouse to a new position between other categories or subcategories. Don't forget to save the results using the **Save Changes** button, located at the top of the Manage Categories section.

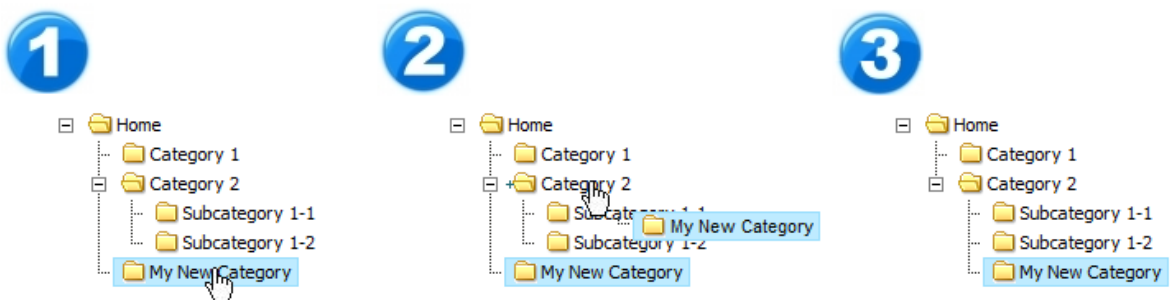
Refer to the screenshots below :



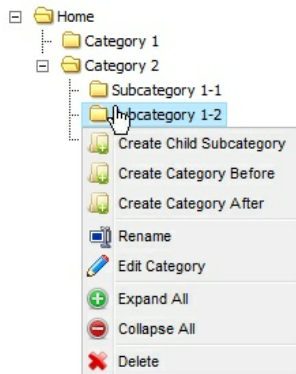
Moving a category inside another category

You can move any category inside another one. Select the category you want to move and drag-n-drop it into the target category. Don't forget to save the results using the **Save Changes** button, located at the top of the Manage categories section.

Refer to the screenshots below :



Categories and subcategories menu



Right click on a category or subcategory in the categories editor tree to open its advanced menu.

Use this menu to:

- Create a new category or subcategory
- Rename the selected category
- Modify the selected category
- Delete the selected category
- Expand or collapse the categories tree

How to remove a category or subcategory

To remove a category or subcategory, select it with your mouse and click the **Delete** button in the Manage Categories section. Note that all the products of the deleted category will be also removed.

IMPORTANT!

You cannot restore products and subcategories after they are deleted!

5.1.3.1 Add Categories

On this page you can create a new subcategory in the current category. All fields indicated with red color and marked with an asterisk (*) are mandatory fields. You can enter data into the remaining fields later.

Current Category: Home

Details | **Featured** | **Bestsellers**

New Category Details Page Help Video Tutorial Save Cancel

Category Name*

Category Status

Which products are displayed in the Storefront

Description

Category Image Show/Hide

Search Engine Information Show/Hide

* = Required Field

Save Cancel

To view information about a specific attribute, click the question mark (?). This will open a new window with the description of this attribute of the category. Once you have finished entering the data, click the **Save** button. This will create a new subcategory in the current category.

IMPORTANT!

The **Featured Products** and **Bestsellers** sections become available only after a category is created.

If you don't want to create a new category, click the **Cancel** button.

See also: [Category Attributes Descriptions](#)

5.1.3.2 Edit Categories

On this page you can edit the selected category. All attributes indicated by red color and marked with an asterisk (*) are mandatory. You can enter the remaining attributes later.

Current Category: Home

Details
Featured
Bestsellers

Category Details Page Help Video Tutorial Save Cancel

Category ID*	?	34	
Category Name*	?	<input style="width: 95%;" type="text" value="Special Offers"/>	
Category Status	?	Online ▾	
Which products are displayed in the Storefront	?	Show products only from this category ▾	
Description	?	<div style="border: 1px solid #ccc; padding: 5px;"> <div style="font-size: small; margin-bottom: 5px;"> B <i>I</i> <u>U</u> ABC | | -- Font size -- ▾ | -- Font family -- ▾ | </div> <div style="font-size: x-small; margin-bottom: 5px;"> </div> <div style="border: 1px solid #ccc; height: 100px; margin-bottom: 5px;"></div> <div style="font-size: x-small;">Path: <input style="width: 95%;" type="text"/></div> </div>	

Category Image + Show/Hide

Search Engine Information + Show/Hide

* = Required Field

Save
Cancel

To view information about a specific attribute, click the question mark (🔍). This will open a new window with the description of this attribute of the category. Once you have finished entering the data, click the **Save** button. This will save all changes you have just made.

If you don't want to edit the category, click the **Cancel** button.

See also: [Category Attributes Descriptions](#)

5.1.3.3 Category Attributes Descriptions

Category ID	Category ID (same as subcategory ID) is a unique digital identifier of a product category. This identifier is assigned to a category by the system as a numeric value (e.g. 45). This assigned number uniquely identifies the category among multiple other categories.
--------------------	--

	Attribute Tag: <?php CategoryID(); ?>
Category Name	<p>Defines the category name. For instance, if your store sells books on e-commerce, you may use 'E-Commerce' as one of the category names.</p> <p>Attribute Tag: <?php CategoryName(); ?></p>
Category Status	<p>A category may be either Online or Offline. If a category is Online, it will display in the Storefront. If a category is Offline, it will not be visible in the Storefront. All of its subcategories - and their products - will also be invisible.</p>
Which products are displayed in the Storefront	<p>This setting defines how products are displayed in the Storefront. By using it, you can set Storefront to either display products only from this category or display all products including those contained in its subcategories.</p>
Description	<p>You can enter the description for a given category here.</p> <p>Attribute Tag: <?php CategoryDescription(); ?></p>
Large Image	<p>Allows to upload a corresponding image for the category.</p> <p>Attribute Tag: <?php CategoryLargeImageSrc(); ?></p>
Small Image	<p>Allows to upload a corresponding thumbnail image for the category.</p> <p>Attribute Tag: <?php CategorySmallImageSrc(); ?></p>
Image Description	<p>You can enter the description of an image for a given category here.</p> <p>Attribute Tag: <?php CategoryImageAltText(); ?></p>
Page Title	<p>You can enter the page title for a given category here. This title will be displayed in the top part of the browser, in the title bar. This title is also used by search engines for page indexation purposes.</p> <p>Attribute Tag: <?php CategoryPageTitle(); ?></p>
Meta Keywords	<p>The keywords for this category. This information is used by search</p>

	<p>engines for page indexation purposes.</p> <p>Attribute Tag: <?php CategoryMetaKeywords(); ?></p>
Meta Description	<p>The description of the category to be used by search engines. This information is used by search engines for page indexation purposes.</p> <p>Attribute Tag: <?php CategoryMetaDescription(); ?></p>
SEO URL prefix	<p>This string will be added to the beginning of the URL which leads to the category's contents page. The following characters are accepted: 'a-z', 'A-Z', '0-9', '-', and '_'. Any other symbol will be automatically replaced with an underscore '_'.</p> <p>Example: If the SEO URL prefix for a category is "Birthday," then the category URL would be as follows http://www.my-first-shop.com/flowers/cid-8-1/Birthday.html</p>

5.1.3.4 Bestsellers

On the **Bestsellers** page you can define a list of best-selling products in the selected category. You can define this product list both manually and automatically (based on sales statistics). The products may also be selected in the mixed mode, wherein part of best-selling products is defined manually, while the remaining part is defined automatically on the basis of sales statistics.

To define the best-selling product list manually, select a category the product belongs to under the **Add Products** section, and then highlight the product. Click the **Add** button. The selected product will be displayed in the **Bestsellers** list. If necessary, you can select several products for the Bestsellers list.

If you wish to add products to the **Bestsellers** category on the basis of sales statistics, please use the **Bestsellers** settings.

Current Category: Home >> Congratulations

Details Featured Bestsellers

Manage Bestsellers Page Help Save Close

Add Products Show/Hide

From category: No category selected

Categories	Products in selected category
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Home <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Birthday Anniversary New Baby Congratulations Special Offers 	

Add

Bestsellers Sort

Delete

Settings

Add bestsellers based on sales statistics	<input type="text" value="No"/>
Quantity	<input type="text" value="5"/>
Period	<input type="text" value="1"/> <input type="text" value="Month"/>
Add bestsellers from subcategories	<input type="text" value="No"/>

* Make sure to click 'Save' to save your changes.

Save Close

Bestsellers settings:

Add bestsellers on the basis of sales statistics	If this option is set to "Yes", products will be added automatically on the basis of sales statistics. In the storefront statistics-based bestsellers are always displayed under the products that were added to the Bestsellers categories manually.
Quantity	Defines the number of products to be displayed in the storefront.
Period	Defines the period to be taken into account for sales statistics




	purposes.
Add bestsellers from nested categories	By default, only the products in the selected category will be added to the Bestsellers list. If the "Add bestsellers from nested categories" option is set to "Yes", best-selling products from nested categories will be taken into account as well.

To save all changes, click the **Save** button. The selected products will be displayed in the Bestsellers section of your online store.



A sample Bestsellers section layout in the online storefront is shown below (your storefront may look different depending on actual design; this figure is shown as an example only). The Bestsellers section of the online storefront is displayed using the `<?php Bestsellers(); ?>` tag available in the pages of default store version 1.8.x and above.

Notebooks & Tablet PCs » [HP Notebooks](#)

Bestsellers

 HP Pavilion tx1320us Notebook Was: \$1,199.99 \$1,149.99 SAVE \$50	 HP Pavilion dv9260us Notebook Was: \$1,849.98 \$1,399.98 SAVE \$450	 HP Pavilion dv2610us Notebook Was: \$849.99 \$799.99 SAVE \$50
---	--	---

HP Notebooks

 HP Pavilion dv6605us Notebook <i>AMD Athlon 64 X2 TK-55 1.8GHz Processor, Hard Drive, 15.4-inch WXGA TFT Display, Windows Vista Home Premium</i> - More about Vista - Product Number: 347662 - Mfr. Part #: GS662UA#ABA - Brand: HP Notebooks « Visit their Showcase	Was: \$749.99 \$699.99 SAVE \$50 after: \$50.00 mail-in rebate(s) <div style="border: 1px solid black; background-color: red; color: white; padding: 2px; display: inline-block;">Add To Cart</div>
 HP Pavilion tx1320us Notebook <i>AMD Turion 64 X2 Mobile Technology TL-60 Processor, 250GB Hard Drive, Touch-enabled 12.1-inch WXGA 8X DVD+-RW Drive, Windows Vista Home Premium</i> - Product Number: 347666 - Mfr. Part #: GS865UA#ABA - Brand: HP Notebooks « Visit their Showcase	Was: \$1,199.99 \$1,149.99 SAVE \$50 after: \$50.00 mail-in rebate(s) <div style="border: 1px solid black; background-color: red; color: white; padding: 2px; display: inline-block;">Add To Cart</div>

5.1.3.5 Featured Products

On this page you can define a list of featured products in the current category.

To define a featured product, select a category the product belongs to under the **Add Products** section, and then highlight the product. Click the **Add** button. The selected product will be displayed in the featured products list. If necessary, you can select several products for the featured products list.

The screenshot shows a web application interface for managing featured products. At the top, a blue header bar displays 'Current Category: Home >> Birthday'. Below this, there are three tabs: 'Details' (selected), 'Featured', and 'Bestsellers'. The main area is titled 'Manage Featured Products' and includes 'Save' and 'Close' buttons. A sub-section 'Add products' has a 'Show/Hide' checkbox. The current category is 'Home >> Birthday'. The interface is split into two columns: 'Categories' on the left and 'Products in selected category' on the right. The 'Categories' column shows a tree view with 'Home' selected, and sub-categories like 'Birthday', 'Anniversary', 'New Baby', 'Congratulations', and 'Special Offers'. The 'Products in selected category' column lists five items: 'Teleflora's Crystal Baby Block (Boy)', 'Teleflora's Morning Sunrise Bouquet', 'Plum Crazy', 'Multi-Colored Roses', and 'Premium Long Stemmed Roses'. An 'Add' button is centered below the columns. Below the columns is a 'Featured Products' section with a 'Sort' button, containing two items with checkboxes: 'Teleflora's Crystal Baby Block (Boy)' and 'Teleflora's Morning Sunrise Bouquet'. A 'Delete' button is below this section. At the bottom, a red asterisk note says '* Click Save to save your changes.' and 'Save' and 'Close' buttons are at the very bottom.

Current Category: Home >> Birthday

Details Featured Bestsellers

Manage Featured Products Save Close

Add products Show/Hide

Current category: Home >> Birthday

Categories	Products in selected category
Home	<input type="checkbox"/> Teleflora's Crystal Baby Block (Boy)
Birthday	<input type="checkbox"/> Teleflora's Morning Sunrise Bouquet
Anniversary	<input type="checkbox"/> Plum Crazy
New Baby	<input type="checkbox"/> Multi-Colored Roses
Congratulations	<input type="checkbox"/> Premium Long Stemmed Roses
Special Offers	

Add

Featured Products Sort

Teleflora's Crystal Baby Block (Boy)

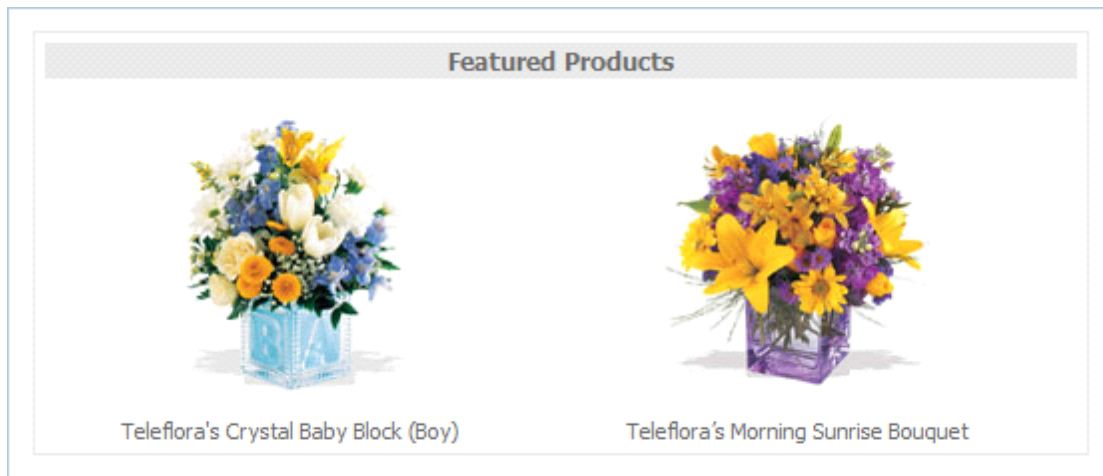
Teleflora's Morning Sunrise Bouquet

Delete

* Click Save to save your changes.

Save Close

After you've added the products you wanted, click **Save**. The selected featured products will appear in the current category.



5.1.4 Product Export

This wizard lets you export either your whole product catalog or its single category to a **CSV** file. The modified **CSV** file can be imported back into the product catalog with the **Product Import** wizard. This offers a much quicker way to update your product catalog than manual editing.

IMPORTANT!

Not every product attribute can be exported to a **CSV** file. Please see the [Product Import](#) help page for the list of supported attributes. Attributes not listed in the table cannot be edited in the way described above.

Step 1 of 3. Select Category to Export

In this step, you should choose a category to export. Select the necessary category using the **Category to export** box. If you want to export its subcategories as well, select the **Include subcategories?** checkbox.

The top-level store category is selected by default (usually it is called **Home**), including all of its subcategories. This implies that the entire products catalog is to be exported.

The image shows a screenshot of the 'Export products' wizard. The title bar is 'Export products'. Below it, the step is 'Step 1 of 3. Select Category.'. There are two main fields: 'Category to export' with a dropdown menu showing 'Home' and a question mark icon, and 'Include subcategories?' with a checked checkbox and a question mark icon. At the bottom, there are two buttons: 'Next' and 'Cancel'.

Category to export	This is the category whose products will be exported. If you want to export its subcategories as well, select the checkbox " Include subcategories? "
Include subcategories?	If this checkbox is selected, all subcategories contained in the category selected to export will also be exported.

Step 2 of 3. Select Attributes to Export

In this step, select which product attributes should be exported. If you don't need to edit some of the product data, simply clear the checkbox of the corresponding attribute. The resulting CSV file will not contain the corresponding column.

CSV file is a text file, so images are exported separately. If you choose to export images, the system can either copy them to a separate directory on the server or compress them to a TAR file in that directory or let you download it to your local computer. Select the option that is most convenient for you. If you select to put images to a server directory, specify the directory with the browser (the directory must already exist).

The images can then be modified, re-compressed to a TAR file and uploaded back to the server. TAR archives are supported by most compression software. If your compression software doesn't handle TAR archives, you can download the [free 7-Zip](#) archiver which can make TAR files. You can also import uncompressed images from a server directory.

To begin exporting, click the **Start** button.

Export products

Step 2 of 3. Select Attributes to Export.

Category to export	Home (Include subcategories)
Quantity of products to export	1

Attributes to export Check all / Uncheck all

To continue exporting, click the Start button.

<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Product ID	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Small Image
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Product Name	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Image Description
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Category	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Short Description
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Sale Price (per item)	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Detailed Description
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> List Price (per item)	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Per Item Shipping Cost
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Quantity in Stock	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Weight (per item)
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> SKU	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Page Title
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Low level in Stock	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> META Keywords
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Available	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> META Description
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Product Tax Class	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Per Item Handling Cost
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Large Image	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Free Shipping

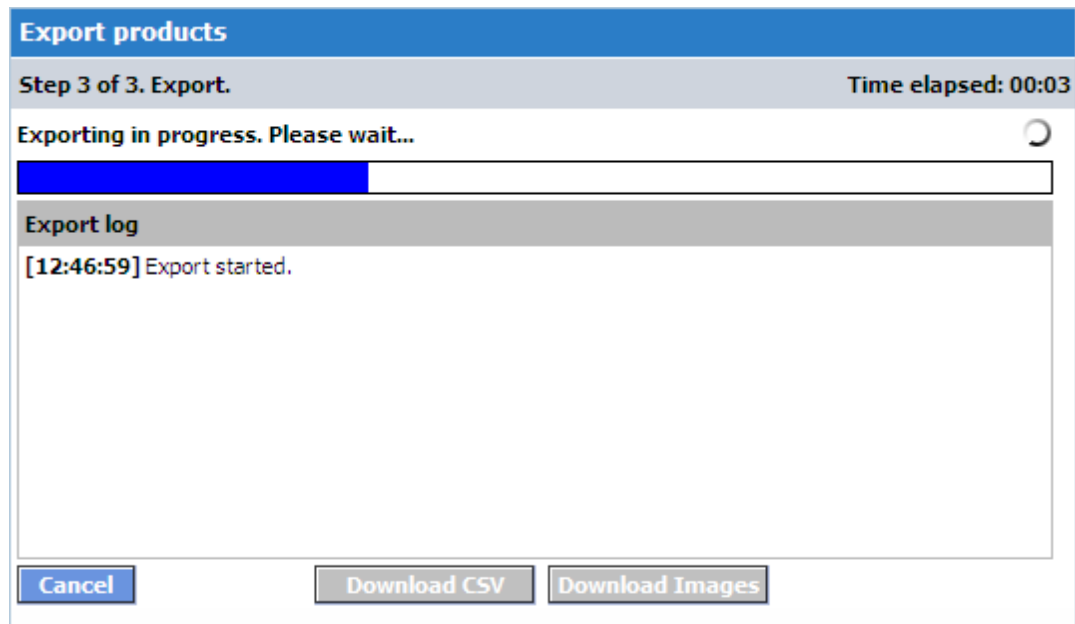
Image actions

Compress to tar archive and download to local computer.
 Compress to tar archive and copy to the specified server location.
 Copy to the specified server location.

Step 3 of 3. Export

In **Step 3**, the actual export process is performed. Depending on the size of your product catalog, the process may take from several seconds to over 10 minutes and more. Typically, exporting 1,000 products on an average server takes about 1-2 minutes.

The **Export Log** displays additional information about the export process. After the export process completes, the **Download CSV** button becomes active. If image exporting has been performed to a TAR archive, the **Download Images** button becomes active as well. Click these buttons to download the exported data to your local computer.



5.1.5 Google Base (Froogle) Export

This wizard lets you prepare a file for listing your products in **Google Product Search**. It generates the correct Data Feed that you can manually upload to your **Google Base** account.

Overview

[Google Product Search](#) (formerly **Froogle**) is a free **Google** service that helps people quickly find stuff they can buy online. You can list your products for free and attract additional customers to your store. See Google's [Information for Sellers](#) and [Google Base Help](#) to get started.

Step 1 of 2. Select Products to Export

In this step you must specify the category that contains the products you want to appear on **Product Search** pages, and whether you want to include additional details about your products in the file. You can view the descriptions of all fields by clicking the small question mark icons.

After specifying all the settings, click the **Start** button to perform the export.

Google Base Export

Step 1 of 2. Google Base (Froogle) export settings. [Page Help](#)


Category to export	<input type="text" value="Home"/>
Include subcategories?	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
Storefront Links	<input type="text" value="http://www.my-first-shop.com/"/>
Expiration Date	2008 | November | 25
<input type="checkbox"/> Location	Don't export.
<input type="checkbox"/> Payment Notes	Don't export.
<input type="checkbox"/> Payment Accepted	Don't export.

Step 2 of 2. Exporting

In this step, the actual generation of the Data Feed file is performed. The process details are provided in the **Export log**.

Google Base Export

Step 2 of 2. Google Base (Froogle) export. [Page Help](#)

Product export in progress. Please wait...  Time elapsed: 00:12

Export log

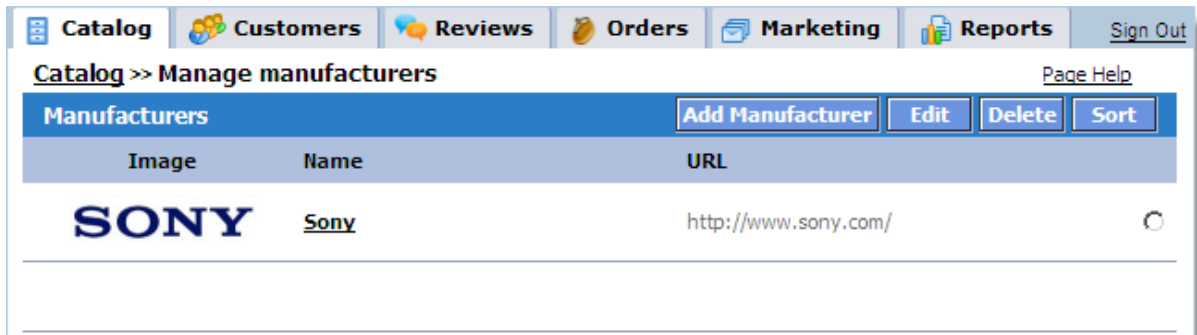
```
[15:51:35] Export started.
[15:51:41] 1 of 24 products exported.
[15:51:43] 3 of 24 products exported.
[15:51:46] 6 of 24 products exported.
```

When the export finishes, click the **Download** button to save the Data Feed to your computer. Now you can upload this file to your **Google Base** account, and the products contained in it will appear in **Google Product Search**.

5.1.6 Manufacturers

The **Manufacturers** page lets you manage the list of and information on manufacturers, which

can be then linked to products in your catalog. Your store visitors can filter product lists in categories based on the manufacturer.



To add/edit information about a manufacturer, click the **Add Manufacturer/Edit** buttons, respectively. A new window will appear for entering/editing manufacturer details. To save all changes, click the Save button.

Manufacturer

Add Manufacturer Page Help Save Cancel

Manufacturer name* ?

Image ?

Upload Image Browse

Server file Browse

Alt text:

Update Image

[Delete](#)

URL ?

Manufacturer description ?

B **I** **U** **ABC** | | | | | | | | | | | |

Path:

*** = Required Field**

Save Cancel

To delete a manufacturer from the list, select it on the main page and click the Delete button.

After you confirm the deletion action, the manufacturer will be deleted from the list.

To sort the list of manufacturers, click the **Sort** button. This sorting order determines the order in which manufacturers appear in the **Storefront** filters.

5.1.7 Product Import

The **Product Import** wizard helps you import products into product catalog from a file. Importing a list of products is a quick and convenient way to create the product catalog for the first time or update many products at once in the existing catalog, when needed.

Preparation

The product list that you wish to import in the catalog should be contained in a CSV file.

CSV is a convenient format for storing spreadsheet data in simple text file. This format is widely supported by different spreadsheet editors, including **Microsoft Excel**, **OpenOffice Calc** and **Google Docs & Spreadsheets**. See **Wikipedia** article [Comma-Separated Values](#) for a detailed description.

The **CSV** file that you import into product catalog may contain the following fields:

Field Name	Contents and behavior
ProductID	<p>A unique number which identifies a product.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none">• If specified and a product with the same ID already exists in the catalog, the existing product attributes are replaced with the values in other CSV fields. If a CSV field is empty, the corresponding attribute remains untouched.• If specified but there's no product with this ID in the database, product import will be not possible.• If empty, the product is added to the catalog with the system specified ProductID.
ProductName	<p>The text that will appear as the product name everywhere in the storefront, shopping cart and administration interface. When you add a new product to the catalog, the name is required – it is impossible to create products without names.</p>

ProductCategory	<p>The product will appear under the specified category in the catalog. To specify a subcategory, specify it as a path, starting from the category in which you will be importing the products (you will be prompted for it in Step 2), separating each subcategory in the path by a forward slash ('/'). If the specified category doesn't exist in the catalog, it will be automatically created.</p> <p>There's no need to specify categories for products already in the catalog. The shopping cart system will keep them in the same categories and will only update their attributes.</p> <p>It is impossible to put a product in several categories during import. However, this can be done later using the Product Manager.</p>
ProductSalePrice	The price that will be shown in the storefront. Number only, no currency symbols. Period as decimals separator.
ProductListPrice	Any other price you wish to associate with the product. Use it for any purposes you need. Number only, no currency symbols. Period as decimals separator.
ProductQuantityInStock	The number of product items you have in stock and are able to sell.
ProductLowStockLevel	When the quantity of the product items left in stock reaches this number, the software can notify you.
ProductSKU	Any code that you use to keep track of the product in your stock.
ProductAvailable	A string, either ' Online ' or ' Offline .' If the product is specified as 'Offline,' it will not be shown to the customer in the storefront. This is useful if you need to change some product options and do not want your customers to order it until you finish. Default value: ' Online '
ProductTaxClass	A string, either ' Taxable ' or ' Nontaxable .' Default value:

	'Nontaxable'
ProductLargeImage	The image file that your customers will see on the product info page. Specify the image file name with extension, but without any path. The actual image files are imported separately.
ProductSmallImage	The image file that your customers will see next to the product name in various lists in the storefront. Specify the image file name with extension, but without any path. The actual image files are imported separately.
ProductImageAltText	The text that your customers will see if they do not load the product images (for example, in case their Internet connection is slow).
ProductShortDescription	A brief text description for your product. Appears next to the product name in various lists in the storefront. HTML code is allowed.
ProductDetailedDescription	A detailed text description for your product. Appears on the product info page. HTML code is allowed.
ProductPerItemShippingCost	A number indicating the cost of shipping of one product item. Number only, no currency symbols. Period as decimals separator.
ProductPerItemHandlingCost	A number indicating the cost of handling of one product item. Number only, no currency symbols. Period as decimals separator.
ProductWeight	A number indicating the product's weight, in units specified in store settings. Number only, no currency symbols. Period as decimals separator.
ProductFreeShipping	A string, either 'YES' or 'NO.' If you specify 'YES,' the product's shipping cost, even if specified, won't be added to a total order amount. Default value: 'NO'

ProductNeedShipping	A string, either ' YES ' or ' NO .' Use ' NO ' for digital goods (downloadable files). Default value: ' YES '
ProductPageTitle	The text that will appear in the user's browser's window title in front of your store name and in search results for the product info page.
ProductMetaKeywords	The keywords that search engines will associate with the product when they will index the product info page.
ProductMetaDescription	The text that search engines will use as the description for the product info page in the search results.
ProductSEOPrefix	The string that will be added to the beginning of the URL that will point to the product info page. Allowed characters: 'a'- 9 ' and dash ('-'). All other characters will be automatically replaced with underscores ('_').
Product <custom attribute tag>	<p>You can add a custom product attribute to the product type to which you're importing the products, and specify the attribute values in such a field.</p> <p>For example, if you add the 'Book Author' attribute (with 'author' as the attribute tag) to the 'Books' product type, you can specify authors for all books in a CSV field named 'ProductAuthor'.</p> <p>It is possible to include several fields of this type in one CSV file, one for every custom attribute.</p>

IMPORTANT!

All **CSV** fields not listed in the above table will be ignored. It is impossible to import or update product properties not described in the table.

If a **CSV** field is left blank, the corresponding product attribute will be set to its default value. If it is not defined in the table, it will be set to zero for numeric values and to an empty string for string values.

The fields in the **CSV** file can be separated either by semicolons (';') or commas (','),. If a **CSV** field contains one of these characters, it should be put in quotes. Spreadsheet editors normally

export **CSV** files using this technique. If you have problems exporting files to **CSV** format, refer to your editor's help system.

We provide a [sample CSV file](#) prepared for importing into product catalog. It contains all of the above fields and several products for a sample DVD store. You're free to study the file and use it as a starting point for listing your own products.

If you specified product image file names in your **CSV** file, you need to prepare actual image files. Product images can be imported in the catalog in two ways:

- They can be uploaded to a single directory on the server where the shopping cart software is installed.
- They can be imported in a single TAR archive. The archive file can either reside on your local computer or be uploaded to the server where the shopping cart software is installed. TAR archives are supported by most compression software. If your compression software doesn't handle TAR archives, you can download the [free 7-Zip archiver](#) which can make TAR files.

Once you prepare both the CSV file and the images, start the three-step importing process described below.

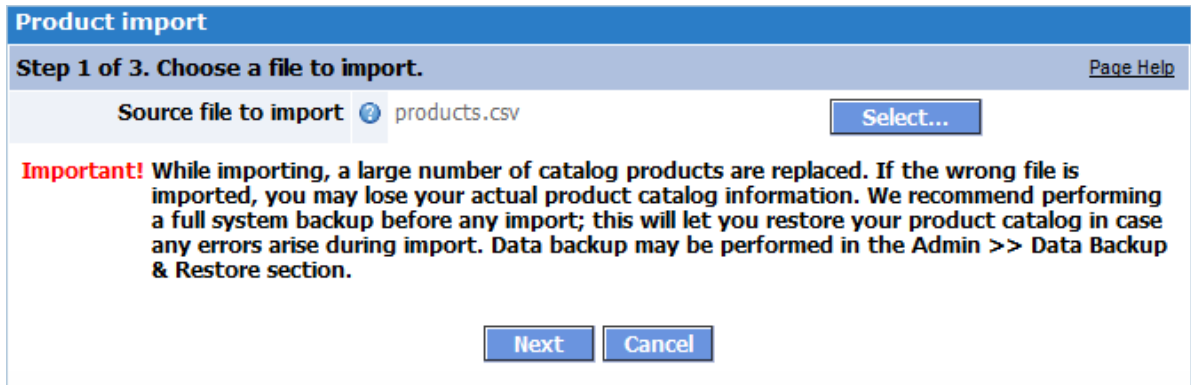
Step 1 of 3. Selecting a file to import.

During this step, you should select the **CSV** file containing the data you need to import. The file can be located either on your PC or be uploaded to the server where the shopping cart software is installed.

IMPORTANT!

While importing, a large number of catalog products are replaced. If the wrong file is imported, you may lose your actual product catalog information. We recommend performing a full system backup before any import; this will let you restore your product catalog in case any errors arise during import. Data backup may be performed in the **Admin >> Data Backup & Restore** section.

Choose the file, click **OK** and then click **Next**.



Step 2 of 3. Checking the file and choosing import parameters.

The purpose of this step is to verify the integrity and correctness of the **CSV** file specified for import. If it contains any errors, they are displayed in the Import file check log and no import is made. The wizard also determines the quantity of products it will add to and update in the catalog, which is useful for checking.

If this file is allowed to be imported, you will be prompted for **Target product type** and **Target category**. Please specify the product type and category in which you want the products to appear. If you specified categories in the imported file, the wizard will expect them to exist in the **Target category** that you specify in this step. If such categories do not exist, they will be created under the specified **Target category**.

Also in this step, if the **CSV** file contains product image file names, you are prompted for the location of actual image files. Choose the TAR file on your local computer or a server directory (it may contain uncompressed images or a TAR file).

Click **Start** to begin the importing process.

Product import

Step 2 of 3. Checking file 'products.csv', choosing actions. [Page Help](#)

Check completed. Time elapsed:00:13

Check results		Import file check log
New products:	101	[20:48:42] Illegal record on file line 5 - incorrect `ProductID` and/or `ProductName`.
Products to be updated:	1	[20:48:42] Illegal record on file line 5 - incorrect `ProductID` and/or `ProductName`.
Incorrect records:	3	[20:48:52] 105 of 105 records checked. [20:48:52] Check completed.

Important! Import file contains errors and incorrect records that are impossible to import. Errors are listed in the import file check log. What should we do now?

Import. Ignore incorrect records.

Stop importing. I'll import later, after I've corrected the errors.

Required parameters for new products

Target product type

Target category

Source location of product images

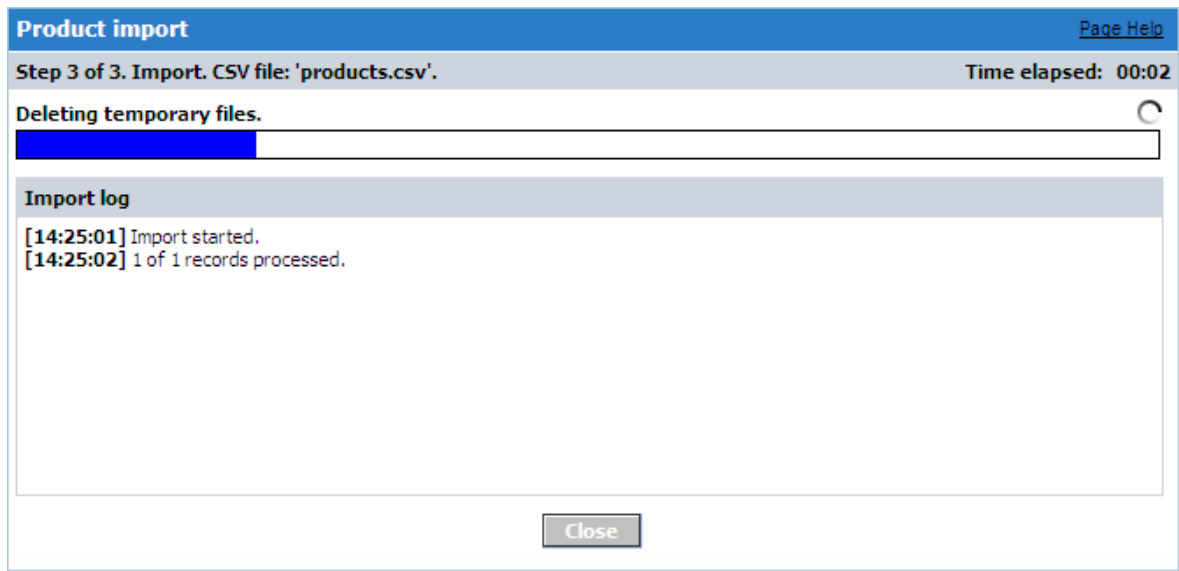
tar archive
File not specified

server folder

Step 3 of 3. Importing.

This step includes importing **CSV** data and images (if specified).

The **Import Log** displays additional information about the process, such as creation of categories or missing image files, if any.



After the process is finished, you may review the log, click **Close** to close the **Product Import** wizard and then refresh the admin area to reflect the change in product numbers.

You may now delete the imported **CSV** and **TAR** files. You may re-create them at any time by exporting products back from the catalog.

5.1.8 Product Search

The **Search** page lets you search products using keywords. Matching keywords are color-highlighted in the product description text.

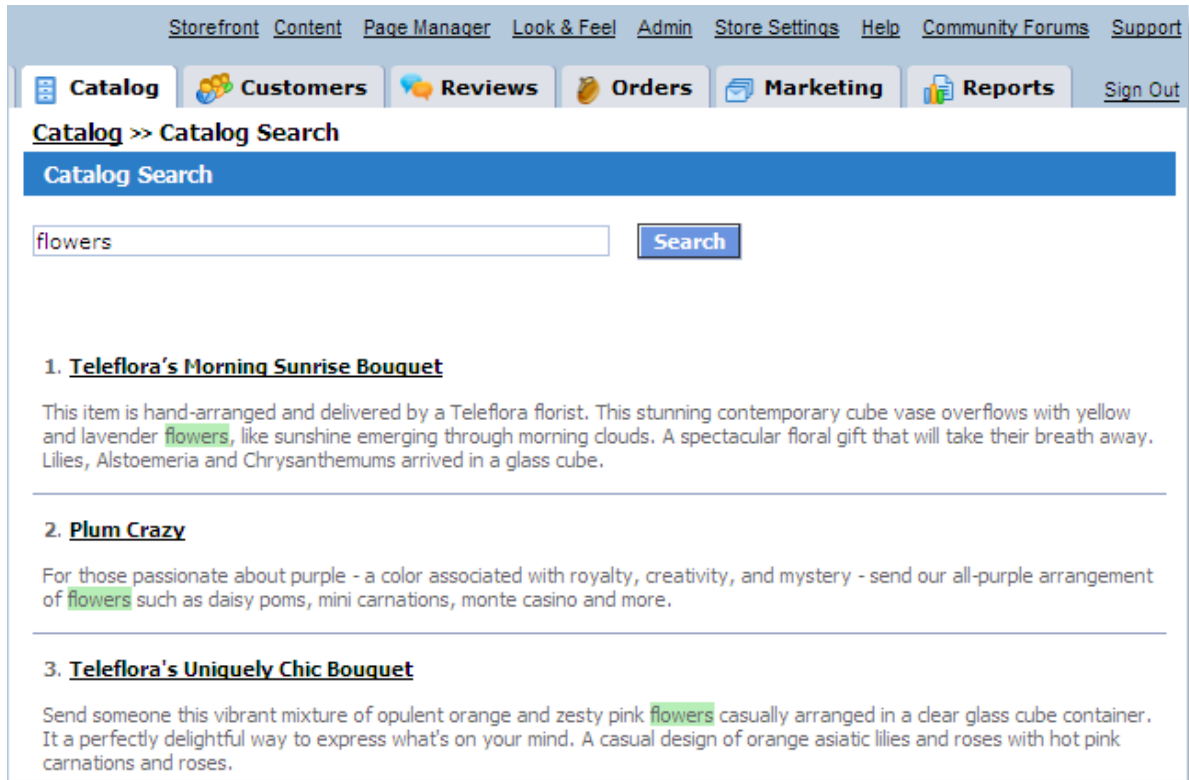
In both the **Admin Area** and the **Storefront**, search is performed in the same way. Matching products are displayed according to relevance: the more suitable a product is to the search keywords, the higher it will be on the list of results.

Relevance is calculated as follows: the user-entered search string is split into words, and these words are searched for in key product attributes.

Product search relevance sequence:

1. (Highest relevance) All keywords are found in the product name.
2. All keywords are found in the product description.
3. At least one keyword is found in the product name.
4. At least one keyword is found in the product description.

5. At least one keyword is found in the product **SKU**.
6. At least one keyword is found in the product **Meta Description** or **Meta Keywords**.



The screenshot displays the Avactis Shopping Cart Admin Area interface. At the top, there is a navigation menu with links for Storefront, Content, Page Manager, Look & Feel, Admin, Store Settings, Help, Community Forums, and Support. Below this is a secondary menu with icons and labels for Catalog, Customers, Reviews, Orders, Marketing, and Reports, along with a Sign Out link. The main content area is titled 'Catalog >> Catalog Search'. A search input field contains the text 'flowers', and a 'Search' button is positioned to its right. Below the search results, three items are listed:

- 1. Teleflora's Morning Sunrise Bouquet**
This item is hand-arranged and delivered by a Teleflora florist. This stunning contemporary cube vase overflows with yellow and lavender **flowers**, like sunshine emerging through morning clouds. A spectacular floral gift that will take their breath away. Lilies, Alstroemeria and Chrysanthemums arrived in a glass cube.
- 2. Plum Crazy**
For those passionate about purple - a color associated with royalty, creativity, and mystery - send our all-purple arrangement of **flowers** such as daisy poms, mini carnations, monte casino and more.
- 3. Teleflora's Uniquely Chic Bouquet**
Send someone this vibrant mixture of opulent orange and zesty pink **flowers** casually arranged in a clear glass cube container. It's a perfectly delightful way to express what's on your mind. A casual design of orange asiatic lilies and roses with hot pink carnations and roses.

5.2 Reviews

This page allows you to search, view, modify and approve your customers' product reviews:

Reviews

Quick Review Navigation

Pending Reviews: 0
Bad Reviews (2 stars and below): 0
Good Reviews (4 stars and above): 1
All Reviews: 1

Search Reviews

Date range: 1 January 2008 - 23 October 2009

Author: exactly

IP address:

Product: exactly **Select Product**

Rating: 1 star and above

Status: All statuses **Search**

Search result: 1 review found. Showing: 1 - 1 **Add new** **Update status** **Delete**

Date	Review	Rating	Status
22-10-2009 13:07:55	Product: New Product Posted by Dave from 127.0.0.1 Nice product!	Price Ease of Use Quality	Approved <input type="checkbox"/>

Date **Review** **Rating** **Status**

Add new **Update status** **Delete**

Your customers can post product reviews on any product by using the **Add Your Review** link on the product information page:

Add Review

Nickname:*

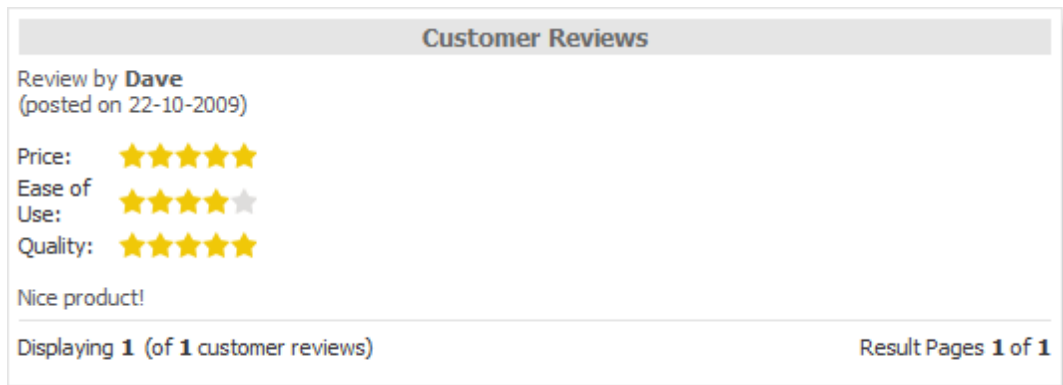
How do you rate this product:*

	1 star	2 stars	3 stars	4 stars	5 stars
Price	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>
Ease of Use	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>
Quality	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>

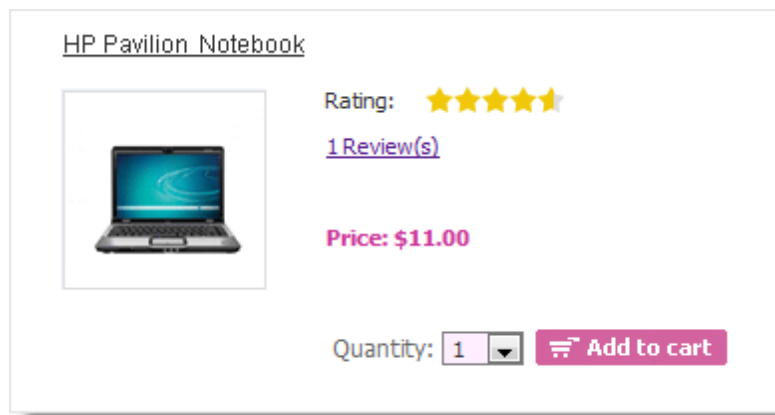
Review:*

Post Review

After a review is posted, it is visible for that product on the reviews page as follows:



On the product information page, only the average Rating will be visible (the sum of all rates of all reviews for this product):



This module provides several advanced settings.

For example, you can approve individual customer reviews before they are posted publicly; enable or disable multiple reviews from the same IP; and enable or disable the review feature for registered or unregistered customers.

For more information about this module's advanced settings, please refer to [Advanced Settings & Configuration](#).

A step-by-step guide on how to create, configure and manage customers reviews is available here: [Reviews management Guide](#)

5.2.1 Reviews management Guide

To configure the reviews for your products, follow these steps:

1 Create a new list of rate categories

You can add a new list of rating categories using the **Customer Reviews: List of Rates** page in the [Admin](#) page (**Advanced Settings & Configuration** section).

Here you can configure the list of rating categories for customers to use in their reviews. You can define any rating categories, for example: Quality, Ease of Use, Value for Money and so on.

Example:

The screenshot shows the 'Advanced Settings' interface for 'Customer Reviews: List of Rates'. It features a table with columns for 'Rate Name', 'Show/Hide', and a checkbox. The table contains three entries: 'Price', 'Ease of Use', and 'Quality'. Each entry has a 'Show' dropdown menu and a checkbox. Below the table are buttons for 'Sort', 'Update', and 'Delete'. At the bottom, there is an 'Add Rate' section with a text input field, a 'Show' dropdown, and an 'Add' button. A 'Close' button is located at the bottom center of the interface.

You customers will be able to rate each option in storefront.

Example of a storefront review:

The screenshot shows a customer review titled 'Customer Reviews'. The review is by 'Dave' and was posted on 22-10-2009. It includes three categories: 'Price' with 5 yellow stars, 'Ease of Use' with 4 yellow stars and 1 grey star, and 'Quality' with 5 yellow stars. The review text says 'Nice product!'. At the bottom, it indicates 'Displaying 1 (of 1 customer reviews)' and 'Result Pages 1 of 1'.

2 Customer Reviews configuration

After the list of rating categories is created, you can configure the module settings using the **Customer Reviews** page on the [Admin](#) page (**Advanced Settings & Configuration** section).

You can activate or deactivate the Customer Reviews module, and set the order in which customer reviews will be sorted.

Also you can define the following settings:

Approve before posting	Choose which reviews require approval before posting: anonymous reviews, all reviews, or none (i.e. disable the "approve" mode for all reviews).
Enable multiple reviews from the same IP	Allow or disallow posting multiple reviews for the same product from the same IP address.
Write and read review settings	Allow or disallow unregistered customers to write or read reviews.

3 Managing Customer Reviews

After Customer Reviews are configured, you can test the reviews interface on the storefront, add a few reviews as a customer, or just wait for new customer reviews to be posted.

Reviews can be managed from the **Reviews** tab in the Admin zone:

Reviews

Quick Review Navigation

Pending Reviews: 0
Bad Reviews (2 stars and below): 0
Good Reviews (4 stars and above): 1
All Reviews: 1

Search Reviews

Date range: 1 January 2008 - 23 October 2009
Author: exactly
IP address:
Product: exactly [Select Product](#)
Rating: 1 star and above
Status: All statuses [Search](#)

Search result: 1 review found. Showing: 1 - 1 [Add new](#) [Update status](#) [Delete](#)

Date	Review	Rating	Status
22-10-2009 13:07:55	Product: New Product Posted by Dave from 127.0.0.1 Nice product!	Price ★★★★★ Ease of Use ★★★★★ Quality ★★★★★	Approved <input type="checkbox"/>

[Edit](#) [Add new](#) [Update status](#) [Delete](#)

Use this Tab to:

- **Search all reviews by date range, author, IP, etc.**
- **Update review statuses (Approved, Not approved, Pending).**

- **Edit existing reviews or add new reviews.**

5.3 Orders

The **Orders** page allows you to manage orders placed by your customers, export orders to the CSV or Quickbooks file format (.IIF), print packing slip or invoices.

It also lets you find orders by their date, status, or order ID.

Quick Order Navigation Search Orders

New Orders: 1 **Date range** **Order statuses** **Payment statuses** **Order ID:**

In progress: 0 From: 1 January 2008 New Order In Progress Waiting

Ready to Ship: 0 To: 18 December 2009 Ready To Ship Shipped Fully Paid

All: 1 **Affiliate ID:** Cancelled Declined Declined

Completed Suspicious

New Orders: 1 order(s) found.

Date: 08-10-2009
Amount: \$0.00 **Tax Total:** \$0.00

Order ID	Login/E-mail	Customer Name	Order Date	Amount	Tax		Order Status	Payment Status
100012	m.watson@example.com	Mark Watson	08-10-2009	\$271.82	\$20.14	Packing Slip Invoice	New Order	Waiting

Overview

The **Orders** page contains the following sections:

- **Quick Order Navigation**
- **Search Orders**
- **Orders list**

The **Quick Order Navigation** section lets you quickly access orders having one of these statuses: **New**, **In Progress**, or **Ready to Ship**, or see the full list of orders. To view all orders with a given status, click the corresponding link. All orders with that status will be displayed in the **Orders** section.

The **Search Orders** section is used to search orders by number, affiliate ID or order/payment statuses. When searching by status, you can also specify a date interval. To search within a particular date interval, set the starting ending dates of the required interval.

The **Order List** shows the orders that match the conditions set in the above sections. You can

export all orders or selected orders to the CSV or Quickbooks (.IIF) format.

For more information on how to export orders to Quickbooks, please refer to the [Quickbooks](#) article.

To view the details of a particular order, click the order number in the first column. The information will display in a new window. To view the details of the customer who placed an order, click the customer's login/e-mail in the second column. Customer information will display in a new window.

Order Statuses

The order statuses used in shopping cart are listed below. After the customer places an order, the order is assigned a New Order status. The status of an order can be changed manually by the system administrator when processing the order.

When changing order status, there is an option to automatically notify the customer about the order status change. This is done by selecting the appropriate settings in **Store Settings >> Store Configuration >> Email Notification** options. Such email notifications let you inform your customers about the progress of their orders and help raise their level of commitment and loyalty to your online store.

- **New Order** - order has been placed but has not been accepted for processing.
- **In Progress** - order has been accepted for processing.
- **Ready to Ship** - order has been processed and is ready to be shipped.
- **Shipped** - order has been shipped.
- **Cancelled** - order has been cancelled.
- **Declined** - order has been declined by the online store manager.
- **Completed** - order has been completed in full.

Payment statuses

The possible payment statuses are listed below. The status of a payment can be changed manually by the system administrator. Also, payment status can be automatically set to **Fully Paid** by the system if the payment has been successfully completed through an online payment processing system.

- **Waiting** - payment is pending or has not been made.

- **Fully Paid** - payment has been made in full.
- **Declined** - payment has been declined (for example, because a credit card fraud is suspected).

Changing order and payment statuses

To change the status of an order or payment:

- In the line containing the order name, change the status of payment or order;
- Click the **Update** button.

This will save any changes made to the status(-es).

Deleting orders

To delete one or more orders, select the appropriate orders and click the **Delete** button.

For information on a particular order, click its number. Order information will be displayed in a new window.

For information on a particular customer, click the link containing the customer's name. Customer information will be displayed in a new window.

5.3.1 Order Details

The **Order Details** page allows you to view and edit order information. It also lets you change order status and payment status.

The page contains the following sections:

[Key Order Details](#)

[Product\(s\) Ordered](#)

[Billing/Payment Information](#)

[Shipping Information](#)

[Comments](#)

[Order Logs](#)

Order Number: 100012	
Key Order Details Page Help Video Tutorial Update Edit Close	
Order ID ?	100012
Invoice	Invoice
Packing Slip	Packing Slip
Payment Processor Order ID ?	
Order Date	11-09-2008
Order Amount	\$271.82
Order Status ?	New Order ▾
Payment Status ?	Waiting ▾
Payment Method ?	Cash On Delivery
Shipping Method ?	2Day (\$43.79)
Tracking Number ?	<input type="text"/>
Product(s) Ordered	+ Show/Hide
Billing Information	+ Show/Hide
Shipping Information	+ Show/Hide
Comments	+ Show/Hide
Order Logs	+ Show/Hide
Update Edit Close	

Key Order Details

This section contains the most important data for an order:

Order ID	<i>Informational field.</i> The unique ID assigned to the order by shopping carts. Each order has an order ID and can be identified by it.
Invoice	Clicking the link opens a window with an automatically generated invoice for the order, which can be easily printed and sent to the customer.
Packing Slip	Clicking the link opens a window with an automatically generated slip for the order, which can be easily printed and put on the package containing the order

	items.
Payment Processor Order ID	The unique ID assigned to the order by an online payment system used to pay for it. Can be missing if the payment was made in cash or in another way without using an online payment system. It can also be missing if a glitch occurred while the payment was processed by an online payment system.
Order Date	<i>Informational field.</i> The day when the order was placed.
Order Amount	<i>Informational field.</i> The total cost of the order, including shipping and handling costs, after applying all taxes and discounts.
Order Status	<p>Identifies the current order status; can be changed.</p> <p>Every order can have one of the statuses listed below. When a customer places an order, the order is assigned the New Order status. Order status can be changed manually by an administrator when processing the order.</p> <p>When changing order status, there is an option to automatically notify the customer about the order status change. This is done by selecting the appropriate settings on the Store Settings / Store Configuration / E-mail Notifications page. Such e-mail notifications let you inform your customers about the progress of their orders and help raise their level of commitment and loyalty to your online store.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • New Order - order has been placed but has not been accepted for processing. • In Progress - order has been accepted for processing. • Ready to Ship - order has been processed and is ready to be shipped. • Shipped - order has been shipped. • Cancelled - order has been cancelled. • Declined - order has been declined by the online store manager. • Completed - order has been completed in full.

Payment Status	<p>Identifies the current status of payment for the order; can be changed.</p> <p>The possible payment statuses for an order are listed below. The status of a payment can be changed manually by an administrator. Also, payment status can be automatically set to Fully Paid by shopping cart after the payment has been successfully completed by one of the supported online payment processing systems.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Waiting - payment is pending or has not been made. • Fully Paid - payment has been made in full. • Declined - payment has been declined (for example, because a credit card fraud is suspected).
Payment Method	<p>The method used to pay for the order. If the payment method is subsequently changed, this field can be edited manually.</p>
Shipping Method	<p>The method used to ship the order to the customer.</p>
Tracking Number	<p>The number assigned to the order by a shipping company. Can be used to track the progress of order shipment.</p>

Product(s) Ordered

This section provides complete information on all ordered products, all applied taxes, discounts, and shipping cost. This section can be regarded as the explanation of the **Order Amount** field above.

Billing/Payment Information

These two sections display the information supplied by the customer. The payer is the person billed for the order and is not necessarily the customer.

Shipping Information

Shipping Information displays addressee information. The addressee is the person to whom

the order is shipped and is not necessarily the customer or the payer.

Comments

This section can contain any comments about the particular order. For example, you may record a history of a conversation with the customer which provides more details about the order.

Add Comment	Enter your comments about the order in this field. They will be saved together with other changes when you click the Update button.
--------------------	--

Order Logs

This section lets you track the changes made to a placed order.

Possible Actions

To get information about any attribute on the page, click the blue question mark to open a short description (in a new window).

To edit all order attributes, click the **Edit** button.

To save any changes made to the data and the statuses, click the **Update** button.

To close the window without making any changes, click the **Close** button.

5.4 Marketing

This section provides information about available marketing tools.

Available topics:

[Global Discounts](#)

[Manage Coupons and Promo Codes](#)

[Manage Newsletters](#)

[Manage Subscriptions](#)

[Affiliates / Manage transaction tracking](#)

[Gift Certificates](#)

5.4.1 Global Discounts

This page lets you define discounts that will apply to all orders placed at your store. They are called **Global Discounts**. Global discounts can be calculated based on subtotal order amount only.

Update	Order Subtotal Range	Order Discount	Delete
Active	from 100.00 \$ to 1000.00 \$	5%	<input type="checkbox"/>

from to discount \$

Discounts List

Currently defined global discounts are displayed in a list with the following columns:

Status	Indicates if shopping cart system applies the discount. Change this setting to temporarily disable or enable previously defined discounts.
Order Subtotal Range	The discount will be applied to orders only when the subtotal amount falls within the specified range.
Order Discount	The specified percentage is subtracted from Order Total after calculating taxes and shipping cost for an order.

If no corresponding discount is found for an order being placed (the order subtotal doesn't fall in any of the defined ranges), then no discount is applied for that order.

To view global discounts applied to orders, see their individual Order Info pages.

Adding Discounts

To add a new discount, use the form at the bottom of the list. See above for the descriptions of form fields required. Click the **Add** button to save and activate the new global discount.

Removing Discounts

To disable one or more global discounts (that is, to stop applying them to any orders), select

the **Disabled** option from the corresponding drop-down list on the left and then click the **Update** button in the list header. The new status of discount(s) will be saved.

To completely remove a global discount, select it with the corresponding checkbox on the right and click the **Delete** button in the list header. The discount will be removed from the list.

5.4.2 Manage Coupons and Promo Codes

Coupons and Promo codes are effective marketing tools widely used to boost online sales. The **Manage Coupons/Promo Codes** page is designed for you to create, modify and delete coupons and **Promo codes**.

To edit a **Promo code** created previously, click the **Edit** button. Click **Delete** to delete an existing **Promo code** or **coupon**.

While browsing your storefront, customers will be able to use registered Promo codes and/or coupons to receive their discounts.

Coupons/Promo codes								Settings	Add Promo Code	Edit	Delete
Campaign Name	Promo Code	Global Discounts	Status	Min Subtotal	Discount	Start/Expire	Times Used				
The First Promo	12001	Apply Both	Active	\$30.00	5%	01-05-2007 / 15-06-2007	0/1	<input type="radio"/>			
Super Promo	12002	Apply Both	Active	\$10.00	15%	01-06-2007 / 30-06-2007	0/5	<input type="radio"/>			

You can add a new **Promo Code** by clicking the **Add Promo Code** button. In the window that appears (shown below), you can specify the details of your **Promo code** or **coupon** e.g. select free shipping, free handling, expiration time for the promo code and other options:

Promo Code

Details **Discounted Items**

New Promo Code Details

Save Close

Campaign Name*	?	<input type="text" value="Main campaign"/>
Promo Code*	?	<input type="text" value="Promo code"/>
Status	?	Active ▾
Min Subtotal	?	<input type="text" value="25.00"/> \$
Discount	?	<input type="text" value="10.00"/> % ▾
Start date	?	2009 ▾ October ▾ 12 ▾
End date	?	2010 ▾ December ▾ 31 ▾
Times To Use	?	<input type="text" value="5"/>
Global Discounts	?	Apply Both ▾
Free Shipping	?	Enables Free Shipping. ▾
Free Handling	?	Enables Free Handling. ▾
Coupon application rule: if there are products not specified in Discounted Items List	?	Apply the coupon but only to the products specified in Discounted Items List. ▾

* = Required Field

Save Close

The **Promo Code** could be applied to the certain category, product or group of products on the **Discounted Items** tab:

Edit Promo Code Discounted Items

Details Discounted Items

PromoCode 'Promo code', 'Main campaign' Campaign Save Cancel

From category: Home >> Computers

Categories	Products in selected category
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Home Computers 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> New Product

Add Category Add Product

The products and categories to which the coupon discount applies are listed here. Once the category is selected the coupon discount applies to all the category products, the subcategories and the subcategory products.

Categories affected	Products affected
<input type="checkbox"/> Home	<input type="checkbox"/> New Product

Delete Save Cancel


If you need to apply the **Promo Code** to some specific category you should: select the needed category from the "Categories" list and click on the "Add Category" button.

If you like to apply the Promo Code to some specific product: select the products category from the "Categories" list, select the product from the "Products in selected category" list and click "Add product" button. Don't forget to click the "Save" button to save the Promo code.

A customer enters the coupon code or **Promo code** during checkout. The storefront interface for this operation looks roughly like this (you may get a different-looking interface):

Shopping Cart

Total Items: **1** Amount: **\$51.00**

 [Enlarge image](#)

T-shirt

- . Price: \$51.00
- . Item amount:
- . Options:
 - Color:** Red
 - Size:** S
- . Total: **\$51.00**

[View details](#) [Delete Item](#)

Subtotal: \$51.00


If you have a Coupon/Promo Code, enter it you receive a discount. A previously used coupon can be cancelled to be used at a later time.

Enter Promo Code: [Apply](#)

[← | RETURN TO CATALOG](#) [UPDATE CART](#) [DELETE ALL](#) [CHECKOUT | →](#)

If an active **Coupon code** or **Promo** code is entered, an appropriate discount is applied to **Order Subtotal**.

Shopping Cart
Total Items: **1** Amount: **\$45.90**

 [Enlarge image](#)

T-shirt

. Price: \$51.00

. Item amount:

. Options:
Color: Red
Size: S

. Total: **\$51.00**

View details
Delete Item

Subtotal: \$51.00

Promo Code Discount: \$5.10

Discounted Subtotal: \$45.90

You are using coupon "Birthday123". This coupon provides a 10% discount off your Order Subtotal. The discount only applies if the cart's Subtotal is at least \$20.00 or higher.

Remove coupon

← | RETURN TO CATALOG
UPDATE CART
DELETE ALL
CHECKOUT | →

5.4.3 Manage Newsletters

This page allows you to send out mass e-mails to your customers.

Catalog
Customers
Reviews
Orders
Marketing
Reports
Sign Out

Marketing >> Manage Newsletters

Newsletters						Edit Signature	Add	Edit	Send	Delete
Created	Sent	From	Subject	Topics						
25-11-2008 15:22:25	Not sent	Shopping Cart <store@shop.com>	<u>Example</u>	Main topic						

To create an e-mail newsletter you want to send, click the **Add** button.

In the new window that appears, enter the e-mail information. Enter your e-mail's subject in the **Subject** field. Enter your name or the name of your store in the **From** field.

For **Reply To**, enter the e-mail address to which users will be able to reply. Then write (or paste) the e-mail newsletter in the **Letter Content** field. Click **Save** to save your e-mail

newsletter.

The **Topics** is the special list of the recipients (please refer to the [Manage Subscriptions](#) for more information).

Add/Edit Newsletter

Save Cancel

Message

Subject * ?

From * ?

Reply To * ?

Letter Content ?

B ***I*** **U** ABC |
 ☰ ☷ ☶ ☵ |
 -- Font size -- -- Font family -- ☰

A ab |
 ☰ ☷ ☶ ☵ |
 ↶ ↷ ↺ ↻ |
 🔗 🔗 📎 🌐 HTML 🔍

📝 ☰ ☷ ☶ ☵ |
 ☰ ☷ ☶ ☵ |
 ☰ ☷ ☶ ☵ |
 ☰ ☷ ☶ ☵ |
 ☰ ☷ ☶ ☵ |
 ☰ ☷ ☶ ☵ |
 ☰ ☷ ☶ ☵ |
 ☰ ☷ ☶ ☵ |
 ☰ ☷ ☶ ☵

Topics ? Main topic

*** = Required Field**

Save Cancel

You can create an unlimited number of e-mail drafts. Click the **Edit** button to edit a saved e-mail, or click the **Delete** button to delete it.

Catalog
Customers
Reviews
Orders
Marketing
Reports
Sign Out

Marketing >> Manage Newsletters

Newsletters						Edit Signature	Add	Edit	Send	Delete
Created	Sent	From	Subject	Topics						
25-11-2008 15:22:25	Not sent	Shopping Cart <store@shop.com >	Example	Main topic						

To send your newsletter to customers, select it from the list of newsletters (you can select only one e-mail at a time) and click the **Send** button.

Sending Newsletter

Step 1 of 2. Select Recipients.

Subject	Example
From	steve@my-first-shop.com
Topics	• Main topic
Total unique recipients	350

Now everything is ready to send out your newsletter – just click **Send**, and the system will start sending out the e-mails.

Sending Newsletter

Step 2 of 2. Sending Newsletter. Time elapsed: 00:02

Sending... ↻

E-mail Log

[15:35:47] E-mail sending started

5.4.4 Manage Subscriptions

On the **Manage Subscriptions** page, you can create or edit Subscription topics, as well as export or import subscriber e-mail addresses:

Catalog
Customers
Reviews
Orders
Marketing
Reports
Sign Out

Marketing >> Subscriptions

Name	Subscribers	Access	Status	Auto Subscribe	☐
Main topic	1	All Users Can Subscribe	Active	Yes	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>

The subscription topic can be created for different types of users: e.g. registered users or guests:

Edit Subscription Topic

Topic Save Cancel

Topic Name *

Topic Access

- All Users Can Subscribe
- Guests Only
- Registered Users Only

Topic Status

- Active
- Send Only
- Inactive

Autosubscribe

- Yes
- No

Save Cancel

The **Autosubscribe** option will add all new registered customers to the subscribers list automatically.

To add subscribers to a topic, click the **Subscribe** button and the Subscribe dialog box will display:

Subscribe

Topics

Here is a list of the topics to subscribe the clients whose email addresses will be entered.

Name	Subscribers	Access	Status
Main topic	1	All Users Can Subscribe	Active

E-mails

Enter the e-mail addresses

- Enter here
- Load from file
- Get from Customer database

Explore...

Submit Cancel

In the Subscribe dialog box, you can add new subscribers using 3 types of import:

- Add the user e-mail addresses manually
- Import e-mail addresses from a text file
- Add subscriber e-mails address from your store database of users

After a **Subscription topic** is created and subscribers have been added to it, you can start creation and sending the Newsletter.

For more information please refer to the [Manage Newsletters](#) article.

You can view the list of the subscribers of a **Subscription topic**. Click on the Subscription topic name to display the list of e-mail addresses and customer names.

If you decide to unsubscribe some users from the Subscription topic, click the **Unsubscribe** button on the Manage Subscriptions page:

Name	Subscribers	Access	Status	Auto Subscribe
Main topic	1	All Users Can Subscribe	Active	Yes

The unsubscribe process is similar to the subscribe procedure:

Unsubscribe

Topics
Here is a list of the topics to unsubscribe the clients whose email addresses will be entered..

Name	Subscribers	Access	Status
Customers	1	All Users Can Subscribe	Active

E-mails
Below you should enter the email addresses

Enter here

Load from file

Get from Customer database

To unsubscribe one customer, add his or her e-mail address to the e-mail field.

To unsubscribe many customers at a time, use either a file containing the e-mail addresses of the subscribers or the e-mails in your store's database.

5.4.5 Affiliates / Manage transaction tracking

On the **Affiliates / Manage Transaction Tracking** page, you can activate third-party tools for collecting statistics on your store operation.

The following systems are currently supported:

- **ClixGalore**
- **Google Analytics** e-commerce transactions tracking

To activate a transaction tracking tool, you need to register with the appropriate service/tool vendor. After registration you will be assigned a unique account ID.

The **ClixGalor** service calls it "AdID".

The **Google Analytics** e-commerce transactions tracking service calls 'Account Number.'

Enter the ID you have received in the field for the service you want to activate. Then, select the

corresponding checkbox in the "**Active**" column, and click the Update button.

Module Name	Module Settings	Active
ClixGalore	AdID <input type="text" value="xxxx"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
Google Analytics e-commerce transactions tracking.	Account Number <input type="text" value="UA-xxxxxx-x"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>

See also advanced affiliate options: [Advanced Settings & Configuration: Affiliate Settings](#)

5.4.6 Gift Certificates

On the **Manage Gift Certificates** page, you can add, edit and delete gift certificates.

Code	From	To	Amount	Remainder	Send Type	Status	Created
ACES-U6FN-9AFE-E00S	Avactis Store	Customer	\$100.00	\$100.00	E-mail	Pending	Oct 25, 2010

The gift certificate can be created for any user:

Add Gift Certificate

From*	<input type="text" value="Avactis Store"/>
To*	<input type="text" value="John Doe"/>
Amount*	<input type="text" value="100"/> \$
Message	<input type="text" value="Gift certificate"/>
Send Type*	<input type="text" value="E-mail"/> <input type="button" value="v"/> <input type="text" value="E-mail"/>
Status*	<input type="text" value="Pending"/> <input type="button" value="v"/>

*** = Required Field**

There are two send types for gift certificates: **E-mail** and **Post**.

If you will select **Post** type, you will be able to enter post address for this certificate:

Edit Gift Certificate	
Edit Gift Certificate Save Close	
Code	ACES-U6FN-9AFE-E00S
From*	<input type="text"/>
To*	<input type="text"/>
Amount*	<input type="text" value="100"/> \$
Remainder*	<input type="text" value="100"/> \$
Message	<input type="text" value="Gift Certificate"/>
Send Type*	Post <input type="button" value="v"/>
First Name*	<input type="text"/>
Last Name*	<input type="text"/>
Country*	United States <input type="button" value="v"/>
State*	Alabama <input type="button" value="v"/>
Zip/Postal Code*	<input type="text"/>
City*	<input type="text"/>
Address*	<input type="text"/>
Phone	<input type="text"/>
Status*	Active <input type="button" value="v"/>
* = Required Field	
Add Close	

5.5 Content Management System

You can change or create new content pages using the built-in Content Management System and WYSIWYG editor. The pages you created will be SEO-friendly - you can add META description, META keywords and SEO-titles to them.

Note: It is possible to change the default logo of the store, the welcome text on the main page, and default banners. This is done directly from the Content Management System and WYSIWYG editor. You can find more information about these elements in the [Default content blocks structure](#) article.

The Content Management System control page consists of 2 sections: (1) Content pages list, (2) Links and menu page:

The screenshot displays the Avactis Shopping Cart Admin Area. The main content area is titled "CMS" and shows a table of content pages. The table has columns for ID, Title, Parent Title, Status, and Available For. Below the table, there are "Add New" and "Update" buttons. The footer contains the copyright notice: "© 2004-2009 Pentasoft Corp. All Rights Reserved. License Agreement Privacy Policy".

ID	Title	Parent Title	Status	Available For
1	Home	Home	Active	All Customers
2	Shop	Shop	Active	All Customers
3	Product	Product	Active	All Customers
4	Cart	Cart	Active	All Customers
5	Checkout	Checkout	Active	All Customers
6	Account	Account	Active	All Customers
7	Help	Help	Active	All Customers
8	Privacy Policy	Privacy Policy	Active	All Customers
9	Terms of Service	Terms of Service	Active	All Customers
10	Shipping	Shipping	Active	All Customers
11	FAQ	FAQ	Active	All Customers
12	Blog	Blog	Active	All Customers
13	News	News	Active	All Customers
14	Footer	Footer	Active	All Customers

1 Content pages

The **content** pages section allows you to create new CMS pages and articles.

To create a new article, click the **Add New** button to open a new "Add new article" page with a WYSIWYG editor:

Add new article

Save
Close

Article information

ID *

customer_service

Article Title *

Customer Service

Parent Article *

Root level

Article content

Customer Service

Path: font > em > font

Status *

Active
 Hidden
 Disabled

Article SEO title

Customer Service

Article META description

Customer Service

Article META keywords

Customer Service

Available for *

All customers
 Registered customers
 Anonymous customers

* - required field

Save
Close

You can define the following settings on this page:

Article ID	You can use numbers and letters in the ID of the article (please do not use spaces or special symbols).
Article title	The title of the article. It will display in the header of the article block in the storefront.
Parent Article	It is possible to build a hierarchy of articles, where the parent article is the main article for the modified article page. You will see a "See also" label on the parent page

	on the storefront with the list of connected pages, and a "Back to parent page" link on connected pages, which takes you to the parent page.
Article content	The content of the article. You can modify content pages or create new pages using a built-in WYSIWYG editor. Use this editor to add any HTML code, images, Flash animation or HTML tables to your pages.
Status	3 article statuses are possible: <ul style="list-style-type: none">• Active – Article is visible in article lists and accessible by customers• Hidden – Article is not visible in article lists but accessible by customers• Disabled – Article is neither visible nor accessible by customers
Article SEO title	The title of the HTML page. This title is very important for SEO.
Article META description	META description of the HTML page.
Article META keywords	META keywords of the HTML page.
Available for	The article is available for 3 types of customers: <ul style="list-style-type: none">• All customers• Anonymous customers (non-registered customers)• Registered customers

CMS links and menu

After the content page is created, you can add a link to this page to storefronts menus.

There are 3 menus in the default theme (1) top menu, (2) main menu (3) footer menu:



For example, to modify the top menu, click on the **Page Top Menu** from the **Links & Menu** section on the **Content** page:

Links & Menu				
ID	Title	Active links	Inactive links	
top_menu	Page Top Menu	4	0	<input type="checkbox"/>
main_menu	Main Menu	4	0	<input type="checkbox"/>
footer_menu	Footer Menu	5	0	<input type="checkbox"/>
				<input type="button" value="Add New"/> <input type="button" value="Delete"/>

The **Edit Menu** page will opened:

Edit Menu

Menu Information Save Close

ID *

Title

Name	Type	Link/Target	Active	
<input type="text" value="About Us"/>	Article ▾	<input type="text" value="About Us"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
<input type="text" value="Contact Us"/>	Article ▾	<input type="text" value="Contact Us"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
<input type="text" value="Need Help?"/>	Article ▾	<input type="text" value="Need Help?"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
<input type="text" value="US: 1-855-555-555"/>	Text ▾		<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>

Add New Link
 URL ▾

* - required field

Save Close

On the **Edit Menu** page, you can define the following settings:

Menu ID	<p>The ID of the menu.</p> <p>These menu IDs are reserved in the system by default:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> top_menu main_menu footer_menu
Title	Title of the menu
Link name	The name of the new menu element
Link type and Link target	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> URL You can enter any WWW address as a link target System System pages of the store. The following target options are available:

	<p>Category page: link to category (category ID is required)</p> <p>Product page: link to product (product ID is required)</p> <p>Cart: link to store cart page</p> <p>Checkout: link to store checkout page</p> <p>Registration: link to store registration page</p> <p>Customer Personal Info: link to customer's personal information page</p> <p>Customer Orders History: link to customer's orders history page</p> <p>Customer Change Password: link to customer's change password page</p> <p>Customer Forgot Password: link to customer's forgot password page</p> <p>Customer Account Home: link to main page of customer account</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Article The list of the available articles • Text You can enter any text, for example your company's phone number
Active	You can activate or disable any menu element

Note:

You can use the **CMS Tags** in the storefront. For more information please refer to the [Tag library](#).

5.5.1 Default content blocks structure

Default content blocks elements:



These content pages IDs are reserved by the system:

- **Blocks**

"logo": Store Logotype

"copyright": Page Footer Copyright Text

"welcome_text": Welcome text and central banner

"right_banner": Right banner of the main page

- **Pages**

"about_us": About Us page

"customer_help": Need Help page

"customer_service": Customer Service page

"privacy_statement": Privacy statement page

"contact_us": Contact Us page

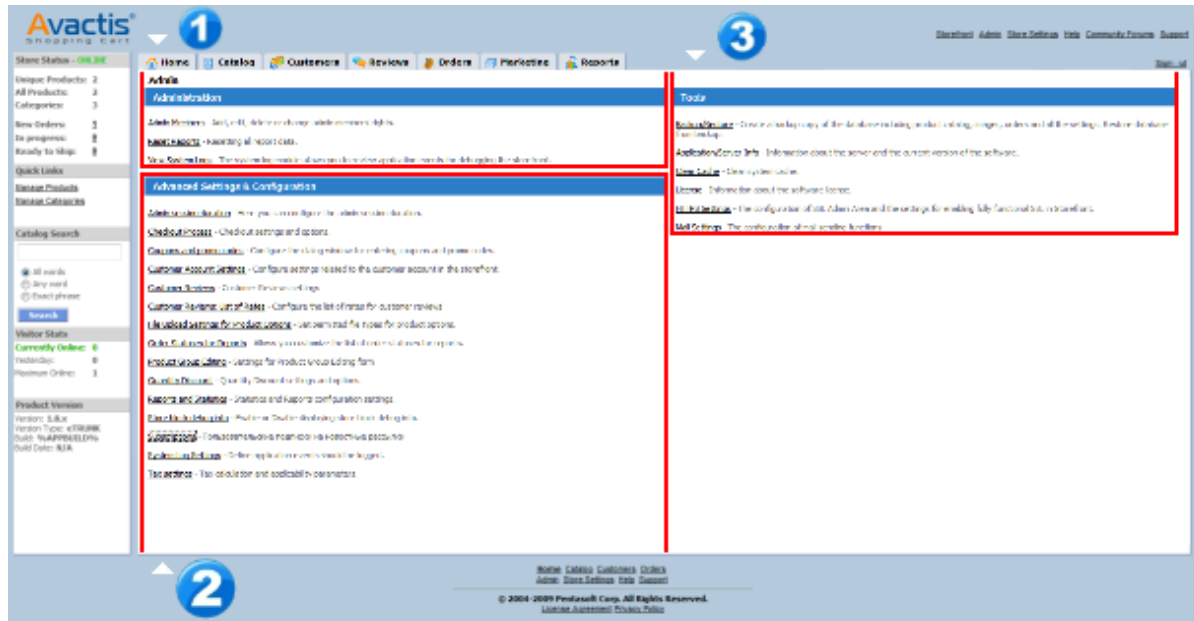
You can modify these default elements directly from the CMS using built-in WYSIWYG editor.

Note:

These CMS pages and blocks are reserved by the system. If you remove the logo block from the CMS, the block will disappear in the storefront. If you create the block with the logo ID again, this block will be visible in the storefront on the default logo place (at the top of the store header).

5.6 Admin

The administrator control page consists of 3 sections: (1) Administration, (2) Advanced Settings & Configuration and (3) Tools:



1 The "Administration" section is described in the following articles:

[Admin Members](#)

[Reset Reports](#)

[System Logs](#)

2 "Advanced Settings & Configuration" articles:

[Advanced Settings & Configuration](#)

3 "Tools" articles:

[Data Backup & Restore](#)

[Application/Server Info](#)

[Clear Cache](#)

[License](#)

[HTTPS Settings](#)

[Mail settings](#)

5.6.1 Admin Members

The **Admin Members** page allows you to manage access to shopping cart software. You can add and delete admin member accounts and change their system access permissions.

The page includes the following details for each account:

Name	Admin member's name. Displayed as a link. Clicking on the link opens a window where you can edit the account details.
E-mail	Admin member's email address. This is the address to which system notifications - low stock levels, new order placements, order status changes, security issues - are sent, depending on the account permissions.
Number of sign-ins	The number of times this member signed in to the admin area, recorded to date.
Last Logged In	Indicates the date this member last signed in to the admin area.
Created	Indicates when this account was created.

Modified	Indicates the date this account's properties were changed last.
-----------------	---

To edit an account's details, click the admin member's name. The account settings will be shown in the window that opens.

The availability of settings depends on the permissions set for each particular account. Click the **Edit** button to make changes or click the **Change Password** button to change the password for the account.

To create a new admin account, click the **Add** button. A new window will open where you can set the settings for the new account.

To delete an account, select the corresponding checkbox and then click the **Delete** button. After you confirm deletion, the account will be deleted from system and the member will no longer be able to access the admin area.

Depending on the permissions set for your account, some of the actions described above may be unavailable.

Permissions (Access Control List)

You can create new types of administrative users and restrict them to specific store functions using the **Permissions** section.

For example, you can create an administrative user with access to Reviews, Reports and Marketing tabs:

Add Admin Member

Admin Info [Page Help](#)

First Name*	<input type="text" value="John"/>
Last Name*	<input type="text" value="Doe"/>
E-mail*	<input type="text"/>
Password*	<input type="password" value="••••••••"/>
Re-Enter Password*	<input type="password" value="••••••••"/>
Send New Password by Email	<input type="checkbox"/>

Permissions

Administration	<input checked="" type="radio"/> No access	<input type="radio"/> Full access
Store Settings	<input checked="" type="radio"/> No access	<input type="radio"/> Full access
Catalog	<input checked="" type="radio"/> No access	<input type="radio"/> Full access
Orders	<input checked="" type="radio"/> No access	<input type="radio"/> Full access
Customers	<input checked="" type="radio"/> No access	<input type="radio"/> Full access
Reviews	<input type="radio"/> No access	<input checked="" type="radio"/> Full access
Reports	<input type="radio"/> No access	<input checked="" type="radio"/> Full access
Marketing	<input type="radio"/> No access	<input checked="" type="radio"/> Full access

*** = Required Field**

Your new password must conform to the following password policy:

- it should be different from the current password
- it should be different from your e-mail address
- its length should be from 8 (minimum) to 32 (maximum) characters
- it should contain characters of at least two types listed below:
 - Lowercase characters
 - Uppercase characters
 - Numbers
 - Punctuation characters

5.6.2 Advanced Settings & Configuration

The **Advanced Settings & Configuration** section lets you manage additional system settings. These settings provide flexible system configuration options for your needs.

- [Admin session duration](#) - Here you can configure the admin session duration.
- [Affiliate Settings](#) - Affiliate Tracking Settings
- [Bulk Product Updater](#) Settings for Bulk Product Updater form
- [Catalog Navigation](#) Storefront Catalog Navigation Settings
- [Checkout Process settings](#) - Checkout settings and options
- [Coupons and promo codes](#) - Configure the dialog window for entering coupons and promo codes
- [Customer Account Settings](#) - Configure settings related to the customer account in the storefront
- [Customer Reviews](#) - Customer Reviews settings
- [Customer Reviews: List of Rates](#) - Configure the list of rates for Customer Reviews
- [File Upload Settings for Product Options](#) - Set permitted file types for product options
- [Gift Certificates](#) - Gift certificate options
- [Interface Settings](#) - User Interface Appearance Tweaks
- [Order Statuses for Reports](#) - Allows you customize the list of order statuses for reports
- [Quantity Discount](#) - Quantity Discount settings and options
- [Reports and Statistics](#) - Statistics and Reports configuration settings
- [Store block debug info](#) - Enable or Disable displaying store block debug info
- [Subscriptions](#) - Newsletter subscriptions settings
- [System Log Settings](#) - Define application events should be logged
- [Tax settings](#) - Tax calculation and applicability parameters

Admin session duration

Use this setting to define the admin session duration, in hours. The following choices are available: 1, 2, 4, 6, 12, 24, or 48 hours. For example, if you've set 1 hour, then after an hour expires without any activity in the Admin Area, then you will have to log in to the Admin Area again (and enter your password).

Affiliate Settings

On this page you can define the settings of the affiliate tracking feature.

It is possible to add an Affiliate ID to the Avactis links using the "**aid**=" Get parameter in the URL. The Affiliate ID will be recorded during order creation.

You can find all orders with this affiliate ID using the **Orders** tab in the administration zone.

You can add the Affiliate ID to any .php file of the store. Example of an URL with an affiliate ID: *www.mystore.com/index.php?aid=MyTestID*

Advanced Settings

Affiliate Settings Save Close

First Order Only
Only first order of customer will be tracked as affiliated. No

Update Affiliate ID
What to do with Affiliate ID if existing customer has a new one. Use current Affiliate ID (Do not update)

Save Close

You can define the following settings on this page:

First Order Only option	You can track as affiliate orders either all customer orders or only the customer's first order. You can pay your affiliates by unique user or by orders amount.
Update Affiliate ID option	This option controls what is done with the Affiliate ID if a customer has a new Affiliate ID. You can update it or replace it with the new Affiliate ID.

Bulk Product Updater

On this page you can define the settings of the Bulk product updater feature. You can find more information about the Bulk product updater in the [Edit Products](#) article.

Catalog Navigation

On this page you can define the catalog navigation settings. For example you can hide non-applicable manufacturers or filter products from whole products catalog of the store or current category only.

Advanced Settings

Catalog Navigation Save Close

Show manufacturer-specific products
Show products from selected manufacturer from whole catalog or only from current category. From Current Category Only

Non-applicable manufacturers
If filtering settings do not return any products for certain manufacturer it can be hidden in available manufacturers list at Storefront. Hide

Save Close

Checkout Process Settings

On this page you can define the following setting:

<p>Do not show the State text field if the selected country has none</p>	<p>If the country selected has no states defined for it, the customer is offered to enter the state name in the provided text field. Use this option to disable showing a text field in this scenario.</p>
---	--

Coupons and Promo Codes Settings

On this page you can define the following setting:

<p>Display the coupon and promo code entry dialog when there are no active coupons or promo codes in the system?</p>	<p>YES – The coupon field will display at checkout even if there are no active coupons.</p> <p>NO – If there are no active coupons, then the coupon field will not display at checkout.</p>
---	---

Customer Account Settings

Customer Account Settings configure settings related to the customer account in the storefront.

Advanced Settings

Customer Account Settings Save Close

Customer session duration
Here you can configure customer session duration. 30 days (1 month) ▾

Enable 'Remember me' feature
Displays or hides the form that lets the customer select to remember their session when they log in to their customer account in the storefront. Yes ▾

Save Close

On this page you can define the following settings:

<p>Customer session duration</p>	<p>Configures customer session duration in the storefront.</p> <p>For example, suppose this setting is set to 30 days (1 month).</p>
---	--

	<p>The following options are possible:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • The customer selected the Remember me checkbox in the log-in form (requires that the Enable 'Remember me' feature setting be set to YES by a shopping cart system administrator). This means that if the customer did not Sign Out of their account, then they can to log in automatically within 30 days after the last login. • The customer did NOT select the Remember me checkbox in the log-in form (requires that the Enable 'Remember me' feature setting be set to YES by a shopping cart administrator). In this case, after closing the browser the customer will have to log in by entering their username and password next time they access the store. • A shopping cart system administrator set the Enable 'Remember me' feature setting to NO. In this case, after closing the browser the customer will have to log in by entering their username and password to access the store next time.
<p>Enable 'Remember me' feature</p>	<p>If the Enable 'Remember me' feature is set to Yes, then the customer will be presented with a form for selecting to remember their session and automatically log them in to their customer account without entering a username and password. The session duration is defined by the Customer session duration setting.</p> <p>If the Enable 'Remember me' feature is set to NO, then the form for remembering the customer session will not appear. After closing their browser, the customer will have to enter their username and password next time they access the store.</p>

Customer Reviews

This page allows you to configure the Customer Reviews settings.

On this page you can activate or deactivate the Customer Reviews module, and set the order in which customer reviews will be sorted.

You can also define the following settings:

Approve before posting	Choose which reviews require approval before posting: anonymous reviews, all reviews, or none (i.e. disable the "approve" mode for all reviews).
Enable multiple reviews from the same IP	Allow or disallow posting multiple reviews for the same product from the same IP address.
Write and read review settings	Allow or disallow unregistered customers to write or read reviews.

Customer Reviews: List of Rates

Here you can configure the list of rating categories for customers to use in their reviews.

You can define any rating categories, for example: Quality, Ease of Use, Value for Money and so on:

Advanced Settings

Customer Reviews: List of Rates Close

Rate Name	Show/Hide	
<input type="text" value="Price"/>	Show ▾	<input type="checkbox"/>
<input type="text" value="Ease of Use"/>	Show ▾	<input type="checkbox"/>
<input type="text" value="Quality"/>	Show ▾	<input type="checkbox"/>
<input type="button" value="Sort"/> <input type="button" value="Update"/> <input type="button" value="Delete"/>		
Add Rate		
<input type="text"/>	Show ▾	<input type="button" value="Add"/>
<input type="button" value="Close"/>		

Your customers will be able to rate each option in the storefront.

Example of a storefront review:

Customer Reviews

Review by **Dave**
(posted on 22-10-2009)

Price: ★★★★★

Ease of Use: ★★★★★

Quality: ★★★★★

Nice product!

Displaying **1** (of **1** customer reviews) Result Pages **1** of **1**

File Upload Settings for Product Options

This page allows you to define the types of uploadable files if the product option type is set as File Upload. If a file type is not listed, it will be impossible to upload it for security reasons.

Advanced Settings

File Upload Settings for Product Options Save Close

Archives .zip, .7z, .rar, .ace, .tar, .tar.gz, .tgz	Yes ▾
Audio Files .wav, .mp3, .flac, .ogg, .ape, .midi, .wma, .rm	Yes ▾
Documents .txt, .rtf, .doc, .xls, .docx, .xlsx, .pptx, .ppt, .odt, .pdf, .djvu, .eps	Yes ▾
Images .jpg, .jpeg, .gif, .tiff, .tif, .bmp, .png, .psd, .cdr	Yes ▾
Vector Graphics .fla, .swf, .svg, .cgm, .eps, .wmf, .pdf	Yes ▾
Video Files .avi, .mp4, .mkv, .mpg	Yes ▾

Save Close

Gift Certificates

This page lets you configure additional settings for gift certificates.

Specify the following settings:

Need Shipping	If set to YES, gift certificate products will need to be shipped.
----------------------	---

Free Shipping	If set to YES, gift certificate products will have free shipping.
Per Item Shipping Cost	Per item shipping cost of gift certificate products.
Per Item Handling Cost	Per item handling cost of gift certificate products.
Weight	Weight of gift certificate products.

Note:

The Gift certificate email templates are located in the **Avactis-themes/system/wishlist/send-wishlist/default** folder.

Interface Settings

You can change the **Date Selection Start Year** option in this section. The earliest year will be shown in Year drop-down menus. Be careful when adjusting this setting, because some historical information may become unavailable.

Order Statuses for Reports

On this page you can select which order statuses and payment statuses will be taken into account when generating reports and processing statistics. The available settings are described on the picture below

Advanced Settings	
Order Statuses for Reports Save Close	
'Cancelled' Consider orders with 'Cancelled' status in reports	No
'Completed' Consider orders with 'Completed' status in reports	Yes
'Declined' Consider orders with 'Declined' status in reports	No
'In Progress' Consider orders with 'In Progress' status in reports	Yes
'New Order' Consider orders with 'New Order' status in reports	Yes
'Ready to Ship' Consider orders with 'Ready to Ship' status in reports	Yes
'Shipped' Consider orders with 'Shipped' status in reports	Yes
Deleted orders Consider Deleted orders in the reports	No
Payment status 'Declined' Consider orders with 'Declined' payment status in reports	No
Payment status 'Fully Paid' Consider orders with 'Fully Paid' payment status in reports	Yes
Payment status 'Waiting' Consider orders with 'Waiting' payment status in reports	Yes
Save Close	

Quantity Discount Settings

Specify the following setting:

<p>Apply Quantity Discount to all products regardless of options selected?</p>	<p>If set to Yes, Quantity Discount will apply to all products in the cart regardless of its product options.</p> <p>If set to No, Quantity Discount will apply to specific groups of products based on their product options.</p> <p>Example:</p> <p>The cart contains the following items with different product options:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ○ T-Shirt, Qty=2, Option: Red.
---	---

	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ○ T-Shirt, Qty=3, Option: Green. <p>If this setting is set to YES, then Quantity Discount will apply to five (2+3) T-Shirt items – the Red and Green items will be counted together.</p> <p>If this setting is set to NO, then Quantity Discount will apply separately for each type of T-Shirt item, that is, once for "T-Shirt, Qty=2, Option: Red" and once for "T-Shirt, Qty=3, Option: Green."</p>
--	---

Reports and Statistics

This page lets you configure additional settings for generating reports and calculating statistics.

Specify the following settings:

Export to Excel file format	Any report can be exported to Excel, however, there are several ways to do that. They include generating a binary Excel file, generating an HTML table, or creating a CSV file. Select the method you prefer.
First day of the week	The day the week starts with (Sunday or Monday).
Number of scanned/viewed pages shown in tooltip menu.	The Recent Visitors and Crawler Visits reports have a Click Path field which shows the number of human-visited or crawler-scanned pages. If you hover the mouse over this number, a tooltip will appear to show a list of the visited pages. This setting lets you define the size of the list – the number of pages shown in the tooltip.
Product Info Page	If set to YES, collects product viewing statistics if the product was displayed on the Product Info page.
Product List Page	If set to YES, collects product viewing statistics for each product if the list of products was displayed on the Product List page.

Product Sales Statistics	If set to YES, collects product sales statistics based on quantities sold.
Session duration (Visits)	Determines the customer storefront session duration. If the customer is inactive for the specified amount of time, their next visit will generate a new statistics entry. Suppose the parameter is set to 1 hour. If a visitor leaves your online store and comes back within 50 minutes, this will be considered as 1 visit. If the visitor comes back in 1 hour and 2 minutes, that will count as a second visit.
Shopping cart: occurrences of product addition/deletion	If set to YES, collects statistics of product additions to cart/product deletions from cart, without tracking the quantity of product added/deleted.
Shopping cart: quantity of product added/deleted	If set to YES, collects statistics of product additions to cart/product deletions from cart based on quantity of product added/deleted. Also tracks when the product quantity changes in the cart.

Store block debug info

This allows displaying debug information for developers.

Specify the following settings:

Display store block debug info	If set to Enabled , store block debug info will contain the generation block time and the numbers of SQL queries executed.
Where store block debug info should be displayed.	Specifies the zone where store block debug info should be displayed (Storefront, Admin Area, All Areas).

Subscriptions

This allows to your customers to unsubscribe from your mailing list. You can activate or disable this possibility for your customers.

System Log Settings

On this page you can define the system events that will be included in event logs. System logs can be used to track down error events caused by incorrect system configuration.

The screenshot shows a dialog box titled "Application Settings" with a sub-tab "System Log Settings". The dialog has "Save" and "Close" buttons in the top right corner. The main area contains six settings, each with a description and a dropdown menu:

Setting Name	Description	Value
Log e-mail sending	If set to 'Yes', all e-mails you send will be logged.	Yes
Log entries to Admin Area	If set to 'Yes', any and all HTTP queries to the Admin Area will be logged.	No
Log entries to Storefront	If set to 'Yes', any and all HTTP queries to the storefront will be logged.	No
Log order creation	If set to 'Yes', all orders created will be logged.	Yes
Log payment systems' responses	If set to 'Yes', responses received from payment gateways will be logged.	Yes
Log queries to payment systems	If set to 'Yes', the data sent by the payment module to payment gateways will be logged. All credit card numbers, CVV codes and Issue Numbers will be replaced with Xs and will not be displayed anywhere.	Yes

At the bottom of the dialog, there are "Save" and "Close" buttons.

Tax Settings

The **Tax Settings** page provides additional ways to configure taxes according to the tax system of your jurisdiction:

Application Settings

Tax settings

Allow full tax exemption
If this is set to 'Yes', the customer will be able to use full tax exemption during checkout (which means that all taxes, including taxes built into product prices, will be calculated as null)

Yes ▾

Display product prices including taxes
Display product prices including taxes in Product List, Product Info, Shopping Cart, and Checkout pages of storefront.

Yes ▾

NOTE: This option only affects taxes included in the product prices.

Save Close

Allow full tax exemption	If this is set to Yes , the customer will be able to use full tax exemption during checkout (which means that all taxes, including taxes built into product prices, will be calculated as null).
Display product prices including taxes	Display product prices including taxes in Product List, Product Info, Shopping Cart, and Checkout pages of storefront. Note: This option only affects taxes included in the product prices.

5.6.3 Reset Reports

This page allows you to reset all reports. After reports are reset, new statistics will begin to accumulate.

IMPORTANT!

Report data deletion is an irreversible operation. You will not be able to restore this data after it is deleted.

Reset Report Data

Reset Report Data

By deleting all report data you can reset existing reports and start accumulating new statistics from scratch.

WARNING! Report data deletion is an irreversible operation. You will not be able to restore this data after it is deleted.

To delete all report data, click the Reset button.

To cancel report data deletion, click the Cancel button.

To reset all reports, click the **Reset** button. Confirm the delete operation in the window that opens. After the confirmation, current reports will be deleted.

5.6.4 System Logs

The **System Logs** page enables you to monitor system operation while viewing the **Storefront**, the **Admin Area**, and placing orders. This allows you to see the e-mails sent in relation to order placement and order processing, the response received from the payment gateway, performance report and other details. This page can be useful at the early stages, when you are setting up your online store.

Catalog Customers Reviews Orders Marketing Reports Sign Out

Admin >> System Logs Page Help

System Logs Settings

Filter

E-mail Notifications
 Orders created
 Payment Module Logs
 Search:

Performance

Dec 15, 2008

06:57:23	E-mail Notifications	E-mail with the subject « Account created automatically » was sent to « steve@my-first-shop.com ». E-mail sent successfully.	Details
06:57:23	E-mail Notifications	E-mail with the subject « Account created automatically » was sent to « Store <info@my-first-shop.com> ». E-mail sent successfully.	Details
06:57:23	Orders created	The following order was created: « 100015 ».	
06:57:23	E-mail Notifications	E-mail with the subject « My First Shop. Your order #100015 » was sent to « steve@my-first-shop.com ». E-mail sent successfully.	Details
06:57:23	E-mail Notifications	E-mail with the subject « My First Shop. Your order #100015 » was sent to « steve@my-first-shop.com ».	Details

To view an event's settings and details, click the **Details** link next to the event description. To search for and view certain events, use the **Filter** section.

Use the **Settings** button to define which events should be logged and which should not. For best performance, it is recommended to use the default settings shown below:

System Log Settings	
Log e-mail sending If set to 'Yes', all e-mails you send will be logged.	Yes
Log entries to Admin Area If set to 'Yes', any and all HTTP queries to the Admin Area will be logged.	No
Log entries to Storefront If set to 'Yes', any and all HTTP queries to the storefront will be logged.	No
Log order creation If set to 'Yes', all orders created will be logged.	Yes
Log payment systems' responses If set to 'Yes', responses received from payment gateways will be logged.	Yes
Log queries to payment systems If set to 'Yes', the data sent by the payment module to payment gateways will be logged. All credit card numbers, CVV codes and Issue Numbers will be replaced with Xs and will not be displayed anywhere.	Yes

5.6.5 Backup & Restore

Data backup is a critical part of any Internet application. A backup copy allows you to restore your online store to an operating condition in case of web server failure, database server failure, or other unexpected situations.

IMPORTANT!

It is critical to automatically back up your online store at regular intervals – at least once a day. We also recommended saving backups to a local computer or to other servers. A complete backup copy allows you to get your online store up and running as soon as possible, no matter what type of failure occurs.

The Shopping cart software provides special tools to automatically create complete backup copies of your installation, including all system source code and database, as well as to restore them.

1. Creating backup copies and restoring in Linux/Unix.

IMPORTANT!

Backing up is important for keeping your data safe. This is why you need to use a reliable hosting service, which provides the following features:

- **SSH Access (Secure Shell)**
- **Cron Jobs**

Automatic backups

To backup and restore in the Linux operating system, you need to set the correct execution rights for the **backup.sh** and **restore.sh** scripts (**Executable**) as described in "[Appropriate execution rights for backup.sh and restore.sh](#)".

Then, configure **cron** to execute the **backup.sh** script at regular intervals (at least once a day is recommended) as described in "[Automating backups via cron](#)."

If all of these actions are performed correctly, the shopping cart software will create backup copies automatically, without your involvement. The backup copies will be available for download at **Admin >> Data Backup & Restore**. Use this page to download any of the backups or to delete old backup files.

The screenshot shows the 'Admin >> Data Backup & Restore' page. At the top, there is a navigation bar with links for Home, Catalog, Customers, Reviews, Orders, Marketing, and Reports, along with a 'Sign Out' button. Below the navigation bar, the page title is 'Admin >> Data Backup & Restore' and there is a 'Page Help' link. The main content area is titled 'Archive list' and contains a table of backup files. The table has three columns: 'Backup file', 'Created date', and 'Backup file size'. Each row represents a backup file, with a 'Download' button and a 'Delete' button to its right. The backup files listed are:

Backup file	Created date	Backup file size
backup_2008-12-23_06-00-01.tar.gz	23-12-2008 06:00:45	6,459.32 Kb
backup_2008-12-23_05-50-02.tar.gz	23-12-2008 05:50:46	6,459.32 Kb
backup_2008-12-23_06-25-01.tar.gz	23-12-2008 06:25:45	6,459.32 Kb
backup_2008-12-23_05-49-21.tar.gz	23-12-2008 05:50:06	6,459.34 Kb
backup_2008-12-23_06-05-01.tar.gz	23-12-2008 06:05:48	6,459.31 Kb
backup_2008-12-23_06-30-02.tar.gz	23-12-2008 06:30:46	6,459.32 Kb
backup_2008-12-23_06-15-02.tar.gz	23-12-2008 06:15:45	6,459.32 Kb
backup_2008-12-23_06-10-02.tar.gz	23-12-2008 06:10:46	6,459.32 Kb
backup_2008-12-23_05-55-01.tar.gz	23-12-2008 05:55:45	6,459.32 Kb

You can also download backups via FTP. They are located in `Avactis-system/backup/`.

IMPORTANT!

It is recommended to download backup files to your PC at regular time intervals to prevent loss of data in the event of server failure. If a server failure occurs, you will be able to restore the online store from the backup files saved to your

PC.

Restoring from a backup.

If something unexpected happens, you can restore the shopping cart system and all related data by using previously created backup files. This process is described in detail in [Restore From Backup \(Linux\)](#)

2. Creating backups and restoring in other operating systems

To create automatic backups of your online store and to restore data in other operating systems, use the system tools supplied by your hosting provider.

5.6.5.1 Setting up backup and restore scripts (Linux)

To create backups and use them to restore your system, you need to properly set up the scripts that manage these processes. In Linux/Unix and similar operating systems, any script that is designed to be executed must have execution rights. Therefore, before using these backup scripts, you have to make sure they have the appropriate rights.

Automatic creation of a complete backup copy of your shopping cart system, including the product catalog, orders, customer accounts, settings and all files installed in your storefront directory, is performed by the Linux shell-script **backup.sh**, which is located in the following folder:

```
Avactis-system/backup.sh
```

This script backs up all files in the shopping cart installation folder and performs a complete database backup. The resulting backup file is copied to the following folder:

```
Avactis-system/backup/
```

The script that restores the system from a backup is located in the following folder:

```
Avactis-system/restore.sh
```

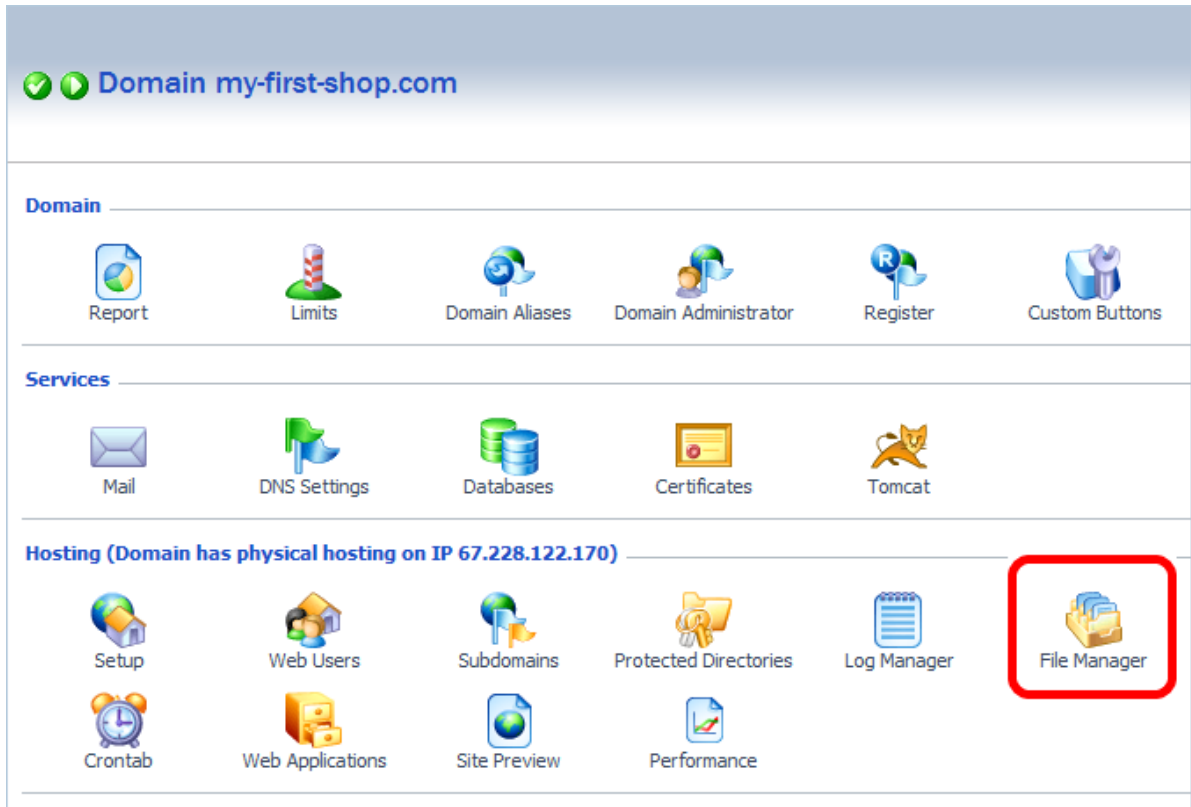
The full path to **backup.sh** is available to copy/paste in the **Backup and Restore Scripts** section at **Admin >> Data Backup & Restore**.

The Plesk control panel example below shows how to assign script rights.

IMPORTANT! Your view may differ. The description given here is an example only.

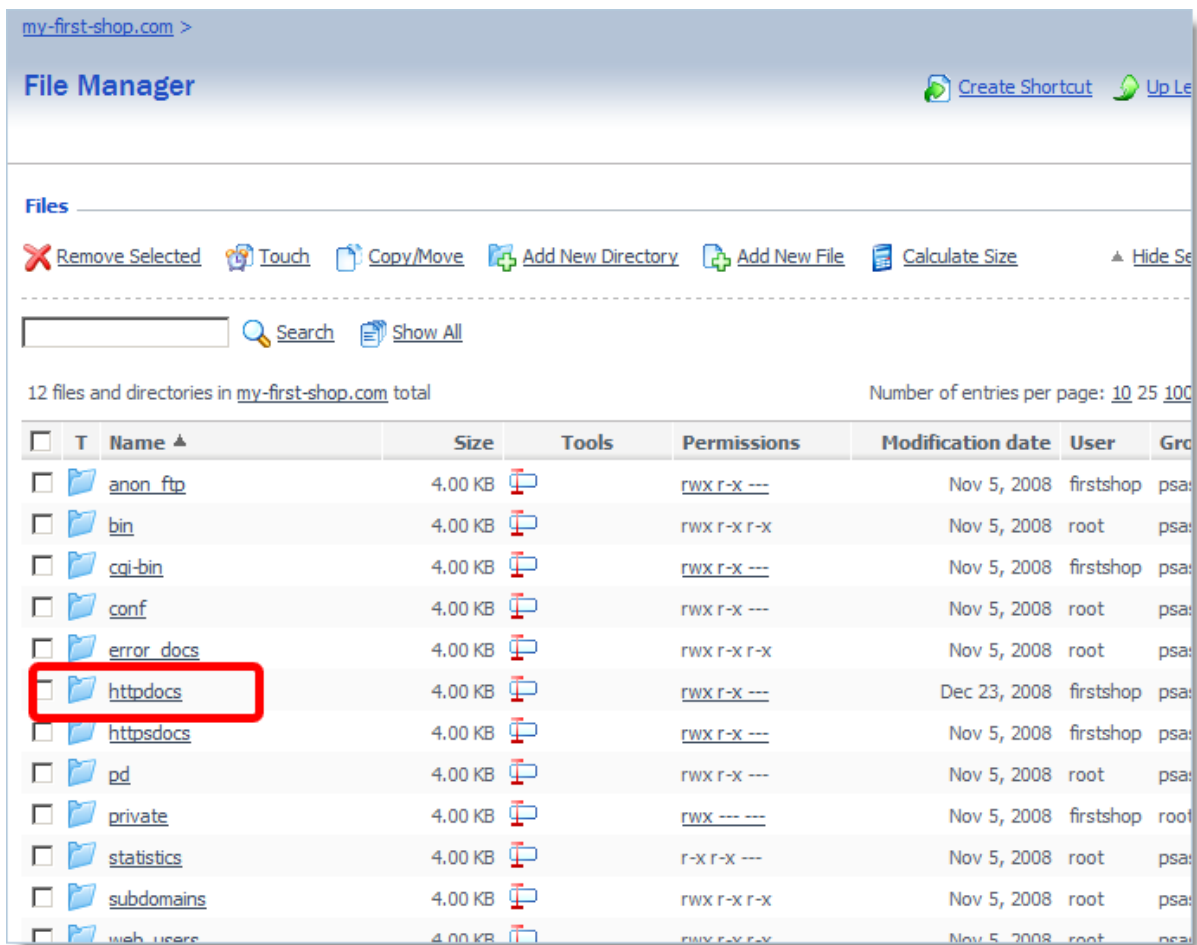
Step #1

In a new browser window, open your Plesk control panel and navigate to the Home page:



Step #2

Click the **File Manager** icon. The next page shows the list of files and folders in the root of your website:



my-first-shop.com >

File Manager

Create Shortcut Up Le

Files

Remove Selected Touch Copy/Move Add New Directory Add New File Calculate Size Hide Se

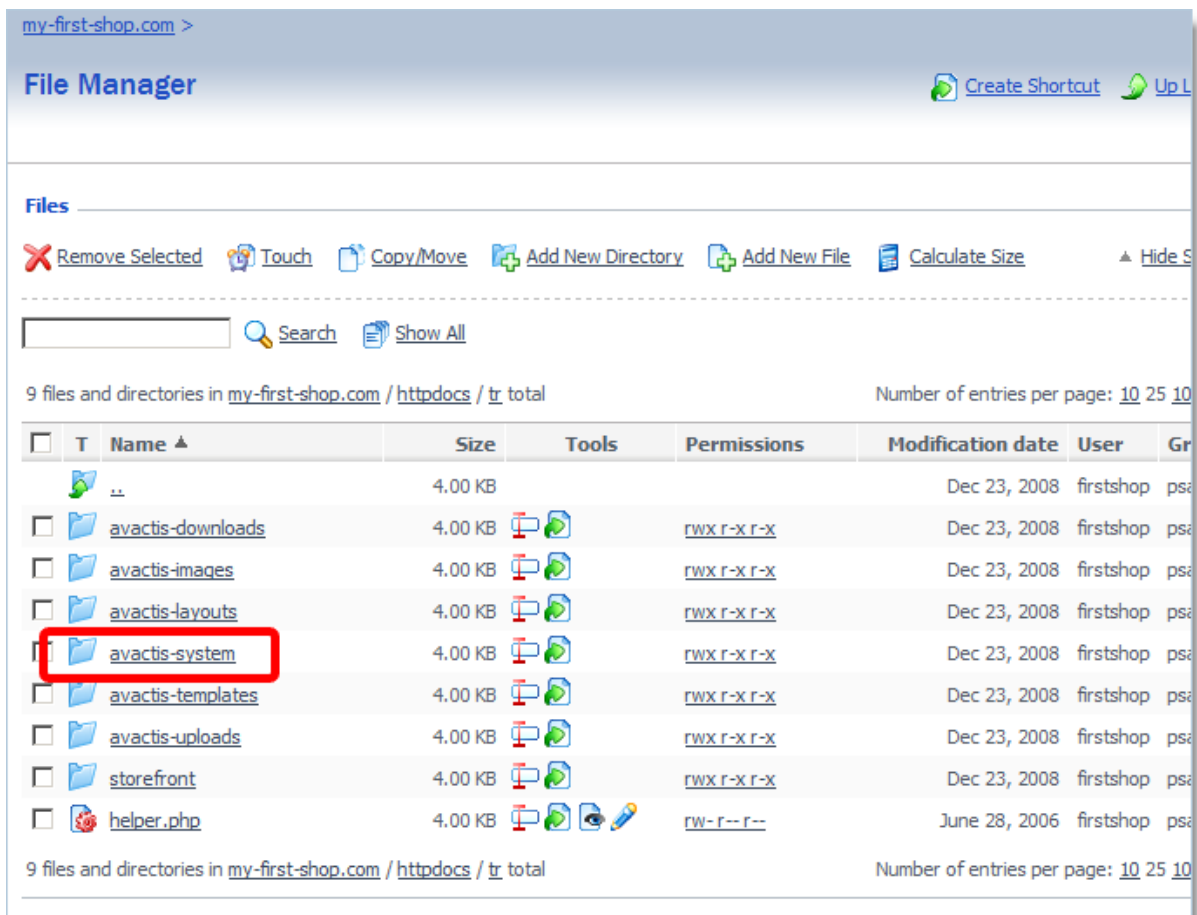
Search Show All

12 files and directories in my-first-shop.com total Number of entries per page: 10 25 100

<input type="checkbox"/>	T	Name ▲	Size	Tools	Permissions	Modification date	User	Gro
<input type="checkbox"/>		anon_ftp	4.00 KB		rwx r-x ---	Nov 5, 2008	firstshop	psa
<input type="checkbox"/>		bin	4.00 KB		rwx r-x r-x	Nov 5, 2008	root	psa
<input type="checkbox"/>		cgi-bin	4.00 KB		rwx r-x ---	Nov 5, 2008	firstshop	psa
<input type="checkbox"/>		conf	4.00 KB		rwx r-x ---	Nov 5, 2008	root	psa
<input type="checkbox"/>		error_docs	4.00 KB		rwx r-x r-x	Nov 5, 2008	root	psa
<input type="checkbox"/>		httpdocs	4.00 KB		rwx r-x ---	Dec 23, 2008	firstshop	psa
<input type="checkbox"/>		httpsdocs	4.00 KB		rwx r-x ---	Nov 5, 2008	firstshop	psa
<input type="checkbox"/>		pd	4.00 KB		rwx r-x ---	Nov 5, 2008	root	psa
<input type="checkbox"/>		private	4.00 KB		rwx --- ---	Nov 5, 2008	firstshop	root
<input type="checkbox"/>		statistics	4.00 KB		r-x r-x ---	Nov 5, 2008	root	psa
<input type="checkbox"/>		subdomains	4.00 KB		rwx r-x r-x	Nov 5, 2008	root	psa
<input type="checkbox"/>		web_users	4.00 KB		rwx r-x r-x	Nov 5, 2008	root	psa

Step #3

Open the **httpdocs** folder and then navigate to the folder where you installed the shopping cart software. This folder will look as follows:



my-first-shop.com >

File Manager

Create Shortcut Up L

Files

Remove Selected Touch Copy/Move Add New Directory Add New File Calculate Size Hide S

Search Show All

9 files and directories in my-first-shop.com / httpdocs / tr total Number of entries per page: 10 25 10

<input type="checkbox"/>	T	Name ▲	Size	Tools	Permissions	Modification date	User	Gr
<input type="checkbox"/>		..	4.00 KB			Dec 23, 2008	firstshop	psa
<input type="checkbox"/>		avactis-downloads	4.00 KB		rwx r-x r-x	Dec 23, 2008	firstshop	psa
<input type="checkbox"/>		avactis-images	4.00 KB		rwx r-x r-x	Dec 23, 2008	firstshop	psa
<input type="checkbox"/>		avactis-layouts	4.00 KB		rwx r-x r-x	Dec 23, 2008	firstshop	psa
<input type="checkbox"/>		avactis-system	4.00 KB		rwx r-x r-x	Dec 23, 2008	firstshop	psa
<input type="checkbox"/>		avactis-templates	4.00 KB		rwx r-x r-x	Dec 23, 2008	firstshop	psa
<input type="checkbox"/>		avactis-uploads	4.00 KB		rwx r-x r-x	Dec 23, 2008	firstshop	psa
<input type="checkbox"/>		storefront	4.00 KB		rwx r-x r-x	Dec 23, 2008	firstshop	psa
<input type="checkbox"/>		helper.php	4.00 KB		rw-r--r--	June 28, 2006	firstshop	psa

9 files and directories in my-first-shop.com / httpdocs / tr total Number of entries per page: 10 25 10

Step #4

Click the **Avactis-system** folder. You will see a list of files including **backup.sh** and **restore.sh**:

20 files and directories in [my-first-shop.com / httpdocs / tr / avactis-system](#) total Number of entries per page: [10](#) [25](#) [100](#)

<input type="checkbox"/>	T	Name ▲	Size	Tools	Permissions	Modification date	User	Grp
		..	4.00 KB			Dec 23, 2008	firstshop	psa
<input type="checkbox"/>		admin	12.0 KB		rwx-r-xr-x	Dec 23, 2008	firstshop	psa
<input type="checkbox"/>		backup	4.00 KB		rwx-r-xr-x	Dec 23, 2008	firstshop	psa
<input type="checkbox"/>		cache	4.00 KB		rwx-r-xr-x	Dec 23, 2008	firstshop	psa
<input type="checkbox"/>		core	4.00 KB		rwx-r-xr-x	Dec 23, 2008	firstshop	psa
<input type="checkbox"/>		modules	4.00 KB		rwx-r-xr-x	Dec 23, 2008	firstshop	psa
<input type="checkbox"/>		.htaccess	4.00 KB		rw-r--r--	Aug 8, 2008	firstshop	psa
<input type="checkbox"/>		admin.php	8.00 KB		rw-r--r--	July 21, 2008	firstshop	psa
<input type="checkbox"/>		app_init.php	32.0 KB		rw-r--r--	Dec 22, 2008	firstshop	psa
<input type="checkbox"/>		application_locked.tpl.html	8.00 KB		rw-r--r--	Sept 1, 2008	firstshop	psa
<input type="checkbox"/>		backup.sh	4.00 KB		rwx-r-xr-x	Dec 23, 2008	firstshop	psa
<input type="checkbox"/>		config.def.php	8.00 KB		rw-r--r--	Dec 23, 2008	firstshop	psa
<input type="checkbox"/>		config.php	4.00 KB		rw-r--r--	Dec 23, 2008	firstshop	psa
<input type="checkbox"/>		cz_headers_sent.tpl.html	8.00 KB		rw-r--r--	June 26, 2008	firstshop	psa
<input type="checkbox"/>		index.php	0.00 KB		rw-r--r--	June 28, 2006	firstshop	psa
<input type="checkbox"/>		lib.sh	8.00 KB		rwx-r-xr-x	Dec 22, 2008	firstshop	psa
<input type="checkbox"/>		license.key.php	4.00 KB		rw-r--r--	Nov 9, 2006	firstshop	psa
<input type="checkbox"/>		restore.sh	4.00 KB		rwx-r-xr-x	Dec 22, 2008	firstshop	psa
<input type="checkbox"/>		store.php	4.00 KB		rw-r--r--	July 21, 2008	firstshop	psa

Now, assign the appropriate rights to the files **backup.sh** and **restore.sh**. For each file, click the corresponding link in the **Permissions** column to open the access rights editing window:

[my-first-shop.com](#) >

File Manager

[Create Shortcut](#) [Up Level](#)

Change permissions for file [my-first-shop.com / httpdocs / tr / avactis-system / backup.sh](#)

	Read mode	Write mode	Execute/search mode
Owner	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
Group	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
Others	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>

Make sure that all checkboxes in the **Execute/search mode** column are selected, then click OK. Do this for each of the two files (backup.sh and restore.sh).

5.6.5.2 Backup automation (Linux)

In Linux/Unix and similar operating systems, task automation is handled by the cron service. Most hosting providers allow managing this service.

The Plesk control panel example below shows how to automate backup creation.

IMPORTANT! Make sure that backup.sh and restore.sh have the necessary execution rights.

For more details, refer to "[Appropriate execution rights for backup.sh and restore.sh.](#)"

Step #1

Enter the Admin Area and go to **Admin >> Data Backup & Restore**. The absolute file path to the backup.sh script will display on the bottom part of this page.

Home | Catalog | Customers | Reviews | Orders | Marketing | Reports | Sign Out

Admin >> Data Backup & Restore Page Help

Archive list Download Delete

Backup file	Created date	Backup file size
Backup files not found		

Download Delete

These scripts allow you to backup and restore your shopping cart system, including the product catalog, orders, customers, settings and all files installed in your storefront directory. For backup and restore set permissions for these scripts as **Executable**. For more instructions please refer to the [shopping cart manual](#).

Backup Script Path: /var/www/vhosts/demo.avactis.com/httpdocs/1.8.2/int/avactis-system/backup.sh

Restore Script Path: /var/www/vhosts/demo.avactis.com/httpdocs/1.8.2/int/avactis-system/restore.sh

Do not close this browser window – we will need this path later.

Step #2

In a new browser window, open the Plesk control panel and navigate to the Home page:

IMPORTANT! Your view may differ. The description given here is an example only.

Domain my-first-shop.com

Domain

- Report
- Limits
- Domain Aliases
- Domain Administrator
- Register
- Custom Buttons

Services

- Mail
- DNS Settings
- Databases
- Certificates
- Tomcat

Hosting (Domain has physical hosting on IP 67.228.122.170)

- Setup
- Web Users
- Subdomains
- Protected Directories
- Log Manager
- File Manager
- Crontab**
- Web Applications
- Site Preview
- Performance

Click the **Crontab** icon. The following page will display:

my-first-shop.com >

View Scheduled Tasks [Create Shortcut](#) [Up Level](#)

Task scheduler [Hide Search](#)

[Search](#) [Show All](#)

1 total Number of entries per page: [10](#) [25](#) [100](#) [ALL](#)

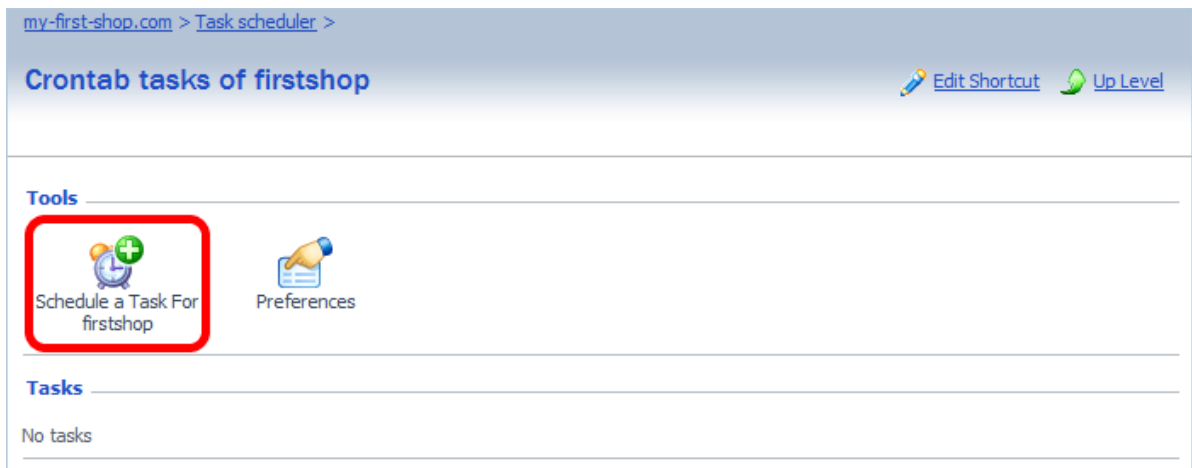
System user ▲

firstshop

1 total Number of entries per page: [10](#) [25](#) [100](#) [ALL](#)

In the **System user** section, click the name of your main system user (should match your main FTP user).

The following window will list the cron jobs associated with this user. If there are no jobs, the list will be empty as on the following screenshot:



Click the **Schedule a Task** icon to create a new cron job. The job creation form looks as follows:

my-first-shop.com > Task scheduler > Tasks >

Editing the Crontab task of firstshop

[Create Shortcut](#) [Up Level](#)

Task

Switched on

Minute *

Hour *

Day of the Month *

Month *

Enter the value
in UNIX crontab format e.g. 1, 5-7, */4

Select the month

Day of the Week *

Enter the value
in UNIX crontab format e.g. 1, 4-6

Select the day of week

Command *

* Required fields

Step #3

Before creating a cron job, you should decide how often you want complete backups to be created. To determine the right backup frequency, look at how often changes to your store are made.

Suppose that you you receive several orders a day, change their statuses, and make changes to the product catalog. In this case, daily backups would be reasonable.

Scheduling the job time is important. Backups are best performed when your store has the least visitors. For example, this could be at 1 A.M. (local time).

You should also consider the following:

- cron job time is set based on server time, which can differ significantly from your local time.
- cron job time always uses the 24-hour format.

Let's look at an example. You've decided that:

- Your store has the least visitors at night, so backup should be scheduled for 01:00 (local time).
- The difference between server time and local time is +5 hours. This means that when you have 01:00, the server has 06:00 (6 in the morning). This is the cron job time.

Complete the cron job creation form:

my-first-shop.com > Task scheduler > Tasks >

Editing the Crontab task of firstshop [Create Shortcut](#) [Up Level](#)

Task

Switched on

Minute *

Hour *

Day of the Month *

Month *

Enter the value
in UNIX crontab format e.g. 1, 5-7, */4

Select the month

Day of the Week *

Enter the value
in UNIX crontab format e.g. 1, 4-6

Select the day of week

Command *

* Required fields

Enter 0 for **Minute**.

Enter 6 for **Hour**.

Enter * for **Day of Month, Month, and Day of Week**.

Enter the string from **Step 1** for **Command**.

Click **OK** to create the task:

my-first-shop.com > Task scheduler >

Crontab tasks of firstshop

[Edit Shortcut](#) [Up Level](#)

Information: The properties of the scheduled task were changed.

Tools

Schedule a Task For firstshop

Preferences

Tasks

Remove Selected [Hide Search](#)

[Search](#) [Show All](#)

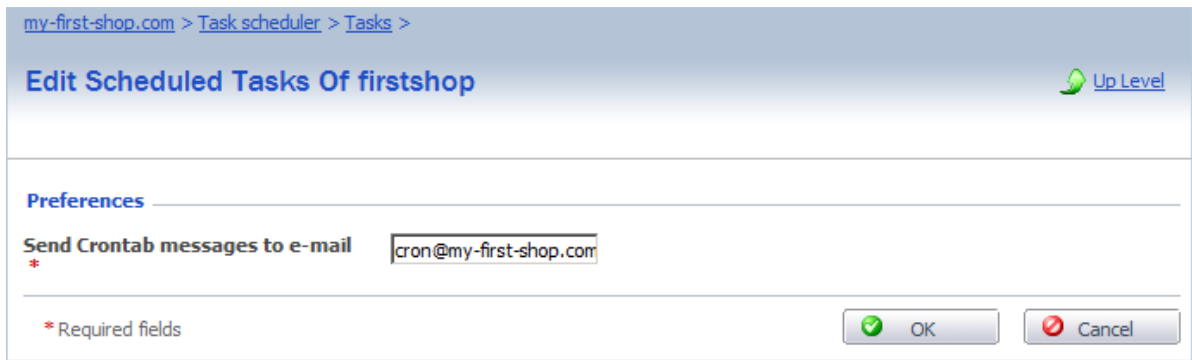
1 tasks total Number of entries per page: [10](#) [25](#) [100](#) [ALL](#)

<input type="checkbox"/>	S	Min	H	DM	M	DW	Command
<input type="checkbox"/>	0	6	*	*	*		/var/www/vhosts/my-first-shop.com/httpdocs/tr/avactis-system/backup.sh

1 tasks total Number of entries per page: [10](#) [25](#) [100](#) [ALL](#)

Step #4

To receive notifications when the backup.sh script is run, click the Preferences icon. In the form that opens, enter the e-mail address to which notifications will be sent.



my-first-shop.com > Task scheduler > Tasks >

Edit Scheduled Tasks Of firstshop [Up Level](#)

Preferences

Send Crontab messages to e-mail

* Required fields

Enter your e-mail address in the field **Send Crontab messages to e-mail**. Click OK to save the changes.

This completes backup automation for your online store.

5.6.5.3 Restore From Backup (Linux)

To restore from a backup, you need secure shell access to the website. Hosting providers usually allow this type of access.

For example, if you need to restore from the file `backup_2008-12-23_09-32-37.tar.gz`, go to the `Avactis-system` folder and enter the following command:

```
./restore.sh backup/backup_2008-12-23_09-32-37.tar.gz
```

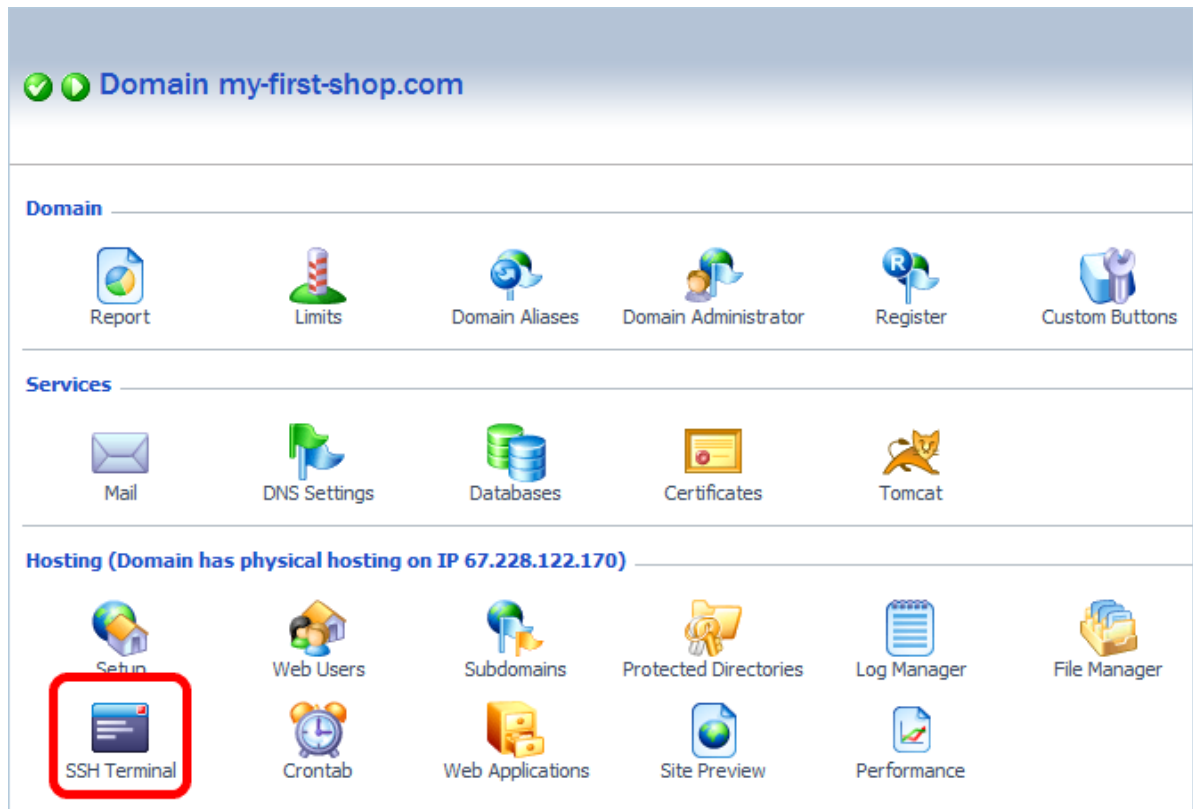
All data will be restored.

The Plesk control panel example below shows how to restore a website from a backup.

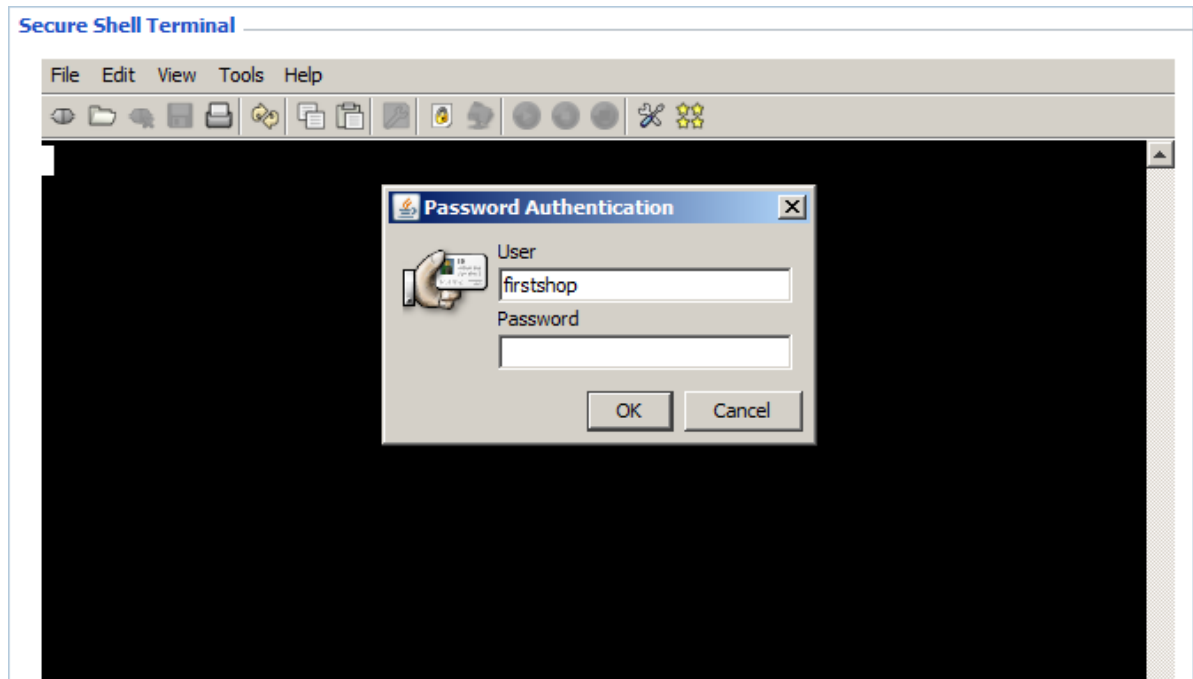
IMPORTANT! Your view may differ. The description given here is an example only.

Step #1

In a new browser window, open your Plesk control panel and navigate to the Home page:

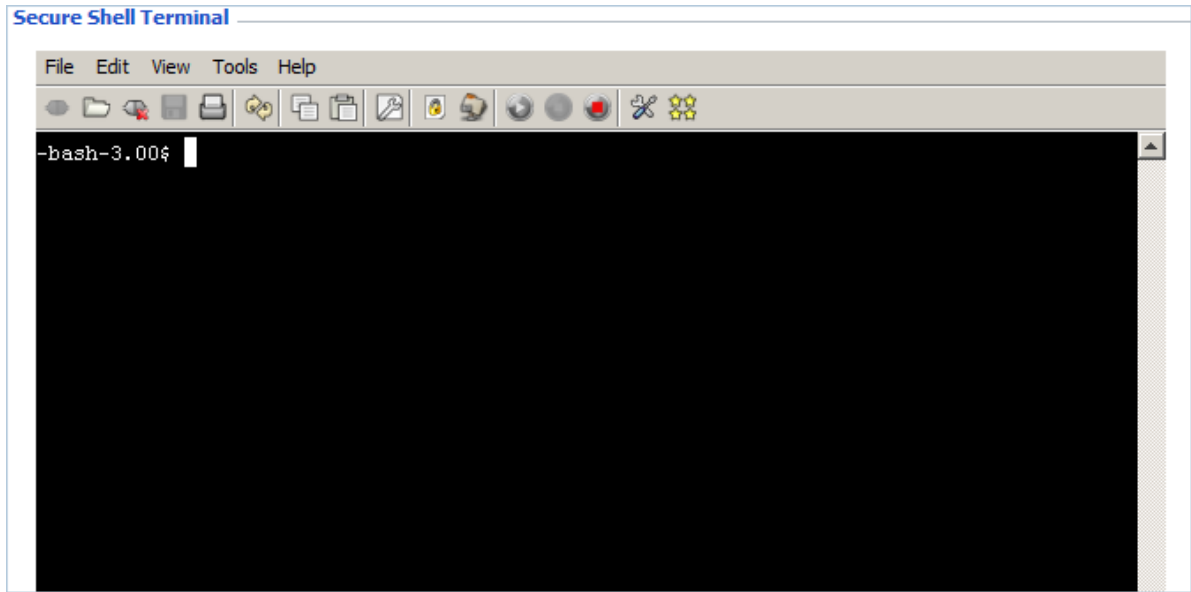


Click the **SSH Terminal** icon. The following terminal will open:

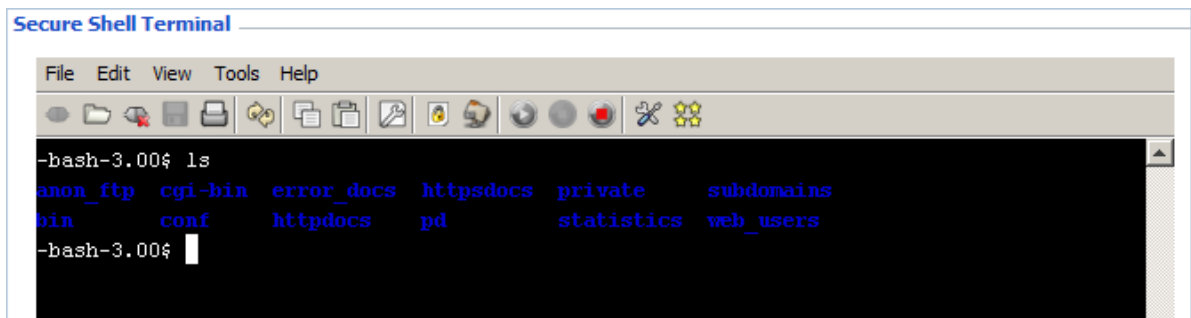


Enter the main FTP login and password.

If the login and password match, the command line prompt will appear:



Enter the **ls** command, which displays the list of files and folders contained in the current folder:



We are located in the root of the hosting account, **httpdocs**.

We need to navigate to the shopping cart software installation folder and then the subfolder 'Avactis-system'.

For example, if the shopping cart software was installed in the website's root folder, you can navigate to it with the following command:

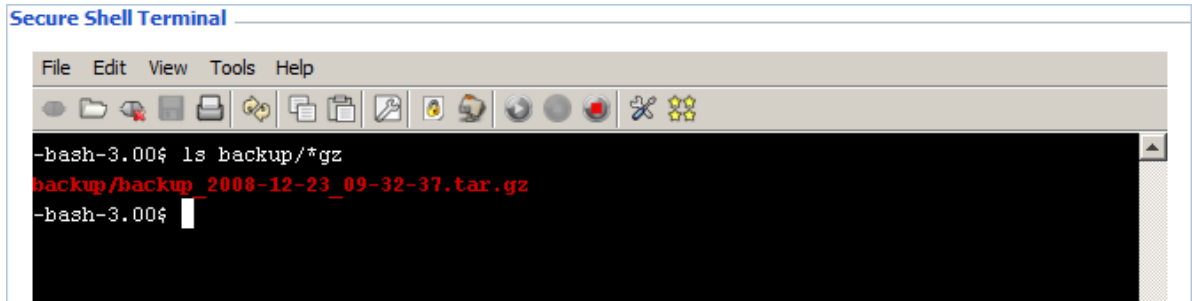
```
cd httpdocs/Avactis-system/
```

If the shopping cart software was installed in the 'store' folder, you can navigate to it with the

following command:

```
cd httpdocs/store/Avactis-system/
```

Once in the 'Avactis-system' subfolder, enter the command **ls backup/*gz** to check if there are any backups stored:



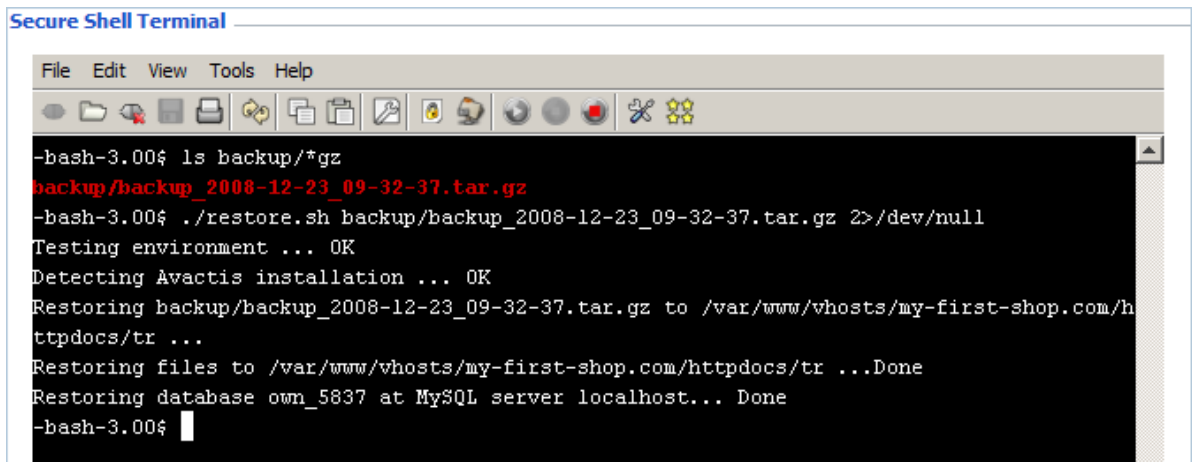
```
Secure Shell Terminal
File Edit View Tools Help
- bash-3.00$ ls backup/*gz
backup/backup_2008-12-23_09-32-37.tar.gz
- bash-3.00$
```

In our case, there is just one backup file. Let's use it to start up a restore process. To do so, run the restore.sh script and pass the path to the appropriate backup file as a parameter.

Since we are in the 'Avactis-system' folder right now, we enter the following command to start the restore process:

```
./restore.sh backup/backup_2008-12-23_09-32-37.tar.gz
```

The command is executed as follows:



```
Secure Shell Terminal
File Edit View Tools Help
- bash-3.00$ ls backup/*gz
backup/backup_2008-12-23_09-32-37.tar.gz
- bash-3.00$ ./restore.sh backup/backup_2008-12-23_09-32-37.tar.gz 2>/dev/null
Testing environment ... OK
Detecting Avactis installation ... OK
Restoring backup/backup_2008-12-23_09-32-37.tar.gz to /var/www/vhosts/my-first-shop.com/httpdocs/tr ...
Restoring files to /var/www/vhosts/my-first-shop.com/httpdocs/tr ...Done
Restoring database ovm_5837 at MySQL server localhost... Done
- bash-3.00$
```

Your online store is now successfully restored, including the shopping cart software, your product catalog, orders, customer accounts, and all your settings.

5.6.6 Application/Server Info

On this page, you can view system information about the application, the server, the installed

shopping cart modules, and the PHP version.

The screenshot displays the 'Admin >> Application/Server Info' page. It features a navigation bar at the top with links for Storefront, Content, Page Manager, Look & Feel, Admin, Store Settings, Help, Community Forums, and Support. Below this is a secondary navigation bar with icons for Home, Catalog, Customers, Reviews, Orders, Marketing, and Reports, along with a Sign Out link. The main content area is divided into two sections: 'Application Info' and 'Server Info'. Each section has a 'Summary' table and a 'Modules Info' section. The 'Application Info' section shows Product Version (2.x.x), Product Version Type (eTRUNK), and Product Release Date (N/A). The 'Server Info' section shows PHP Version, MySQL Version (5.0.51a-3ubuntu5.4), Server OS (Linux adev 2.6.24-16-virtual #1 SMP Thu Apr 10 14:32:04 UTC 2008 i686), and Web Server (Apache/2.2.8 (Ubuntu) DAV/2 PHP/5.2.4-2ubuntu5.3 with Suhosin-Patch). There are 'Show/Hide' buttons for each section.

5.6.7 Clear Cache

This page lets you clear the system cache.

To clear the **Cache**, click the **Clear** button, and the system will start the clearing the **Cache**. Click **Close** to close the window without clearing the **Cache**.

The screenshot shows a 'Clear Cache' dialog box. It has a blue header with the title 'Clear Cache'. Below the header is a 'Cache Settings' section with a 'Clear' button and a 'Close' button. The 'Current Cache Size' is displayed as 557.3 KBytes. At the bottom of the dialog, there are two buttons: 'Clear' and 'Close'.

Note: **Cache** is used to significantly speed up system operations. **Cache** clearing should only be done after you have made a lot of changes to the catalog. **Cache** clearing will reset it to its minimum value (about 150 – 200 KB).

5.6.8 License

In this page, you can view information about your shopping cart license. You can also change the license key here.

License	
License Information Update Close	
License Key:	? Your license key
License Status:	? Active
License URL (domain):	? my-first-shop.com
Version Type:	? EBUSINESS
Your Current Version Type:	? eBusiness
Updates Expire:	? NA
Support Expires:	? NA
New License Key:	? <input type="text"/>
Update Close	

5.6.9 HTTPS Settings

Shopping cart system implements a very flexible system to support secure connections (**SSL**). You can choose which storefront pages and **Admin Area** sections should be secured. These pages will open over HTTPS, while the rest of the pages will open over simple HTTP, and the shopping cart will transition between these protocols automatically.

Secure connections are disabled by default. You have to properly configure **SSL** connections in order to use **SSL**.

First, find out your website's **HTTPS** domain name and the URL pointing to the shopping cart installation directory. It is most often the same as the HTTP URL (and then the URL appears in the input field automatically), but some hosting companies make it different from it. The necessary information can usually be found in your hosting company's help system. It may also be necessary to contact their support department. You may need to purchase and install an **SSL** certificate for your website with their help prior to enabling **HTTPS**.

Note that while the **HTTP** (insecure) and **HTTPS** (secure) URLs of the storefront may differ, they both **must** point to the same server directory, otherwise **SSL** support is impossible. This is a requirement and you should inform your hosting provider of this fact in rare cases when this is not already implemented. They usually can configure your account as required.

Then, configure **SSL** for your **Admin Area** and Storefront.

HTTPS

Secure Settings Page Help

HTTPS URL: ?	<input type="text" value="https://www.my-first-shop.com/"/>
---------------------	---

Secure Admin Area Sections

Whole Admin Area (Backend) ?	<input type="checkbox"/>
Sign-In & Admin Members Management ?	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
Orders & Customers ?	<input type="checkbox"/>
Payment & Shipping Modules Settings ?	<input type="checkbox"/>

HTTPS Settings for Storefront Pages

<http://www.my-first-shop.com/>

Catalog ?	<input type="checkbox"/>
Shopping Cart ?	<input type="checkbox"/>
Checkout ?	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
File Download ?	<input type="checkbox"/>
Customer Account ?	<input type="checkbox"/>
Customer Authorization ?	<input type="checkbox"/>
Entire Storefront ?	<input type="checkbox"/>

This page includes the following fields:

HTTPS URL	<p>The HTTPS URL pointing to the shopping cart installation folder. If HTTPS URL and HTTP URL are identical, this field doesn't need to be modified because it contains the correct value by default. If the URL isn't detected automatically, you should enter one yourself. If you do not know the URL, ask your hosting provider. Note that the URL you specify should point to the installation folder. Some Windows hosting servers provide a "Check" button instead of a "Save" button. See Appendix 1 for details.</p>
------------------	--

The **Secure Admin Area Sections** area below helps you choose which **Admin Area** sections to protect. You can leave all options listed below unchecked, but you must specify a URL to provide full-fledged **SSL** connections in **Storefront**.

Whole Admin Area (Backend)	Switches the whole Admin Area to the secure protocol. Keep in mind, however, that secure connection makes pages load substantially longer because additional time is required to encode and decode data being transferred, including images. Selecting this option is not recommended as it reduces the Catalog performance.
Sign-In & Admin Members Management	Secures the following pages: Sign In, Password Update, Password Recovery , and pages associated with the Admin Members section (List, Info, Add, Edit, Password Reset, and Delete).
Orders & Customers	Secures Orders (List, Info, Delete) and Customers (List, Info) pages.
Payment & Shipping Modules Settings	Secures pages with lists and settings associated with Payment and Shipping Methods .

A similar method is used to secure your storefront pages. Select the sections that you want your customers to access using SSL.

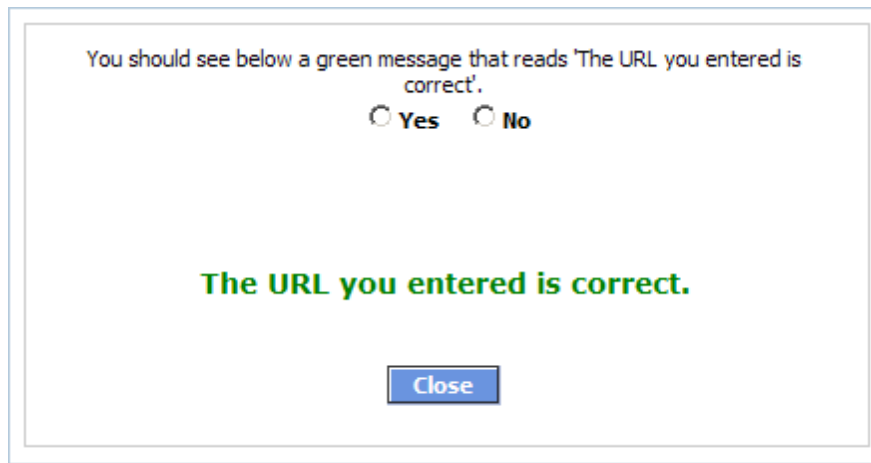
After you have specified the **HTTPS URL** and selected the sections to protect, click the **Save** button.

If the URL is correct and no errors are encountered, the window closes and the **https_config.php** file is created in the **Avactis-system/** directory on the server. If the window does not close, that means an error has occurred.

Appendix 1

Using the "Check" button to validate the specified URL.

Certain Windows hosting spaces replace the "**Save**" button with the "**Check**" button. The latter helps make sure that the URL you specified actually exists. If the URL is typed correctly and it exists, the following message displays:



If a green message appears, select Yes and click "Close", otherwise select No and try typing the URL once again.

IMPORTANT!

Do NOT select **Yes** if the green message **The URL you entered is correct** doesn't display. That can lead to system failure. If the failure occurred nonetheless, delete the Avactis-system/https_config.php file.

Appendix 2

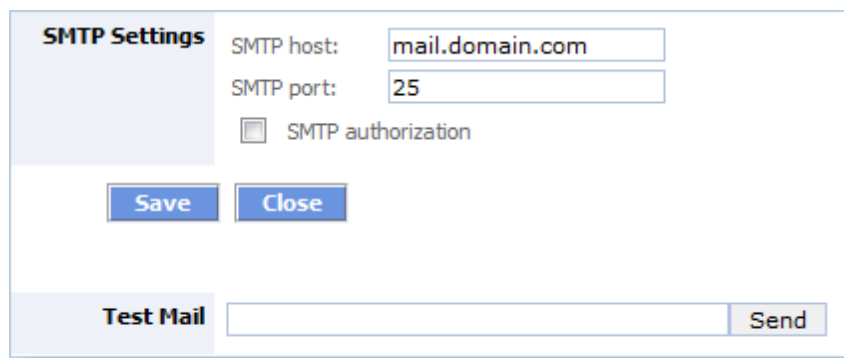
List of potential errors when saving HTTPS settings.

- Please enter the HTTPS URL that points to the root directory of shopping cart.
- The URL you entered contains syntax error(s).
- The URL you entered is invalid. A test call to the system returned no response.
- An error occurred when creating the configuration file due to insufficient rights to write to 'Avactis-system' folder.
- An error occurred when creating a configuration file due to insufficient rights to write to file 'Avactis-system/https_config.php'.
- You have deleted a previously entered URL. This means that secured connections will no longer be applied for Admin Area. This can also cause incorrect functioning of secured connections in Storefront (if they are enabled). If you want to stop using secured connections, click **Save**; otherwise, click **Cancel**.

- Unable to delete the configuration file 'Avactis-system/https_config.php', possibly due to insufficient deletion rights. Please change the access rights for this file or delete it manually.

5.6.10 Mail settings

The **Mail settings** section allows you to manage the e-mail settings of your store:



The screenshot shows a dialog box titled "SMTP Settings". It contains the following elements:

- SMTP host:** A text input field containing "mail.domain.com".
- SMTP port:** A text input field containing "25".
- SMTP authorization**
- Save** button
- Close** button
- Test Mail** section with a text input field and a **Send** button.

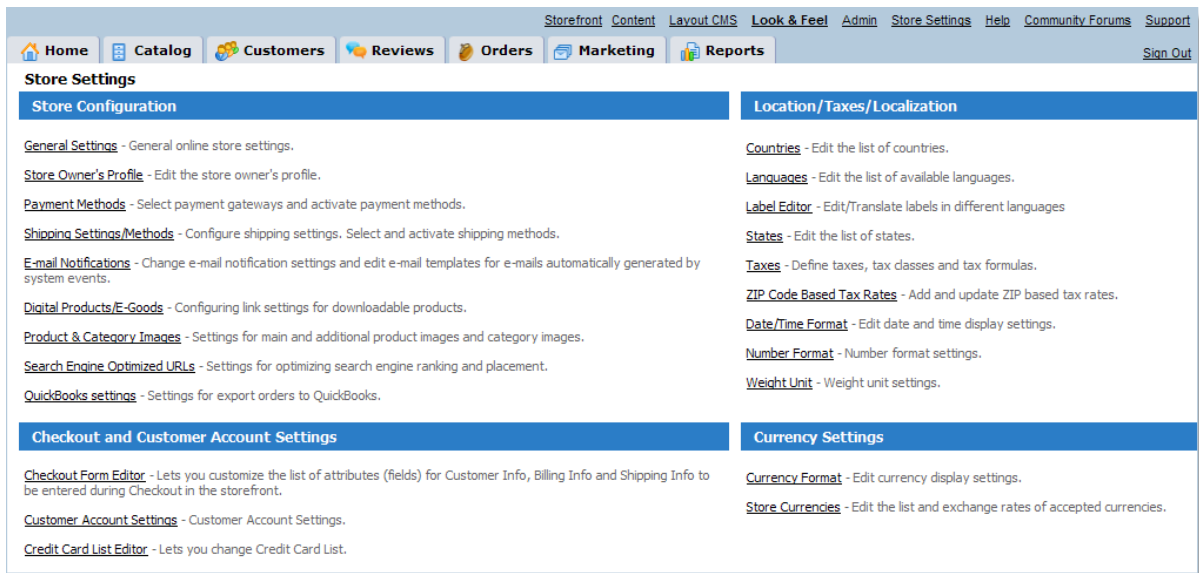
You can use either your server's default e-mail settings or the specific settings of your mail server, e.g. SMTP host, SMTP port and SMTP authorization options.

In addition, you can test the e-mail functionality of the store using the **Test Mail** field.

Just enter your e-mail address and click the **Send** button.

5.7 Store Settings

The **Store Settings** page lets you configure your online store to best suit your needs. In particular, this section lets you set the store e-mail address, payment and shipping methods offered, tax rate settings, currency denotation, and other store settings:



Short descriptions for each of the sections are given below.

Store Configuration

<p>General Settings</p>	<p>The General Settings page lets you manage the basic settings for your store. You can adjust the display options for items not in stock, the local store time, options for restricting site access in case of multiple "invalid password" errors, and options for displaying the contents of the shopping cart to the customer. You can also temporarily close your store (make it temporarily unavailable to visitors).</p>
<p>Store Owner's Profile</p>	<p>In this section you can set the store details including the name of the store, its e-mail address, postal address(es) and phone numbers.</p>
<p>Payment Methods</p>	<p>This section lets you decide which payment methods are available to your customers. You can choose to make several payment methods available at the same time.</p>
<p>Shipping Methods</p>	<p>In this section you can set the shipping methods available to your customers, configure shipping cost estimator and advanced free shipping rules. You can choose to make several shipping options available at the same time.</p>
<p>E-mail</p>	<p>This page lets you to change e-mail notification settings and edit e-mail</p>

<u>Notifications</u>	templates for e-mails automatically generated by system events.
<u>Digital Products/E-Goods</u>	On this page you can define the downloadable products settings, including 'Link lifetime' and 'Maximum download attempts allowed'.
<u>Product & Category Images</u>	On this page you can configure the settings for detailed product images and category images.
<u>Search Engine Optimized URLs</u>	Settings for optimizing search engine ranking and placement.
<u>QuickBooks settings</u>	Settings for the Quickbooks export module.

Checkout and Customer Account Settings

<u>Checkout Form Editor</u>	Lets you customize the list of attributes (fields) for Customer Info, Billing Info and Shipping Info to be entered during Checkout in the storefront.
<u>Customer Account Settings</u>	Use the Customer Account Settings to allow Quick Checkout without registration, configure registration fields, manage account authorization, and more.
<u>Credit Card List Editor</u>	Lets you change and edit Credit Card List.

Location/Taxes/Localization

<u>Countries</u>	The Countries section identifies the list of countries whose residents are allowed to place orders at your store. If you do not want to allow orders from a particular country, you can exclude that country from the list.
<u>Languages</u>	This page lets you edit the list of available languages.
<u>Label Editor</u>	This page lets you edit, translate, export or import language text labels.

States	This section displays the list of states (regions, provinces, etc) for countries whose residents are allowed to shop at your store.
Taxes	This page lets you adjust the taxes and fees applied to orders in accordance with applicable tax legislation.
ZIP Code Based Tax Rates	Add and update ZIP based tax rates.
Date/Time Format	This page lets you adjust the format used for displaying date and time throughout your store.
Number Format	This section sets the format used for displaying positive and negative numbers.
Weight Unit	On this page you can set the format used for displaying weight units. Only one weight unit can be used at a time.

Currency Settings

Store Currencies and Exchange rates	Manage the list of accepted currencies and exchange rates.
Currency Format	Edit currency display settings.

5.7.1 Taxes

Shopping cart tax calculation module is used to calculate taxes applied at the time of sale. The general principles of tax assessment and guidelines for customizing the tax calculation module are provided below.

Introduction

In most countries, a sales tax is applied to the sale of a product or service. The sales tax has a different name in each country. It is called a **Sales and Use Tax** in the United States and a **Value Added Tax (VAT)** in the European Union. In Canada, the **Goods and Services Tax**

(GST) is levied at the federal level and a **Provincial Sales Tax (PST)** at the level of provinces. Also, several Canadian provinces use a **Harmonized Sales Text (HST)** in place of both **GST** and **PST**.

The sales tax may have different names in other countries; however, shopping cart software provides support for calculating taxes applied at the time of sale for the majority of world countries.

Principles of Tax Assessment in Internet Sales

Shopping Cart software is designed for selling goods on the Internet. In most countries, Internet sales of goods and services are taxed the same way as store sales or mail-order sales.

Depending on local legislation, the following items sold on the Internet may be subject to taxation:

- product being sold
- product packaging
- product shipping services

These taxes may also depend on the customer's and merchant's locations.

Shopping Cart Tax Module Features

Tax calculation module meets the majority of tax assessment requirements applicable to Internet sales. Its features include the following:

- Calculates product sales taxes with regard to the recipient's location (the entity that receives the shipment);
- Calculates product sales taxes with regard to the recipient's ZIP/Postal Code;
- Calculates product sales taxes with regard to the payer's location (the entity that pays for the order);
- Calculates individual taxes for each product sold with regard to the tax rate;
- Supports an unlimited number of taxes;
- Supports an unlimited number of tax rates for the same tax;

-
- Calculates taxes for simultaneous purchase of products spanning several product classes;
 - Calculates taxes applied to shipping cost, if applicable;
 - Calculates taxes applied to shipping cost with regard to delivery method;
 - Calculates intependent taxes whenever two or more tax amounts depend on each other.

Taxes Page Sections

The Taxes page includes several sections described below.

- [Tax Names](#)
- [Tax Display Options](#)
- [Tax Classes](#)
- [Tax Rates](#)
- [Tax Rules on Shipping Cost](#)

Home Catalog Customers Reviews Orders Marketing Reports

Store Settings >> Taxes Page Help

Manage Taxes Settings

This page allows you to define tax settings. Use the Tax Names section to create names for taxes that will be used in your online store. Use the Tax Display Options section to determine how these taxes will display to your customers. Then, create Product Tax Classes, which will be used when you enter products into the catalog. Finally, in the Tax Rates section, define tax formulas for each Product Tax Class. For more details, see Page Help at any time.

Tax Names Add Edit Delete			Tax Display Options Add Edit Delete		
Name	Address To Use		Tax & Display Rule	Displayed Text	
Tax	Shipping Address	<input type="checkbox"/>	Tax (always display)	Tax:	<input type="checkbox"/>

Product Tax Classes Add Edit Delete			Tax Rules on Shipping Costs Edit
Product Tax Class	Description		
Nontaxable	Nontaxable Products	<input type="checkbox"/>	DON'T apply taxes to shipping charges if shipping cost is calculated by this method:
Taxable	Taxable Products	<input type="checkbox"/>	

Tax Rates. Product Tax Class - Nontaxable Add Edit Delete	
Address	Tax Formula
Tax Rates are not defined	

Tax Rates. Product Tax Class - Taxable Add Edit Delete	
Address	Tax Formula
United States	Tax = 8% * (Sale Price + Shipping Cost - Discount) <input type="checkbox"/>

All other addresses are not subject to taxation

Tax Names

This section is used for creating, editing and deleting taxes. You can create as many taxes as you like. In this section you define only a tax name and address type to which the tax applies.

Rules for calculating tax amounts for taxes you have created are defined separately for each **Tax Class** in the **Tax Rates** sections below.

Click the **Add** button to create a new tax. A new dialog opens where you can enter the tax name and the type of address to which it will be applied. For example, if you specify that the tax applies to **Shipping Address**, then only the recipient's address will be taken into account for tax calculation purposes, regardless of the payer's address (**Billing Address**). **Shipping Address** is entered by the customer at the time of purchase.

If you specify that the tax applies to Billing Address, then the tax amount will be calculated only based on the payer's address, regardless of the shipping location.

Using the **Billing** or **Shipping Addresses** for tax calculation depends on the tax jurisdiction where your business is registered. For example, in most of the United States no tax is charged if an article is shipped outside the state. However, if the article is shipped within the state, a tax is charged even if the payer is located in another state.

Check "**Included Into Product Price**" if the prices you enter for products in this tax category include the tax.

To edit or delete a previously created tax, select it with a checkbox on the right and then click the **Edit** or **Delete** buttons, respectively.

Tax Display Options

This section defines the rules for displaying taxes to customers on the checkout pages.

After a new tax has been added to the **Tax Names** list, the corresponding display option is added to the list automatically for your convenience. However, these sections are not hard-connected; you can change the display options independently of the taxes themselves.

The **Tax&Display Rules** column shows the tax name and the rule for displaying the tax. The **Displayed Text** column shows the text that customers will see in front of this tax amount on the checkout pages.

To add a new displayed tax, click the **Add** button. A window will open where you can specify which tax amount should be displayed, and when:

Always display	The corresponding line will be shown regardless of the calculated tax amount (if no tax is applicable, a zero will be displayed).
-----------------------	---

Display if applicable	The corresponding line will be shown only if the tax amount is positive after all calculations.
Never display	The corresponding line will never be shown. This setting is identical to if you delete the display option completely. The tax amount will still be added to the total order amount and displayed in the "Order total:" line.

Several tax amounts can be added up and displayed as one sum, for example under the label "Taxes total:". Use the **Add** button to add any existing taxes to the line. In this case it is recommended that you set the display option to **Always display**. Otherwise, if any of the specified tax amounts will equal zero, the whole line will not be displayed.

To edit or delete a previously created display option, first select it with a checkbox on the right, then click the **Edit** or **Delete** buttons, respectively.

Tax Classes

A tax is a set of rules for tax rate calculation. If different types of products in your store are taxed at different rates, you should create a separate **Tax Class** for each product type and then set them for the products accordingly. You can select a **Tax Class** for a product from the list of available classes when adding or editing the product attributes (**Catalog > Manage Products**).

Two default tax classes already exist after installation: **Taxable** and **Nontaxable**. However, they contain no tax calculation rules.

This section provides only the names and descriptions of tax classes. To define the rules of tax calculation for each class in the list, use the Tax Rates section below that corresponds to that class.

Use the **Add**, **Edit** and **Delete** buttons to add, edit or delete tax classes, respectively (you may need to select the right class with a checkbox first).

Tax Rates

For each tax class entered there is a corresponding Tax Rates section containing the rules for tax calculation. If more than one tax is defined for the same type of address, the taxes are added together.

The total tax amount is defined as the sum of all tax calculations of a tax class.

Use the **Add**, **Edit** and **Delete** buttons to add, edit or delete the calculation rules, respectively (you may need to select the right class with a checkbox first).

Tax Rules on Shipping Cost

Depending on your tax jurisdiction's legislation, a tax can be charged on the cost of shipping of an article to the customer. This section lets you define the rules for calculating tax amounts applied to product shipping prices depending of the selected delivery method.

In most US states, shipping is taxed if the delivery is made using the merchant's means of transportation. If shipping is done by a third party (UPS, USPS, DHL, etc), the shipping cost is not taxed.

To set the nontaxable shipping methods, click the **Edit** button. A window will open where you can select the nontaxable methods. After your choice is saved, the selected nontaxable methods will be listed in this section.

This page has no general **Save** button because all of the above changes are saved immediately.

5.7.1.1 Tax Settings

The **Tax Settings** page provides additional ways to configure taxes according to the tax system of your jurisdiction.

Application Settings

Tax settings Save Close

Allow full tax exemption
If this is set to 'Yes', the customer will be able to use full tax exemption during checkout (which means that all taxes, including taxes built into product prices, will be calculated as null) Yes ▾

Display product prices including taxes
Display product prices including taxes in Product List, Product Info, Shopping Cart, and Checkout pages of storefront. Yes ▾

NOTE: This option only affects taxes included in the product prices.

Save Close

Allow full tax exemption	If this is set to Yes , the customer will be able to use full tax exemption during checkout (which means that all taxes, including taxes built into product prices, will be calculated as null).
---------------------------------	---

<p>Display product prices including taxes</p>	<p>Display product prices including taxes in Product List, Product Info, Shopping Cart, and Checkout pages of storefront.</p> <p>NOTE: This option only affects taxes included in the product prices.</p>
--	---

5.7.1.2 Edit Tax Rate

This page lets you define the formula that shopping cart will use to calculate the amount of the tax specified.

Taxes

Edit Tax Rate Page Help

Product Tax Class ?	Taxable
Shipping/Billing Address * ?	United States <input type="button" value="v"/> Ohio <input type="button" value="v"/>
Tax Name * ?	Sales Tax <input type="button" value="v"/> <input type="checkbox"/> Not Applicable
Rate (%) * ?	<input type="radio"/> 0.00 <input checked="" type="radio"/> Select Zip Code Based Rates
Select Zip Code Based Rates * ?	Ohio <input type="button" value="v"/>
Tax Formula * ?	<div style="border: 1px solid #ccc; padding: 5px;"> Sales Tax = [Ohio] % * (Sale Price + Shipping Cost - Discount) </div> <div style="text-align: right; margin-top: 5px;"> <input type="button" value="Undo"/> <input type="button" value="Clear"/> </div> <div style="margin-top: 5px;"> <input type="button" value="+"/> <input type="button" value="-"/> <input type="button" value="*"/> <input type="button" value="/"/> <input type="button" value("(""=""/> <input type="button" value(")"=""/> </div> <div style="margin-top: 5px;"> Select Price: <input type="button" value="Discount"/> <input type="button" value="v"/> <input type="button" value="Add"/> </div> <div style="margin-top: 5px;"> Select Tax: <input type="button" value="Sales Tax"/> <input type="button" value="v"/> <input type="button" value="Add"/> </div> <div style="margin-top: 5px;"> Add Number: <input type="text"/> <input type="button" value="Add"/> </div>

* = Required Field

Product Tax Class	The tax class that this rule is included in. If a product belongs to this class, shopping cart will calculate the tax according to this rule.
Tax Name	The tax that is to be calculated.
Shipping/	If the tax to be calculated is address-dependent, specify the region to which

Billing Address	<p>the tax applies. The tax amount will be calculated only if the customer's address falls in the region. Otherwise, Avactis won't use this rule.</p> <p>To apply this rule to a whole country, select the All States option.</p>
Rate (%)	<p>The system will calculate the tax amount as the specified percentage of some base price (described below). If a tax in the selected state/region depends on the ZIP code, select the ZIP Code Based Rates option.</p> <p>Note: ZIP Code Tax Rates affect the tax only for the state/region and country selected in the Shipping/Billing Address.</p>
Select Zip Code Based Rates	<p>In the drop-down list, select the file which stores the tax rates depending on the ZIP code for the selected state/region and country. The tax rates file must first be uploaded on the Store Settings >> ZIP Code Based Tax Rates page.</p>
Tax Formula	<p>This is an informational field. It describes the formula that the shopping cart system will use to calculate this tax amount. It starts with the tax specified in Tax Name setting, then shows the percentage taken from a base price, and the base price itself, shown in parentheses.</p>

The rest of the controls serve to change the base price in parentheses. You can insert any of the presented components in it. A component is always inserted before the last closing parenthesis, so make sure to insert them in the correct order.

Clear	Removes all components of the base price and lets you compose it from scratch.
Undo	Removes the last component that was inserted in the formula.
Select Price	A product attribute whose value should be included in the base price. Select an attribute and click the Add button.
Select Tax	Any other tax amount calculated for the product can be included in the base price as well. Select a tax and click the Add button.
Add Number	Any fixed amount can be included in the base price as well. Enter a number and click the Add button.

+, --, *, /, (,)	Mathematical operators that you can insert in the formula. Click a button to insert the corresponding operator.
----------------------	---

- The **Not Applicable** option is useful for tweaking address-dependent tax rules. For example, you can specify a tax for a whole country, and then disable it for one state of the country. To do so, use the following steps:
 - Create a rule for a tax and specify **All States** of a country.
 - Create a rule for the same tax, select the same country and the state to which this tax does not apply, and then check the **Not Applicable** option.

When the rule is ready, click the **Update** button to save it and close the window. You can close the window at any time without saving any changes by clicking the **Cancel** button.

5.7.1.3 Zip Code Based Tax Rates

This page allows you to upload a **CSV** file containing **ZIP** codes and tax rates.

The screenshot displays the 'Store Settings >> ZIP Based Tax Rates' interface. At the top, there is a navigation bar with links for Home, Catalog, Customers, Reviews, Orders, Marketing, Reports, and Sign Out. The main heading is 'Store Settings >> ZIP Based Tax Rates' with a 'Page Help' link. Below this is a table with columns 'Description', 'Date Uploaded', and 'Number of Records'. The table contains one row for 'Ohio' with a date of '2008-12-05 15:31:47' and '759' records. To the right of the table are 'Add', 'Update', and 'Delete' buttons. Below the table is another set of 'Add', 'Update', and 'Delete' buttons. At the bottom, there is a 'Check Tax Rates' section with a 'Description' dropdown set to 'Ohio', a 'ZIP (5 or 5+4 digits)' input field, and a 'Check' button. The current rate is shown as 'Rate: 0%' with a 'Details' link next to it.

To upload a **CSV** file, click the **Add** button. To update a previously uploaded taxes file, select a tax description, click the **Update** button, and then upload the new taxes file.

IMPORTANT!

1. This page is only used to upload tax rates that depend on the **ZIP** code. After you're done here, you should define the taxes and the tax calculation formula by going to **Store Settings >> Taxes**.

2. After uploading taxes, you should also double-check the tax rate by entering 5–10 test **ZIP** codes from the uploaded file in the **Check Tax Rates** section.

CSV file formats for Tax Rates.

The uploaded CSV file may have the following formats.

The ZipCode and SalesTaxRatePercent columns.

ZipCode column must be a 5-digit **ZIP** code. **SalesTaxRatePercent** must be a tax rate expressed as a percentage.

	A	B
1	ZipCode	SalesTaxRatePercent
2	43003	6.75
3	43004	7.00
4	43005	6.50
5	43005	7.00
6	4300*	7.00
7	43009	6.75

IMPORTANT!

The **SalesTaxRatePercent** field must be a tax rate expressed as a percentage.

When entering **ZipCodes**, you can use masks. The asterisk wildcard (*) can match any digit from 0 to 9 in the **ZipCode** field. On the screenshot shown, row #6 has a **ZIP** code with the mask 4300*. This **ZIP** code mask matches all codes from 43000 to 43009.

ZIP code intervals matching a mask have a lower priority than explicitly defined **ZIP** codes. This means that if a customer enters the **ZIP** code 43003 at checkout, the tax rate will be 6.75%.

Even though the entered ZIP code falls in the 4300* interval, this exact **ZIP** code is also defined in Row #2 and has precedence. In case of identical ZIP codes, the higher tax rate will be used. For example, if a customer enters the **ZIP** code 43005 at checkout, then the tax rate will be 7.00% (according to the screenshot shown).

Defining ZIP code intervals

To define the tax rate for Zip code interval, use the following file format:

	A	B	C
1	Zip5Low	Zip5High	SalesTaxRatePercent
2	43003	43007	6.75
3	43008	43010	7.00
4	43011	43015	6.50
5	43016	43021	7.00
6	43022	43029	6.75

You cannot use masks in the **Zip5Low** and **Zip5High** fields. For the above example, if a customer enters the **ZIP** code 43005 at checkout, then the tax rate will be 7.00%, because this **ZIP** code falls under the interval defined in Row #2.

Using expanded Zip codes (Zip5+4).

You can use expanded "Zip5+4" codes:

	A	B	C	D
1	ZipCode	Zip4Low	Zip4High	SalesTaxRatePercent
2	43008	0000	9999	6.75
3	43011	0000	0140	7.00
4	43011	0141	1800	6.50
5	43011	1801	9999	7.00
6	43003	0000	9999	6.75

Here, the **ZipCode** field defines the 5-digit part of the **ZIP** code. The Zip4Low and Zip4High fields define the Zip4 interval. You cannot use masks in the Zip4Low and Zip4High fields. For the above example, if a customer enters the **ZIP** code 43011-0155 at checkout, then the tax rate will be 6.50%, because this Zip5+4 code falls in the interval defined in Row #4.

US States Tax Rate Lookups

You can look up the sales tax rates from the websites of your state's revenue agency.

Example: <http://streamlinedsalestax.org> - https://streamlinedsalestax.org/R_and_B_Files/State_Tax_Lookups.htm (the link may not be current).

Paid tax databases are available from <http://www.taxdatasystems.com>

After you download a **CSV** file from one of these websites, open it in a spreadsheet processing program (for example, Microsoft Excel) and set up the appropriate column headers as described above.

5.7.2 General Settings

The **General Settings** page allows you to manage the basic store settings.

It includes the following sections:

- [Close/Open the Online Store](#)
- [Stock Control](#)
- [Store Time Settings](#)
- [Settings for Blocking Sign In to Admin Area](#)
- [Shopping Cart](#)
- [Set up the drop-down list](#)
- [Paginators in Admin Area](#)
- [Paginators in Storefront](#)
- [Miscellaneous](#)

Store Configuration	
General Settings Page Help <input type="button" value="Save"/> <input type="button" value="Close"/>	
Close/Open the Online Store	
Store status	<input type="text" value="Online"/>
Key for signing in to a temporarily closed store	<input type="text" value="enter"/> http://www.my-first-shop.com/index.php?enter
Stock Control	
Displaying products not in stock	<input type="radio"/> Show and allow to buy. <input checked="" type="radio"/> Show but don't allow to buy. <input type="radio"/> Don't show, don't allow to buy.
Allow buying more product items than there is in stock	<input type="text" value="No"/>
Return product to stock when order is deleted	<input type="text" value="Yes"/>
Return product to stock when order status changes to Canceled or Declined	<input type="text" value="Yes"/>
Store Time Settings	
Store Time	<input type="text" value="15:08:09, 19-11-2009"/>
Adjust store time	<input type="text" value="0"/> Hours
Settings for Blocking Sign In to Admin Area	
Number of unsuccessful attempts to sign in to Admin Area after which the Sign In page is blocked	<input type="text" value="10"/> attempts
Amount of time the sign in page stays blocked	<input type="text" value="5 minutes"/>
Shopping Cart	
Show customer the shopping cart contents after the product has been added	<input checked="" type="radio"/> Enabled <input type="radio"/> Disabled
Minimum Subtotal to start checkout. Use 0 to set no restrictions.	<input type="text" value="0"/>
How products are added to cart	<input type="text" value="Add the two product quantities"/>
Set up the drop-down list for selecting product quantity when adding product to cart	
The top numerical value in the drop-down list	<input type="text" value="30"/>
Default value selected in the drop-down list	<input type="text" value="1"/>
Limit the top value in the drop-down list using this product's Quantity in Stock	<input type="text" value="Yes"/>
Paginatons in Admin Area	
List of available products per page values	<input type="text" value="10"/> <input type="text" value="20"/> <input type="text" value="30"/> <input type="text" value="100"/> <input type="button" value="New value:"/> <input type="text"/>
Default products per page	<input type="text" value="10"/>
Number of page links shown	<input type="text" value="3"/>
Paginatons in Storefront	
List of available products per page values	<input type="text" value="10"/> <input type="text" value="20"/> <input type="text" value="30"/> <input type="text" value="100"/> <input type="button" value="New value:"/> <input type="text"/>
Default products per page	<input type="text" value="10"/>
Number of page links shown	<input type="text" value="3"/>
Miscellaneous	

Close/Open the Online Store

In this section you can set the status of your store to either **CLOSED** or **ONLINE**. A **CLOSED** store is unavailable to your visitors. In that case, a special webpage is displayed. For details on creating such a page, please refer to Storefront Area documentation.

Administrators can access a **CLOSED** store by using the keyword identified in the "**Key for signing in to a temporarily closed store**" box.

Store status	To close the store, set the status to CLOSED . Store users will not be able to view the catalog of products or place orders. A webpage specially created for this purpose will be displayed to visitors. For details on creating such a page, please refer to Storefront Area documentation. To open the store to shoppers, set the store status to ONLINE .
Key for signing in to a temporarily closed store	The keyword for accessing a CLOSED store. The URL for viewing a CLOSED store is displayed below the keyword.

Stock Control

This section lets you choose whether items not in stock are displayed to customers and whether they can be ordered.

Displaying products not in stock	You can select one of the following options: Show and allow to buy. Show but don't allow to buy. Don't show, don't allow to buy.
Allow buying more product items than there is in stock	If a customer tries to add more products to cart than there is in stock, this option will determine whether the product will be added.
Return product to stock	If this is set to 'Yes' and an order is deleted, then it's products are

when order is deleted	returned to stock.
Return product to stock when order status changes to Canceled or Declined	When an order is created, the stock is reduced by the number of items ordered. These settings are designed to help you manage your stock. If this setting is set to 'Yes' and the order status changes to Canceled or Declined, then its products are returned to stock.

Store Time Settings

This sets the current store time. The time is used for order placement, in e-mails, and so on.

Store Time	Current store time and store date.
Adjust store time	This setting lets you change the current store time. Use positive numbers to increase the time and negative numbers to decrease it.

Settings for Blocking Sign In to Admin Area

This section lets you customize the conditions for blocking access to **Admin Area** in case of multiple unsuccessful attempts to sign in. If activated, a block applies only to one user having a particular **IP** address and does not apply to any other users.

Number of unsuccessful attempts to sign in to Admin Area after which the Sign In page is blocked	This setting determines the number of unsuccessful attempts to sign in to Admin Area after which the Sign In page becomes blocked. This allows you to protect your store from unauthorized access. The block applies to only one user that has a particular IP address and does not apply to any other users.
Amount of time the sign in page stays blocked	The amount of time the Sign In page stays blocked for the user who has exceeded the limit of attempts to sign in. The block applies to only one user that has a particular IP address and does not apply to any other users.

Shopping Cart

In this section you can choose whether the contents of the shopping cart are shown to the customer after he or she has added a product to it.

Show customer the shopping cart contents after the product has been added	Enabled: the contents of the shopping cart are displayed after a product is added. Any time a product is added, the customer sees what is currently in the cart. Disabled: the contents of the shopping cart are NOT displayed after a product is added. Adding products to cart is done without the cart's contents being displayed every time, although the customer may view the cart whenever they want.
Minimum Subtotal to start checkout. Use 0 to set no restrictions	If Subtotal is less than this amount, the customer will be redirected to the shopping cart with the appropriate message.
How products are added to cart	Sometimes when a product is already in the customer's cart, the customer adds the product to the cart again. You have two options for the behavior of the software in this situation. The first option is that the existing quantity and the new quantity will be added. The second option is that the existing quantity will be replaced with the new quantity.

Set up the drop-down list

The top numerical value in the drop-down list	In the storefront, this parameter defines the greatest value in the drop-down list for selecting product quantity when adding product to cart. Values in the drop-down list start with 1. For example, if you want the range of value to be 1-20, set this parameter to 20.
--	--

Default value selected in the drop-down list	<p>You may define a default value that will be pre-selected in the drop-down list on the Product Info page.</p> <p>Note: This value will be selected only if it falls within the range of available values.</p>
Limit the top value in the drop-down list using this product's Quantity in Stock	<p>With this parameter you can limit the top value in the drop-down list using the number of items in stock.</p> <p>This parameter affects each product individually. For example, you set the top value equal to 30. However, one of your products has Quantity in Stock equal to 5. By selecting this option, you can limit the range of values for this particular product to 1-5.</p>

Paginators in Admin Area

List of available products per page values	By using this option you can modify the list of available products per page values in Admin Area.
Default products per page	Select how many products are displayed per page by default in Admin Area.
Number of page links shown	Number of page links after which the Next link is shown in Admin Area.

Paginators in Storefront

List of available products per page values	By using this option you can modify the list of available products per page values in Storefront.
Default products per page	Select how many products are displayed per page by default in Storefront.

Number of page links shown	Number of page links after which the Next link is shown in Storefront.
-----------------------------------	--

Miscellaneous

The ID that will be assigned to the next order	The next order ID. Using this parameter you can set the numerical value of the next order's ID. All subsequent order IDs will be incremented by one.
Number of related products per line	Number of related products per line in Storefront.
Number of bestsellers per line	Number of bestsellers products displayed per line in Storefront.
Display randomly related products if more than	Display randomly related products from the list if the checkbox is checked and the number of related products is more than the given number.
Featured products per line	Number of featured products displayed per line in Storefront.
Display randomly featured products if more than	Display randomly featured products from the list if the checkbox is checked and the number of featured products is more than the given number.
Number of bestsellers per line	The number of products in the bestsellers block displayed in each line in the Storefront.
Display randomly bestsellers if more than	Display randomly bestsellers from the list if the checkbox is checked and the number of bestsellers is more than the given number.

For detailed information on any of these settings, click the (?) mark. Click **Save** to save any changes. To leave the page click **Close**.

5.7.3 Store Owner's Profile

The **Store Owner's Profile** is used to customize the contact information for the online store. These details are used in automated notifications sent to customers following order placement and during order processing. Store information can also be used when sending newsletters, offers, notices, etc to active customers.

To enter a piece of information, use the corresponding textboxes. Click the (?) mark to get help on an item.

Click **Update** to save all changes made. To leave the page click **Close**.

Name	This is the name of your online store, for example, "Jon's Music Store." This name appears in the From field of all e-mails sent to your customers.
Website	The URL of your online store.
Store e-mail address	The e-mail address of your store. This address also appears in the From field of all e-mails sent to your customers as well as to the administrator and the order-processing department.
Site administrator e-mail address	The site administrator's e-mail address. This address receives all automated messages from the online store. Automated messages include information about attempts at unauthorized access, low stock levels of products, new orders placed, etc.
Orders department e-mail address	The e-mail address of the order-processing department. This address receives all automated messages from the online store that concern low stock levels of products, new orders placed, changes in order status, etc.

Store Configuration

Store Owner's Profile Page Help Save Close

Common Store Page Title	<input type="text" value="Sample Store"/>
Name	<input type="text" value="Shopping Cart"/>
Website	<input type="text" value="http://www.my-first-shop.com"/>
Phones	<input type="text" value="+1 555-555-5555"/>
Fax	<input type="text" value="+1 555-555-5555"/>
Address Line 1	<input type="text" value="3855 Arthur Ave. N"/>
Address Line 2	<input type="text"/>
City	<input type="text" value="Seaford"/>
Country	<input type="text" value="United States"/>
Zip/Postal code	<input type="text" value="11783"/>
State	<input type="text" value="New York"/>
Store e-mail address	From <input type="text" value="Store"/>
	E-mail Address <input type="text" value="store@my-first-shop.com"/>
Site administrator e-mail address	From <input type="text" value="Administrator"/>
	E-mail Address <input type="text" value="admin@my-first-shop.com"/>
Orders department e-mail address	From <input type="text" value="Orders"/>
	E-mail Address <input type="text" value="orders@my-first-shop.com"/>

Save Close

5.7.4 Payment Methods

The **Payment Methods** page lets you manage the payment methods that you intend to offer for your store's customers.

Availability of payment methods from which you can choose depends on the version of shopping cart software. The full list of payment methods supported by the system is provided under **Available Payment Methods**. To select one or more payment methods and/or payment gateways, select them in the list and move them to the **Selected Payment Methods** box by clicking the **Right Arrow** button.

Store Settings >> Payment Methods [Page Help](#)

Selected Payment Methods

Below you can see the selected payment methods. The order of payment methods is identical to what the customers will see when making an order. To change the priorities, please go to [Manage Payment Methods](#).

Active [CashOnDelivery](#) Cash on delivery module

Active [DirectDeposit](#) Direct deposit module

* - To start receiving payments, you need to enter the required parameters and activate payment method.

Manage Payment Methods

The **Available Payment Methods** box displays the list of payment methods and payment gateways. To activate desired payment methods and/or payment gateways, select them in this list and move them to the **Selected Payment Methods** box using the right arrow. Use the up and down arrows to define the order in which the payment methods will be displayed to the customers when they make an order. If you don't find the desired payment method in this list, please contact our support staff.

Available Payment Methods

Offline Payment Methods

Check
Cheque
MoneyOrder
Manual/Offline Credit Card Processing

Online Credit Card

2Checkout
Authorize.Net (Credit Card)
BBVA
Cardia Shop

Online eCheck

Authorize.Net (eCheck)

Selected Payment Methods

[Offline]CashOnDelivery
[Offline]DirectDeposit

[Save](#) [Cancel](#)

Under **Selected Payment Methods**, the order of payment methods is identical to your customers will see when placing an order for a product. Click the Up and Down arrows to define the order in which these payment methods will be displayed to customers. To save any changes click Save.

Once saved, the selected payment methods will appear in the **Payment Methods** section. By default, the selected payment methods are inactive, that is, they are still unavailable to your customers. To start offering these payment methods, you need to customize the settings and activate the selected payment methods. To do so, click a payment method's name. A new window is displayed where you can customize and activate the payment method.

To remove a payment method from the list of available methods, select it in the **Selected Payment Methods** column and click the Left button to move it to **Available Payment Methods**. Click Save. The selected payment method will be removed from the list of **Payment Methods**.

5.7.5 Shipping Methods

The **Shipping Methods** page lets you manage the shipping methods that you intend to offer for your store.

[Home](#) [Content](#) [Page Manager](#) [Look & Feel](#) [Admin](#) [Store Settings](#) [Help](#) [Community Forums](#) [Support](#)

[Customers](#) [Reviews](#) [Orders](#) [Marketing](#) [Reports](#) [Sign Out](#)

Store Settings >> Shipping Settings/Methods Page Help

General Shipping Settings Shipping Tester

Per Order Shipping Fee	\$0.00	Free Shipping			
Per Order Handling Fee	\$0.00	Rule Name	Min Subtotal	Cat/Prod	Mixed Cart
Minimum Shipping Cost	\$0.00	Free shipping	\$100.00	1/0	Apply rule
Free Shipping For Orders Over	NA				
Free Handling For Orders Over	NA				

[Edit Settings](#) [Edit Rules](#)

Selected Shipping Methods

Below you can see the selected shipping methods. The order of shipping methods is identical to what the customers will see when placing orders. To rearrange the shipping methods, please go to Manage Shipping Methods.

Active [Federal Express](#) The module for calculating shipping costs for FedEx shipping. To perform shipping cost calculations, you need to have an account with FedEx - www.fedex.com

Active [U.S. Postal Service](#) The module for calculating shipping costs for USPS shipping. To perform shipping cost calculations, you need to have an account with USPS - www.usps.com.

*** - To start working with a shipping method, please enter the required parameters and activate the shipping method.**

Manage Shipping Methods

The **Available Shipping Methods** box displays the list of shipping methods. To activate the desired shipping methods, select them in the list and move them to the **Selected Shipping Methods** box by clicking the right arrow button. Click the up and down arrows to define the order in which the shipping methods will be displayed to the customer when they are placing an order. If you don't find the desired shipping method in the list, please contact our support staff.

Available Shipping Methods		Selected Shipping Methods
Australia Post Canada Post Custom Shipping Rates Federal Express Offline Standard Shipping Rates Freight101 InterShipper United Parcel Service	<input type="button" value="→"/> <input type="button" value="←"/>	Federal Express U.S. Postal Service
		<input type="button" value="↑"/> <input type="button" value="↓"/>

[Save](#) [Cancel](#)

Availability of shipping methods from which you can choose depends on the version of shopping cart software. The full list of shipping methods supported by the system is provided under **Available Shipping Methods**. To select one or more shipping methods, select them in the list and move them to the **Selected Shipping Methods** box by clicking the *Right Arrow* button.

Under **Selected Shipping Methods**, the order of shipping methods is identical to your customers will see when placing an order for a product. Click the *Up* and *Down* arrows to define the order in which these shipping methods will be displayed to customers. To save any changes click **Save**.

Once saved, the selected shipping methods will appear in the **Shipping Methods** section. By default, the selected shipping methods are inactive, that is, they are still unavailable to your customers. To start offering these shipping options, you need to customize the settings and activate the selected shipping methods. To do so, click a shipping method's name. A new window is displayed where you can customize and activate the shipping method.

To remove a shipping method from the list of available methods, select it in the Selected Shipping Methods column and click the *Left* button to move it to **Available Shipping Methods**. Click **Save**. The selected shipping method will be removed from the list of **Shipping Methods**.

General Shipping Settings

If you click on the "Edit settings" button on the Shipping methods page, you will see the **Edit General Settings** window :

Shipping Settings/Methods			
General Shipping Settings Save Close			
Per Order Shipping Fee	?	0	\$
Per Order Handling Fee	?	0	\$
Minimum Shipping Cost	?	0	\$
Free Shipping For Orders Over	?		\$
Free Handling For Orders Over	?		\$
Free Shipping Mode	?	Set zero cost for all shipping methods	
Estimate Shipping Cost Settings			
Hide 'Country' field	?	Hide	
And assume it is always	?	All Countries	
Hide 'State' field	?	Do not hide	
Hide 'ZIP' field	?	Do not hide	
Save Close			

Here is the detailed description of the shipping settings:

Per Order Shipping Fee	<p>Per Order Shipping Fee is the flat fee associated with shipping an order. This amount is added to the order total before tax calculations.</p> <p>Note: If you have shipping costs for individual products, you can enter them for each individual product as the Per Item Shipping Cost attribute.</p> <p>Note: If you have a shipping cost modifier for some product options, you may enter it as the Shipping Cost Modifier attribute in the Product Options section. The Shipping Cost Modifier for an option affects the Per Item Shipping Cost for the entire product.</p> <p>Example:</p> <p>Per Item Shipping Cost for Product1 = \$3.00 Per Item Shipping Cost for Product2 = \$5.00 Per Order Shipping Flat Fee = \$5.00</p> <p>The customer ordered 2 items of Product1 and 4 items of Product2.</p> <p>The shipping fee by UPS = \$11.00</p>
-------------------------------	---

	Then, (Total shipping cost, \$42.00) = (Per Order Shipping Flat Fee, \$5.00) + (UPS shipping fee, \$11.00) + (2 x Per Item Shipping Cost for Product1, 2 x \$3.00) + (4 x Per Item Shipping Cost for Product2, 4 x \$5.00)
Per Order Handling Fee	<p>Per Order Handling Fee is the flat fee associated with shipping an order. This amount is added to the order total before tax calculations.</p> <p>Note 1: If you have handling costs for individual products, you can enter them for each individual product as the Per Item Handling Cost attribute.</p> <p>Note 2: If you have a handling cost modifier for some product options, you may enter it as the Handling Cost Modifier attribute in the Product Options section. The Handling Cost Modifier for an option affects the Per Item Handling Cost for the entire product.</p> <p>Example: Per Item Handling Cost for Product1 = \$1.00 Per Item Handling Cost for Product2 = \$2.00 Per Order Handling Fee = \$10.00</p> <p>The customer ordered 2 items of Product1 and 4 items of Product2.</p> <p>Then, (Total handling cost, \$20.00) = (Per Order Handling Fee, \$10.00) + (2 x Per Item Handling Cost for Product1, 2 x \$1.00) + (4 x Per Item Handling Cost for Product2, 4 x \$2.00)</p>
Minimum Shipping Cost	Minimum Shipping Cost is the lowest possible shipping cost. Total shipping cost is calculated as the sum of the shipping cost was calculated by the selected shipping method (UPS, FedEx, USPS, etc.) + Per Order Shipping Fee + Per Item Shipping Cost * number of products . For example, if the total shipping cost is \$24 and the Minimum Shipping Cost is \$30 , then the shipping cost will be equal to \$30 - the minimum.
Free Shipping For Orders Over and Free Handling	<p>Free Shipping For Orders Over and Free Handling For Orders Over enable you to provide free shipping and/or handling for orders with Order Subtotal exceeding the set values.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Example 1. Free Shipping For Orders Over = \$300.00 Free Handling For Orders Over = \$400.00 Order Subtotal = \$270.00

**For
Orders
Over**

Shipping Cost Calculated = **\$30.00**

Handling Cost Calculated = **\$10.00**

In this case, Free Shipping is not applied because of Order Subtotal is less than **\$300.00**. Free Handling is not applied too because of Order Subtotal is less than **\$400.00**.

The total shipping and handling cost is calculated as follows:

Shipping and Handling Cost = Shipping Cost Calculated + Handling Cost Calculated = \$30.00 + \$10.00 = \$40.00

The order total is calculated as follows:

Order Subtotal: **\$270.00**

Shipping and Handling: **\$40.00**

Taxes: **\$31.00**

Total: **\$341.00**

• **Example 2.**

Free Shipping For Orders Over = **\$300.00**

Free Handling For Orders Over = **\$400.00**

Order Subtotal = **\$320.00**

Shipping Cost Calculated = **\$30.00**

Handling Cost Calculated = **\$10.00**

In this case, Free Shipping is applied because of Order Subtotal is greater than **\$300.00**.

Free Handling is not applied because of Order Subtotal is less than **\$400.00**.

The total shipping and handling cost is calculated as follows:

Shipping and Handling Cost = Handling Cost Calculated = **\$10.00**

The order total is calculated as follows:

Order Subtotal: **\$320.00**

Shipping and Handling: **\$10.00**

Taxes: **\$33.00**

Total: **\$363.00**

• Example 3.

Free Shipping For Orders Over = **\$300.00**

Free Handling For Orders Over = **\$400.00**

Order Subtotal = **\$450.00**

Shipping Cost Calculated = **\$30.00**

Handling Cost Calculated = **\$10.00**

In this case, Free Shipping is applied because of Order Subtotal is greater than **\$300.00**.

Free Handling is applied too because of Order Subtotal is greater than **\$400.00**.

The total shipping and handling cost is calculated as follows:

Shipping and Handling Cost= **\$0.00**

The order total is calculated as follows:

Order Subtotal: **\$450.00**

Shipping and Handling Cost: **\$0.00**

Taxes: **\$45.00**

Total: **\$495.00**

**Free
Shipping
Mode**

There are 2 free shipping modes available:

1 - Set zero cost for all shipping methods

If you select the "zero cost for all shipping methods", your customers will see the list of all shipping methods you use. The price of all these shipping methods will be zero and your customers will be able to select any shipping method from the list.

2 - Add new Free Shipping method

If you select this mode, your customers will see the separate free shipping method.

On the same page you can configure the **Free Shipping method** using these options:

Free Shipping Option Visible Label

Label visible to customers, if the "Free Shipping" method is exposed.

Where to place the Free Shipping method

Where to place the "Free Shipping" method - either to the top of the shipping

	methods list or to the bottom of that list.
Estimate Shipping Cost Settings options	By default, your customers can calculate the shipping costs to his or her region without logging-in on the first page of checkout. Using the Estimate Shipping Cost Settings options, you can enter a default value for the Zip code, state or country, disabling your customers from selecting e.g. different country or state.

Free Shipping Rules settings

This section allows to add the advanced **Free Shipping rules** to the certain categories, products or product.

If you click on the "Edit rules" button on the Shipping methods page, you will see the **Free Shipping Rules** window.

To create an advanced Free Shipping Rule, click the **Add Rule** button in the **Free Shipping Rules** section:

Free Shipping Rules			
Rule Name	Min Subtotal	Cat/Prod	Mixed Cart
<input type="checkbox"/> <u>Free shipping rule</u>	-	1/0	Apply rule
<input type="button" value="Close"/>			

Next, enter the name of the rule and save it.

After this you can enter the minimal subtotal value (the rule will not be applied for values of Order Subtotal less than Min Subtotal).

Free Shipping Rules

Details Items List

Edit Free Shipping Rule Save Close

Rule Name* ? Free shipping

Items ? 1 Category, 0 Products affected. [Details](#)

Min Subtotal ? 100 \$

If there are products in the cart both specified and not specified in the Items List: ? Apply the rule anyway ▾

* = Required Field

Save Close

Additionally you can select the "If there are products in the cart both specified and not specified in the Items List" shopping cart behavior.

There are 2 modes for this option:

- **Apply the rule anyway**

If there is at least one product specified in the Items List in the cart, the free shipping rule applies.

- **Do not apply the rule**

If there is at least one product not specified in the Items List in the cart, the free shipping rule does not apply.

Free Shipping Rules

Details Items List

Rule #1, 'Free shipping' Save Close

From category: No category selected

Categories	Products in selected category
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Home Computers 	

Add Category Add Product

The products and categories to which the free shipping rule applies are listed here. Once the category is selected the rule applies to all the category products, the subcategories and the subcategory products.

Categories affected	Products affected
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Home	<input type="checkbox"/> New Product

Delete Save Close

On the **Items List** tab, you can apply the Free Shipping Rule to a certain category or product (s).

To apply the **Free Shipping Rule to a specific category**, select the required category from the **Categories** list and click the **Add Category** button.

To apply the **Free Shipping Rule to a specific product**, select the product category from the **Categories** list, select the product from the "Products in selected category" list and click the **Add Product** button.

Don't forget to click the **Save** button to save your Free Shipping Rule.

A general example of calculating the shipping and handling cost:

The customer ordered 2 items of Product1 and 4 items of Product2.

Sale Price for Product1 = **\$70.00**

Per Item Shipping Cost for Product1 = **\$3.00**

Per Item Handling Cost for Product1 = **\$1.00**

Sale Price for Product2 = **\$30.00**

Per Item Shipping Cost for Product2 = **\$5.00**

Per Item Handling Cost for Product2 = **\$2.00**

Per Order Shipping Fee = **\$5.00**

Per Order Handling Fee = **\$10.00**

Minimum Shipping Cost = **\$20.00**

Free Shipping For Orders Over = **\$300.00**

Free Handling For Orders Over = **\$400.00**

Order Subtotal = $\$70.00 * 2 + \$30.00 * 4 = \$140.00 + \$120.00 = \mathbf{\$260.00}$

In this case, Free Shipping is not applied because Order Subtotal is less than **\$300.00**.

Free Handling is not applied either because Order Subtotal is less than **\$400.00**.

Total shipping cost = (Per Order Shipping Fee, \$5.00) + (UPS shipping fee, \$11.00) + (2 x Per Item Shipping Cost for Product1, 2 x \$3.00) + (4 x Per Item Shipping Cost for Product2, 4 x \$5.00) = **\$42.00**

Total handling cost = (Per Order Handling Fee, \$10.00) + (2 x Per Item Handling Cost for Product1, 2 x \$1.00) + (4 x Per Item Handling Cost for Product2, 4 x \$2.00) = **\$20.00**

Shipping and Handling Cost = Total shipping cost + Total handling cost = $\$42.00 + \$20.00 = \mathbf{\$62.00}$

Order Subtotal: **\$260.00**

Shipping and Handling: **\$62.00**

Taxes: **\$32.20**

Total: **\$354.20**

5.7.6 E-mail Notifications

The **E-mail Notifications** page is used to manage how e-mail notifications regarding orders, payments and actions are sent. You may create any number of notifications according to your online store's policies. Notifications may be sent out to any number of persons.

The following types of notifications can be sent:

- When a new order is received
- When there is a change in the order status (**In Progress, Ready to Ship, Shipped, Cancelled, Declined, Completed**)
- When there is a change in the payment status (**Waiting, Fully Paid, Declined**)

- When there is a low level in stock
- When there is **Digital Products/E-Goods** ordered
- When a new customer registers

Storefront Content Page Manager Look & Feel Admin **Store Settings** Help Community Forums Support

Catalog Customers Reviews Orders Marketing Reports Sign Out

Store Settings >> E-mail Notifications [Page Help](#)

E-mail Notifications [Add](#) [Edit](#) [Delete](#)

Notifications	On Action	Active
Name: <u>New Order</u> From: Store <store@my-first-shop.com> Subject: {StoreOwnerName}, Your order #{OrderID}	New Order Placed	Yes <input checked="" type="radio"/>
Name: <u>Order Shipped</u> From: Store <store@my-first-shop.com> Subject: Your {StoreOwnerName} order shipped #{OrderID}	Order Status Changed	Yes <input type="radio"/>
Name: <u>Order Status Changed</u> From: Store <store@my-first-shop.com> Subject: Your {StoreOwnerName} order ({OrderID}) status has been changed to {OrderStatus}	Order Status Changed	Yes <input type="radio"/>
Name: <u>Payment Received</u> From: Store <store@my-first-shop.com> Subject: {StoreOwnerName}, Important Notice: We have received your payment for order #{OrderID}	Payment Status Changed	Yes <input type="radio"/>
Name: <u>Low Stock Levels</u> From: Store <store@my-first-shop.com> Subject: {StoreOwnerName}, Low Stock Levels.	Low Level in Stock	Yes <input type="radio"/>
Name: <u>Digital Products/E-Goods</u> From: Store <store@my-first-shop.com> Subject: {StoreOwnerName}, Digital Products Ordered.	Digital Products/E-Goods Ordered	Yes <input type="radio"/>
Name: <u>A new account has been registered</u> From: Store <store@my-first-shop.com> Subject: {StoreOwnerWebsite}, Your account has been registered.	New customer registration	Yes <input type="radio"/>

The following buttons and options are used to manage e-mail notification settings:

Add	You can add a new rule (event) for a notification. Clicking this button brings up a window in which you can enter the body of the notification and define the event that will trigger the notification to be sent.
------------	--

Edit	This allows you to edit a previously created notification.
Delete	This lets you delete a previously created notification.
Notifications	<p>Name: The name of the notification which briefly describes its purpose. It is not included in the body of the notification e-mail, only used to identify the notification.</p> <p>The name is displayed as a link. Clicking the link brings a pop-up window where you can edit the notification parameters.</p> <p>From: This defines the sender of the e-mail notification.</p> <p>Subject: This is the subject of the notification e-mail. The E-Mail Subject is included in the e-mail and is visible to the recipient. The format {InfoTag} is supported in the E-mail Subject. For example, if the E-Mail Subject contains the tag {OrderID}, the recipient will see an actual ID of his/her order.</p>
On Action	This defines the action that triggers the notification to be sent.
Active	This setting displays the status of e-mail notifications. A YES setting means that the selected notification rule is active. A NO setting means that no notifications are being sent based on the selected rule. To change the status of a notification, click the Edit button to bring up the dialog for editing notifications.

Possible Actions

You can add a new notification to the list by clicking the **Add** button. A pop-up window will open where you can enter the parameters of the new notification and choose the event that will trigger the notification.

You can also edit any of the listed notifications. To do so, select the notification you wish to change with the corresponding radio button on the right (the table row will be highlighted), and then click the **Edit** button. A pop-up window will appear, and you will be able to change any of the notification parameters.

Alternatively, you can just click the notification's name.

You can also delete any of the listed notifications. To do so, select the notification you wish to change with the corresponding radio button on the right (the table row will be highlighted), and then click the **Delete** button. A confirmation message will appear. Click OK to permanently

delete the notification.

E-mail Notification

Notification Properties Add Cancel

Notification Name * ?	<input type="text"/>
E-Mail Subject * ?	<input type="text"/>
Active ?	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
Send Mail on Action ?	New Order Placed <input type="button" value="v"/>

Send from *

Available Senders

Store <store@my-first-shop.com>

Independent Sender

Send to *

Target Recipients

Available Recipients

- Customer
- Store <store@my-first-shop.com>
- Administrator <admin@my-first-shop.com>
- Orders <orders@my-first-shop.com>

Independent Recipient

E-Mail Body

E-Mail Body

Available Info Tags

- {OrderID}
- {OrderDate}
- {OrderStatus}
- {OrderPaymentStatu
- {OrderPaymentMetho
- {OrderPaymentMetho
- {OrderShippingMeth
- {OrderSubtotal}
- {OrderGlobalDiscou
- {OrderPromoCode}
- {OrderPromoCodeDis
- {OrderQuantityDisc
- {OrderDiscountedSu
- {OrderTotalShippin
- {OrderTax}
- {OrderTaxExptMark}
- {OrderTaxExptAmoun
- {OrderTaxExptInput
- {OrderTotal}
- {TrackingNumber}
- {CustomerFirstname

Available Block Tags

- {OrderContentBlock}
- {OrderDiscountsBlock}

Block Tag Templates

Block tag {OrderContentBlock}

Available Info Tags

- {ProductID}
- {ProductName}
- {ProductQuantity}
- {ProductSalePrice}
- {ProductListPrice}
- {ProductSKU}
- {ProductPerItemShipp
- {ProductPerItemHand

Block tag {OrderDiscountsBlock}

Available Info Tags

- {OrderSubtotal}
- {OrderGlobalDiscount}
- {OrderPromoCode}
- {OrderPromoCodeDiscou
- {OrderQuantityDiscount}

* = Required Field

Add Cancel

You may create any number of notifications according to your online store's policies. Each notification can be sent to any number of persons.

A notification e-mail body and headers can be fully customized and can contain any details of the event that triggers the notification. This is achieved by inserting **InfoTags** - special keywords in curly brackets - in the required places of the message. The shopping cart system will replace the **InfoTags** with actual pieces of information before sending the message.

5.7.7 Digital Products/E-Goods

This page lets you configure the downloadable products options.

Store Configuration

Digital Products/E-Goods Settings

Save Close

Link lifetime 72 hours

Maximum download attempts allowed 3

Save Close

Use the following settings to manage Digital Products/E-Goods:

Link lifetime - Link lifetime in hours. A download link is disabled after its lifetime expires.

Maximum download attempts allowed - Maximum number of attempts to download a single file.

See Also: [Digital Products/E-Goods](#)

5.7.8 Product & Category Images

On this page, you can set the parameters affecting the way product images are handled. Every product can have the following types of images associated with it:

- **Detailed Product Images** are the additional images that you can add to a product on the **'Images'** tab of the **Edit Product** window. You can have any number of detailed product images, but note that large number of images can slow down the product page load.
- **Main Product Images** - the images that are set on the main ('Details') tab of the **Edit Product** window. **Large Image** is the image displayed on a product info page. **Small Image** is the image shown in various lists which include the product. It can be automatically created from the large image. Both main images can be imported in the catalog with the **Product Import** wizard, together with the **CSV** file containing other product attributes.

Store Configuration	
Product & Category Images Page Help Save Close	
Automatically resize the detailed full image	<input type="checkbox"/> No
Side length of the detailed full image	<input type="text" value="640"/> pixels
Thumbnail side size	<input type="text" value="70"/> pixels
Main Product Images	
Automatically resize the full image	<input type="checkbox"/> No
Side length of the full image	<input type="text" value="640"/> pixels
Automatically create a thumbnail after a large image is uploaded	<input type="checkbox"/> Yes
Side length of the thumbnail	<input type="text" value="100"/> pixels
Category Images	
Automatically create thumbnail after full image is uploaded	<input type="checkbox"/> Yes
Maximum side length of a thumbnail	<input type="text" value="120"/> pixels
Save Close	

The settings for both types of images are similar. If **Automatically resize the (detailed) full image** setting is set to **'Yes'**, any image file that you upload to the catalog will be proportionally scaled down to a smaller size. The longest side of the original image will have the length specified in the **Side length of the (detailed) full image** field, and the other side will be proportionally shorter.

Only the reduced image will stay in the catalog and will be shown to customers viewing your store pages.

If the longest side of an uploaded image is shorter than the setting, no action will be performed on the image. It won't be scaled up to the specified size. After a full image is uploaded in the catalog, it's necessary to create its thumbnail. It is the thumbnail that a customer initially sees and can click to view the corresponding large image. Thumbnails for detailed product images are always created automatically. Thumbnails for main large product images can be uploaded manually, either during import or in the **Edit Product** window.

But if you set **Automatically create thumbnail after full image** is uploaded setting to **'Yes'**, they will be created automatically as well. In case of automatic thumbnail creation, the **Side length** of the thumbnail setting specifies the maximum size that a thumbnail image can have. The longest side of the image will have the length specified, and the other side will be proportionally shorter.

If you upload several detailed images for a product, the product info page will have several thumbnails.

The **Storefront: the number of columns when displaying a block of thumbnails** setting controls how many thumbnail images can be displayed in a row. If your product pages are designed to be wide, you can increase this number.

	Detailed Product Images
Automatically resize the detailed full image	Automatically resize the detailed full image. Set 'No' if you want your detailed large images' size left intact. Images smaller than set will be skipped.
Side length of the detailed full image	The length of one side of the detailed full image.
Thumbnail side size	Maximum thumbnail side size in pixels.
Storefront: the number of columns when displaying a	Storefront lets you display a block of additional product images using the

block of thumbnails	<?php ProductDetailedImages() ; ?> tag. This parameter defines the number of columns in the block.
	Main Product Images
Automatically resize the full image	Automatically resize the full image. Set ' No ' if You want Your large images' size left intact. Images smaller than set will be skipped.
Side length of the full image	The length of one side of the full image.
Automatically create thumbnail after full image is uploaded	Automatically create a thumbnail after the full image is uploaded.
Side length of the thumbnail	The length of one side of the thumbnail.
Automatically create thumbnail after full image is uploaded	Resample a copy of the uploaded large image to the dimensions specified in the settings and save it as a thumbnail image.
Maximum side length of a thumbnail	All thumbnail images will fit into a square with the specified side length.

5.7.9 Search Engine Optimized URLs

This page is to help you define how your storefront page URLs should look.

All pages of your online storefront are, in fact, **PHP** scripts. They have the **.php** extension and may get additional parameters after a question mark (?). All modern search engines index such pages without problems. But you still can change the look of the **URLs**, so that the pages would appear to be traditional static **HTML** documents. All pages will have the **.html** extension with no additional symbols; they, however, will continue to be generated dynamically. It will scarcely improve their position in search engines, but it can make the **URLs** look more attractive for humans.

Server Requirements

Creating HTML URLs is possible with *Apache HTTP server* only. It is used as a server mostly on

Unix/Linux hosts.

The server should be configured to use its *URL rewriting engine* called **mod_rewrite**. If mod_rewrite is disabled or not installed on the hosting server at all, **HTML URLs** cannot be created. In this case you won't be able to change settings on this page. Your storefront pages will be available as PHP scripts only. This will in no way affect the operation of your online store and its indexing by most search engines.

You can see the necessary details about your server in the **General information** section.

URL Settings

Category links ID	Required. This string is used in combination with a category number as a part of a URL pointing to a category page.
Product links ID	Required. This string is used in combination with a product number as a part of a URL pointing to a product info page.
URL scheme	The order in which product and category identifiers will appear in URLs. Choose the scheme that you and your customers will like best.

URL settings

Category links ID ?	<input type="text" value="cid"/>
Product links ID ?	<input type="text" value="pid"/>
URL scheme ?	<input type="text" value="Single level #1"/>

Sample URLs for the scheme selected:

Category Link: <http://www.example.com/cid-2-1-3-My-Category-Name.html>

Product Link: <http://www.example.com/pid-2-My-Product-Name.html>

You can see the examples of URLs that will point to your store categories and products below the settings. If the examples don't reflect changes in link IDs, press the **Update** button to apply the changes.

Notes:

- It's impossible to delete category and product numbers from URLs.
- Category and product link IDs cannot be the same.
- The strings "My-Category-Name" and "My-Product-Name" will be replaced with the text in **SEO URL prefix** attribute of categories and products in actual URLs.

Storefront

HTML URLs (mod_rewrite) status	Shows the current status of this feature. If the feature is enabled, the corresponding message is shown in green color, and your storefront pages look as static HTML.
Action	This is the main setting that defines whether the HTML URLs feature is enabled. Choose the option that you need and press the Update button to apply the changes.

A link to your storefront is provided next to the section name. Click it to see how your store URLs look after changing all the options (*it will open in a new window*).

Storefront: <http://my-first-shop.com/>

HTML URLs (mod_rewrite) status	Support for mod_rewrite disabled.
Action	<input checked="" type="radio"/> Enable support for HTML URLs (mod_rewrite). Verify integrity of configuration files and settings. <input type="radio"/> Disable support for HTML URLs (mod_rewrite).

Possible Problems

If you change the look of HTML URLs after they have been indexed by search engines and they will index your store again, they will have two URLs for the same page in their index. The pages may then be considered duplicates and this may affect their position in search results. You may also lose all your inbound links (pointing at the old URLs); this may affect your site ranking as well.

We recommend you to define the look of your URLs only once, before opening your storefront to visitors and search engine spiders.

5.7.10 Quickbooks

QuickBooks is a line of business accounting software designed to manage payroll, sales and other needs of a business.

- [Quickbooks configuration](#)
- [Export of orders to Quickbook](#)

Quickbooks configuration

The **Quickbooks settings** page lets you to configure the Quickbooks export settings:

Store Configuration

QuickBooks settings

Transactions class name	<input type="text"/>
Taxes account name ?	<input type="text"/>
Product account name ?	<input type="text"/>
Shipping account name ?	<input type="text"/>
Inventory account name ?	<input type="text"/>
COGS account name ?	<input type="text"/>
Global discount account name ?	<input type="text"/>
PromoCode discount account name ?	<input type="text"/>
Quantity Discount account name ?	<input type="text"/>
Declare order products as inventory items	Yes ▾
The minimum quantity of inventory items ?	<input type="text" value="0"/>
Order prefix ?	<input type="text"/>

Click **Update** after you are finished making changes. The new Quickbooks settings will be saved, and you will be able to export orders using the required Quickbooks settings.

Click **Close** to leave the Quickbooks page.

Here is a short description of Quickbooks options:

Taxes account name	The name of the income account you use to track taxes. The type of this account should be INC. *
Product account name	The name of the income account you use to track product sales. The type of this account should be INC. *
Shipping account name	The name of the income account you use to track shipping cost. The type of this account should be INC. *
Inventory account name	The name of the asset account for the inventory items. *

COGS account name	The name of the COGS account for the inventory items. *
Global discount account name	The name of the income account you use to track global discounts. *
PromoCode discount account name	The name of the income account you use to track promocode discounts. *
Quantity Discount account name	The name of the income account you use to track quantity (wholesale) discounts. *
The minimum quantity of inventory items	The minimum quantity of inventory items you want to keep in stock at any time.
Order prefix	Order number prefix for identifying transactions in Quickbooks.

* If the account is a subaccount, the account's name includes the names of the parent accounts, beginning with the highest level account. Use a colon (:) to separate subaccount names.

Exporting orders to Quickbook

You can export selected orders or all orders to the Quickbooks format (.IIF) by using the [Orders](#) tab in the Admin zone.

Quick Order Navigation Search Orders

New Orders: 1 Date range **Order statuses** **Payment statuses** Order ID:

In progress: 0 From: 1 January 2008 New Order In Progress Waiting

Ready to Ship: 0 To: 18 December 2009 Ready To Ship Shipped Fully Paid

All: 1 Affiliate ID: Cancelled Declined Declined

Completed Suspicious

New Orders: 1 order(s) found.
Date: 08-10-2009

Order ID	Login/E-mail	Customer Name	Order Date	Amount	Tax		Order Status	Payment Status
100012	m.watson@example.com	Mark Watson	08-10-2009	\$271.82	\$20.14	Packing Slip Invoice	New Order	Waiting

To export all orders, click the **Export All to Quickbooks** button.

If you want to export selected orders, select their corresponding checkboxes on the right-hand

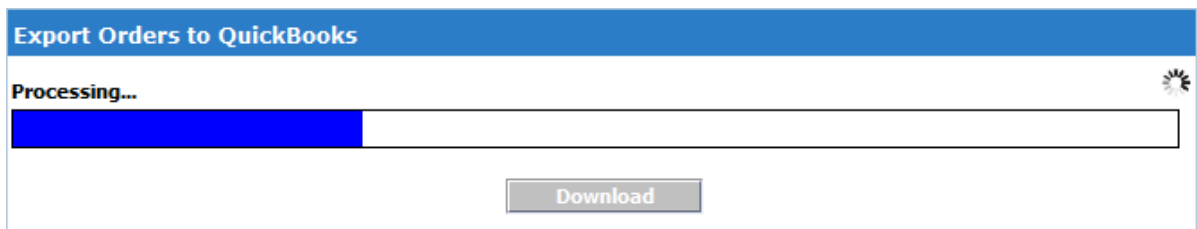
side and click the **Export to Quickbooks** button.

You will see the **Export Orders to Quickbooks** window.

Click the **Start** button to begin the orders export process (or click the **Settings** button if you need to change Quickbooks settings):



You will see the export progress bar and a disabled **Download** button:



The **Download** button will be enabled only after the Quickbooks export file generation is complete.

When the export process is finished, click the **Download** button and save the "orders.iif" file to any folder on your local computer.

5.7.11 Checkout Form Editor

The **Checkout Form Editor** lets you define the fields customers see in the checkout form and the fields they are required to select or complete. Besides you can add your own defined checkout fields using the Checkout Form Editor.

Overview

Fields into which customers can enter information are called **attributes**. Attributes are organized into **sections** based on their purposes. The last two sections - **Payment Method** and **Shipping Method** - contain no attributes; they only indicate the possibility for customers to select the methods.

Every attribute has the following properties:

Text Label	The text (label) that will be displayed in front of the corresponding checkout form field. This text label is what you your visitors see in the storefront during checkout process.
Description	A brief description of the attribute. This text is invisible to customers.
Visibility	<p>If set to YES, the corresponding field will be displayed in the checkout form, and customers will be able to select or complete it.</p> <p>If set to NO, customers will not see the corresponding form field.</p> <p>Note: The <i>State</i> and <i>Country</i> attributes are related. <i>State</i> can be visible only if <i>Country</i> is set to be visible. Therefore, if you make <i>Country</i> invisible, <i>State</i> is made invisible automatically.</p>
Required	<p>If set to YES, customers will not be able to proceed until they select or complete the corresponding checkout form field. Required form fields will be marked with a red asterisk (*).</p> <p>If set to NO, customers will be able to skip this field (leave it blank) when entering their information.</p> <p><i>Note:</i> If your online shipping costs calculation modules (UPS, USPS, FedEx, etc.) are activated, some shipping information attributes (<i>ZIP</i>, <i>City</i>, etc.) will always be Required, since they are used to calculate shipping costs based on the shipping address. The same is true for billing information: certain payment modules require an e-mail address and a physical address; therefore, these attributes in the <i>Billing Info</i> section will always be Required.</p> <p>.</p>

[Catalog](#)
[Customers](#)
[Reviews](#)
[Orders](#)
[Marketing](#)
[Reports](#)
[Sign Out](#)

[Store Settings](#) >> **Checkout Form Editor**
[Page Help](#)

Checkout Form Editor
[Settings](#)

You can see the current settings of checkout info fields below. The sequence of checkout info fields is identical to the one your customers will see when placing an order. To change the sequence, please go to Sort Checkout Info.

Billing Information		Custom Fields	Sort	Update	Turn Off
Text Label	Description	Visibility	Required		
<input type="text" value="First Name"/>	Billing First Name	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>		
<input type="text" value="Last Name"/>	Billing Last Name	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>		
<input type="text" value="E-mail"/>	Billing E-mail Address	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>		
<input type="text" value="Country"/>	Country	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>		
<input type="text" value="ZIP/Postal Code"/>	ZIP/Postal Code	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>		
<input type="text" value="State"/>	State	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>		
<input type="text" value="City"/>	City	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>		
<input type="text" value="Address Line 1"/>	Address Line 1	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>		
<input type="text" value="Address Line 2"/>	Address Line 2	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>		
<input type="text" value="Contact Phone"/>	Contact Phone	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>		
<input type="text" value="Comment"/>	Comment Text Line	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>		
<input type="text" value="Comment"/>	Comment Text Area	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>		

Shipping Information		Custom Fields	Sort	Update	Turn Off
Text Label	Description	Visibility	Required		
<input type="text" value="First Name"/>	Billing First Name	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>		
<input type="text" value="Last Name"/>	Billing Last Name	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>		
<input type="text" value="E-mail"/>	Billing E-mail Address	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>		
<input type="text" value="Country"/>	Country	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>		
<input type="text" value="ZIP/Postal Code"/>	ZIP/Postal Code	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>		
<input type="text" value="State"/>	State	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>		
<input type="text" value="City"/>	City	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>		
<input type="text" value="Address Line 1"/>	Address Line 1	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>		
<input type="text" value="Address Line 2"/>	Address Line 2	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>		
<input type="text" value="Contact Phone"/>	Contact Phone	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>		
<input type="text" value="Comment"/>	Comment Text Line	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>		
<input type="text" value="Comment"/>	Comment Text Area	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>		

You can change the properties of any attribute listed on the page. You can also change the order in which the fields are displayed in the checkout form and even hide whole sections of attributes. For instance, if you don't need your customers' telephone numbers, you can simply make the **Contact Phone** attribute invisible by setting its **Visibility** property to **NO**. To save changes click **Update**.

Custom fields management

To add a new custom field to a section, click the **Custom Fields** button in the section header. The **Checkout Custom Fields Management** window will open where you can create 3 types of custom fields: Text, Text Area and Single Choice List:

Checkout Custom Fields Management : Billing Information Add New

This section allows you to add new custom field

Visible Field Name

Field Description

Visible

Required

Field Type

Available Values
value A
value B
value C

You can edit or delete the custom fields using the same **Custom Fields** button in the section header.

You will be able to open the saved custom fields by using the drop-down list at the top of the **Checkout Custom Fields Management** window:

Checkout Custom Fields Management : Billing Information Add New

Example ▾

Visible Field Name

Field Description

Visible

Required

Field Type

Available Values

Sorting Attributes

To change the order of attributes in a section (and the order of the corresponding fields in the checkout form), click the **Sort** button in the section header. The **Sort Attributes** window will open where you can reorder the attributes using arrow buttons.

Disabling Whole Sections

To disable a whole section of attributes (that is, hide it from customers), click the **Turn Off** button in the section header. All section attributes will be grayed out. The button will now read **Turn On**. Customers will not see the disabled section in the checkout form.

To enable a previously disabled section, click the **Turn On** button.

5.7.12 Customer Account Settings

The **Customer Account Settings** page provides flexible customization options for customer account management. The various page sections are described below.

Catalog
Customers
Reviews
Orders
Marketing
Reports
Sign Out

Store Settings >> Customer Account Settings [Page Help](#)

Customer Account Settings
Save

Checkout process type

Only Quick Checkout. Customer Accounts disabled. Checkout is processed with no registration.

Both Quick Checkout and Customer Accounts enabled. Checkout can be processed with or without registration.

- Automatically create a Customer Account after an order is placed by Quick Checkout. The Billing E-Mail will be used as the login. If such a login already exists, an anonymous login will be created, which the customer can later change in their profile.
- Add orders created in the Quick Checkout mode to the corresponding account. An account search will be performed based on the Billing E-Mail entered. If the search is successful, the created order will be added to the found account without creating a new account.

Checkout with Customer Accounts only. Registration/Login required for checkout.

Customer Account Settings

Account activation scheme Activation not required ▼

Account activation is not required. After the customer registers, they can immediately start using their account for making purchases.

Registration information Sort

Field name	Field description	Visible	Required
E-mail	E-mail	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
Password	Password	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
Re-Type Password	Re-Type Password	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
First Name	First Name	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
Last Name	Last Name	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
Country	Country	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
State	State	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
ZIP/Postal Code	ZIP/Postal Code	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
City	City	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
Address Line 1	Address Line 1	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
Address Line 2	Address Line 2	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
Contact Phone	Contact Phone	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>

Save

Checkout Process Types

Only Quick Checkout. Customer Accounts disabled.	This checkout type should be selected only if you don't want your customers to open accounts with your store. The checkout process is very simple.
Both Quick Checkout and Customer Accounts enabled.	<p>This checkout type lets customers choose whether they want to open an account to make their purchase. They can either use Quick Checkout or open an account for making more purchases in the future.</p> <p>This checkout type has the following additional options:</p> <p>Automatically create a Customer Account after an order is placed by Quick Checkout. The Billing E-Mail will be used as the login. If such a login already exists, an anonymous login will be created, which the customer can later change in their profile.</p> <p>Add orders created in the Quick Checkout mode to the corresponding account. An account search will be performed based on the Billing E-Mail entered. If the search is successful, the created order will be added to the found account without creating a new account.</p>
Checkout with Customer Accounts only.	Registration/Login required for checkout. Quick Checkout disabled. With this checkout option, every customer will be required to open an account to place their order(s).

Account activation scheme

Account activation is not required.	After the customer registers, they can immediately start using their account for making purchases.
Administrator-activated.	After the customer registers, they cannot use their account until an administrator activates it. Users cannot activate accounts by themselves.
User-activated.	After the customer registers, they receive an e-mail message with the link for activating their account. Until they go to that activation link, the customer cannot use their account. This activation scheme allows you to avoid the creation of fake accounts.

Registration information

Use this section to define what information the customer will have to enter during account registration. For every field that is not required, clear the corresponding checkbox in the **Required** column. To hide an unneeded field, clear the corresponding checkbox in the **Visibility** column. Use the **Sort** button to sort the fields. After you are finished making changes, click the **Save** button.

5.7.13 Credit Card List Editor

The **Credit Card List Editor** lets you define the types of credit cards you accept for payments in your store. Only the types that you set to **Visible** will be available to customers during the checkout process. Payment processing modules also use this information.

You can also make changes in the displayed names of credit card types, if needed. After making changes in names or visibility settings, click the **Save** button for the changes to take effect.

	Credit Card Type	Credit Card Attributes	Sort	Save
<input type="text" value="Visa"/>	Visa	Attributes	Visible ▾	
<input type="text" value="MasterCard"/>	MasterCard	Attributes	Visible ▾	
<input type="text" value="Discover"/>	Discover	Attributes	Visible ▾	
<input type="text" value="American Express"/>	Amex	Attributes	Visible ▾	
<input type="text" value="Maestro"/>	Maestro	Attributes	Visible ▾	
<input type="text" value="Solo"/>	Solo	Attributes	Visible ▾	
<input type="text" value="Diners Club"/>	DC	Attributes	Invisible ▾	
<input type="text" value="FirePay"/>	FirePay	Attributes	Invisible ▾	
<input type="text" value="JCB"/>	JCB	Attributes	Invisible ▾	
<input type="text" value="Laser"/>	Laser	Attributes	Invisible ▾	
<input type="text" value="Switch"/>	Switch	Attributes	Invisible ▾	
<input type="text" value="Visa Delta"/>	VisaD	Attributes	Invisible ▾	
<input type="text" value="Visa Electron"/>	VisaE	Attributes	Invisible ▾	

You can change the order in which the credit card types are displayed to customers by clicking

the "Sort" button. The **Sorting credit card types** window will open where you can sort the types using arrow buttons.

You can add any other card type not listed on the page. To do so, enter its name (displayed to customers) and click the **Add** button. Customers will be able to select this type of card for payment as long as it is **Visible**.

You can modify the attribute of any credit card type by clicking the **Attributes** link, also it is possible to make any attribute required:

Credit Card Attributes - Visa		
Attribute Name	Visible	Required
Card Type	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
Card Number	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
Credit Card Verification Code	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
Expiration Month	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
Expiration Year	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
'valid from' Month	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
'valid from' Year	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
Issue Number	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>

IMPORTANT!

Payment modules can't process the new card type automatically because it is unknown to them. If this new card type is used, you will only be able to view its details in the customer order and process it manually.

5.7.14 Countries

On the **Countries** page you can manage the list of active countries. Only active countries are available to visitors during checkout when they are filling out forms such as **Billing Info**, **Customer Info** or **Shipping Info**.

Store Configuration					
Countries Management			Page Help	Update	Cancel
Code	Country	Active	Default		
AF	Afghanistan	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="radio"/>		
AU	<input type="text" value="Australia"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input type="radio"/>		
AT	<input type="text" value="Austria"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input type="radio"/>		
AS	American Samoa	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="radio"/>		
AE	United Arab Emirates	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="radio"/>		
GB	<input type="text" value="United Kingdom (Great Britain)"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input type="radio"/>		
US	<input type="text" value="United States"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="radio"/>		
VI	United States Virgin Islands	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="radio"/>		
UY	Uruguay	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="radio"/>		
ZW	Zimbabwe	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="radio"/>		

To activate a country, select the corresponding checkbox in the **Active** column.

For example, if the checkbox for the United States (Canada, UK, etc) is selected, then the U.S. is active. All customers shopping from the U.S. will be able to order from your store since the U.S. will be included in the list of countries available during checkout.

If a country is inactive, then that country's residents will be able to browse through your store and add products to shopping cart. However, during checkout they will not be able to finish placing the order because their country will be missing from the list of accepted countries.

The Default column lets you select the default country used during checkout. If no default country is set, the first active county in the list is treated as the default country.

After you are finished making changes, click Update. All changes will be saved to the database.

To leave the page, click **Cancel**.

5.7.15 Languages

This page lets you edit the list of available languages:

Store Configuration

Language Management Page Help

i New language has been added

Code	Language	Active	Default	
ES	<input type="text" value="Spanish/Castilian"/>	<input type="button" value="Yes"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>

Add new language

FR	<input type="text" value="French"/>	<input type="button" value="Yes"/>	<input type="button" value="No"/>	<input type="button" value="Add"/>
----	-------------------------------------	------------------------------------	-----------------------------------	------------------------------------

After choosing your language or languages, you can import a language or modify the language labels using the [Label Editor](#) page.

5.7.16 Label Editor

This page lets you edit, translate, export or import language text labels.

To translate any language label in the storefront, you need to:

- 1 - Select a language from the **Language** drop down.

Note:

You can add a new language using the [Languages](#) page in the **Store Settings**.

- 2 - Select the label type, name, or label pattern (part of the label text for search).

- 3 - Modify the **Original value** in the Search results section:

Home Catalog Customers Reviews Orders Marketing Reports Look & Feel Layout CMS

Label Editor

Quick Navigation Filter

All labels: 13447
Storefront labels: 514
Custom labels: 0

Language: Spanish/Castilian (default language) exactly
Label name: exactly
Label pattern: exactly
Label type: All labels
Translation status: All labels

Filter

Filter Results: 13447 labels found. Showing: 1 - 10 Add custom label Update Labels Remove Translation

Label Info

Original Value (in Spanish/Castilian)

Label name: 19ABF046-472E-42D3-BBF9-E997F2A377F4_name Edit in WYSIWYG
Zone: Admin zone
Label type: TransactionTracking
Usage: <?php xMsg('TT', '19ABF046-472E-42D3-BBF9-E997F2A377F4_name'); ?>
Original Value (in Spanish/Castilian): Clixgalore

Label name: ABANDONMENT_RATE Edit in WYSIWYG
Zone: Admin zone
Label type: Reports
Usage: <?php xMsg('RPTS', 'ABANDONMENT_RATE'); ?>
Original Value (in Spanish/Castilian): Abandonment Rate:

Label Info

Original Value (in Spanish/Castilian)

Export Labels Import Labels Add custom label Update Labels Remove Translation

You can export and import language variables.

Avactis supports CSV (Comma Separated Value) file format, which is compatible with MS Excel:

Label Import

Step 1 of 3: Choose a file to import [Page Help](#)

Source file

Important! The importing process replaces a large number of labels. If a wrong source file is specified, you may lose the correct labels. We recommend exporting the existing labels or performing a full system backup before any importing. This will let you restore your labels if any errors occur during import.

5.7.17 States

The **States** page lets you manage the list of active states (provinces, regions, counties, etc). If a state is active, residents of that state are allowed to place orders at your store.

Store Configuration

States Management Page Help

Country:

Code	State	Active	Default
AL	<input type="text" value="Alabama"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input type="radio"/>
AK	<input type="text" value="Alaska"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input type="radio"/>
AZ	<input type="text" value="Arizona"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="radio"/>
AR	<input type="text" value="Arkansas"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input type="radio"/>
CA	<input type="text" value="California"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input type="radio"/>
WV	<input type="text" value="West Virginia"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input type="radio"/>
WI	<input type="text" value="Wisconsin"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input type="radio"/>
WY	<input type="text" value="Wyoming"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input type="radio"/>

To activate a state, select the corresponding checkbox in the **Active** column.

For example, if the checkbox for California is selected, then residents of California are able to order from your store, since Canada will be included in the list of countries during checkout.

If a state is inactive, then that state's residents will be able to browse through your store and add products to shopping cart. However, during checkout they will not be able to finish placing the order because their state will be missing from the list of accepted states.

By default, all states of all countries are active. Customers from any state of any country are allowed to place orders at your store.

The **Default** column lets you select the default state used for its country during checkout. If no default state is set, the first active state in the list is treated as the default state.

After you are finished making changes, click **Update**. All changes will be saved to the database.

To leave the page, click **Cancel**.

5.7.18 Date and Time Format

The **Date/Time Format** page lets you customize the format used for displaying dates and times. Use the drop-down menus to change the format settings.

Store Configuration	
Date/Time Format Page Help <input type="button" value="Update"/> <input type="button" value="Close"/>	
Date format	<input type="text" value="24-11-2005"/>
Time format	<input type="text" value="19:08:29"/>
<input type="button" value="Update"/> <input type="button" value="Close"/>	

Click **Update** after you are finished with making changes. The new date and time format settings will be saved to the database. Both in Admin Area and on the storefront, dates and times will be displayed according to the new format.

To leave this page click **Close**.

5.7.19 Number Format

The **Number Format** page lets you customize the format used to display positive and negative numbers.

Store Configuration	
Number Format Page Help <input type="button" value="Update"/> <input type="button" value="Close"/>	
Decimal separator	<input type="text" value="."/>
Thousands separator	<input type="text" value=","/>
Number of figures after the decimal sign	<input type="text" value="2"/>
Format for negative numbers	<input type="text" value="- 23.95"/>
Examples	5.00 23,456.55 34,543,234.95 - 15.75 - 238.00
<input type="button" value="Update"/> <input type="button" value="Close"/>	

Use the drop-down menus to choose new number format settings.

After you are finished with making changes, click **Update**. Both in **Admin Area** and on the storefront, numbers will be displayed according to the new format.

To leave the page click **Close**.

5.7.20 Weight Unit

The Localization - **Weight Unit** page you can specify the name of the weight unit used throughout the online store. A conversion ratio to kilograms (kg) can also be specified.

Store Configuration	
Weight Unit	
Weight unit notation	<input type="text" value="lb"/>
Ratio for converting to kilograms	1 lb = <input type="text" value="0.453590"/> kg
<input type="button" value="Update"/> <input type="button" value="Close"/>	

The cost of shipping is calculated based on the weight of the product given in kilograms.

Only one weight unit can be used at a time.

Click **Update** after you are finished with making changes. All new weight unit settings will be saved to the database.

To leave the page click **Close**.

5.7.21 Store Currencies and Exchange Rates

On this page, you can select your main store currency as well as additional currencies.

The **main currency** of your store is used in all store prices and amounts: all product prices, all discounts, shipping charges, and so on.

Additional currencies are currencies which can be selected by customers in the storefront. All product prices are then converted to the selected currency based on the store-defined exchange rates.

If needed you can hide any additional currency from your customers using the **Visible for customers** checkbox.

Store Currencies

Main Store Currency [Page Help](#) [Close](#)

United States Dollar (USD) [Change](#)

Add Additional Currency

Manual rate
1 USD = **Canadian Dollar (CAD)**

Visible for customers **Try to get rate from Internet services**
www.google.com or www.webservicex.net.

[Add](#) [Close](#)

Changing your store's main currency

When a store only has a main currency and no additional ones, the page **Store Settings >> Store Currencies** looks as follows.

To change your main store currency, click the **Change** link. A currency selection form will display:

Store Currencies

Main Store Currency [Page Help](#) [Close](#)

[Save](#) [Cancel](#)

Add Additional Currency

Manual rate
1 USD = **Canadian Dollar (CAD)**

Visible for customers **Try to get rate from Internet services**
www.google.com or www.webservicex.net.

[Add](#) [Close](#)

Select the currency you want from the **Main Store Currency** list. In the top textbox, enter some name for the currency, which will be displayed in the storefront.

After selecting a currency, click the **Save** link to save your changes.

IMPORTANT!

When the main store currency is changed, all existing additional currencies are

deleted!

Working with additional store currencies

Select a currency using the **Add Additional Currency** form. You can set the currency exchange rate (relative to the main store currency) manually, or have the application obtain the current exchange rates from <http://www.google.com> or www.webservice.com.

Click the **Add** button to add the new currency.

A message will appear to confirm that the new currency has been successfully added to the list of additional store currencies.

Store Currencies			
Main Store Currency		Page Help <input type="button" value="Close"/>	
United States Dollar (USD)		Change	
Additional Currencies			<input type="button" value="Update"/>
European Euro (EUR)	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Visible for customers	1 EUR = 1.4932 USD 100 EUR = 149.32 USD 100 USD = 66.97 EUR	Get rate from web
Delete			
British Pound (GBP)	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Visible for customers	1 GBP = 1.6549 USD 100 GBP = 165.49 USD 100 USD = 60.43 GBP	Get rate from web
Delete			
Canadian Dollar (CAD)	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Visible for customers	1 CAD = 0.9469 USD 100 CAD = 94.69 USD 100 USD = 105.61 CAD	Get rate from web
Delete			
Add Additional Currency			
i CAD: New additional currency has been added.			
Australian Dollar (AUD)	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Visible for customers	<input checked="" type="radio"/> Manual rate 1 USD = 1 Australian Dollar (AUD)	
		<input type="radio"/> Try to get rate from Internet services www.google.com or www.webservice.net	
<input type="button" value="Add"/>		<input type="button" value="Close"/>	

You can customize the names of any additional store currencies. This name will be shown to customers in the storefront in the "**change currency**" block. You can also change the exchange

rate for a currency. To save your changes, click the **Update** button.

5.7.22 Currency format

On the **Currency Format** page you can choose the currency used throughout the store, change its denotation, and customize the format used to display positive and negative currency amounts.

Store Configuration	
Currency Format	
Type of Currency	United States Dollar (USD) ▾
Currency denotation	\$
Decimal separator	. ▾
Thousands separator	, ▾
Number of figures after the decimal sign	2 ▾
Format for positive amounts	\$23.95 ▾
Format for negative amounts	-\$23.95 ▾
Examples	\$5.00 \$23,456.55 \$34,543,234.95 -\$15.75 -\$238.00

Both in **Admin Area** and on the storefront, currency is displayed according to the format specified on this page.

Click **Save** to save all changes made. To leave the page click **Close**.

5.8 Customers

This page allows you to manage your customers. You can browse the customer list or search for a specific person, view the total number and amount of all orders placed by a customer, change customer membership as well as activate, delete, or reset passwords for accounts.

Customers [Page Help](#)

Customers

Quick Customer Navigation **Search Customers**

Filter by: Search:

All [A](#) [B](#) [C](#) [D](#) [E](#) [F](#) [G](#) [H](#) [I](#) [J](#) [K](#) [L](#) [M](#) [N](#) [O](#) [P](#) [Q](#) [R](#) [S](#) [T](#) [U](#) [V](#) [W](#) [X](#) [Y](#) [Z](#)

Registered Not Activated Password reset Quick Checkout

Login/E-mail	Name	Orders	Total Amount Paid	Total Amount	Membership
AlexS@my-first-shop.com	Alex Smith	3	\$649.09	\$762.86	Default <input type="checkbox"/>
Lewis@my-first-shop.com	John Lewis	3	\$0.00	\$378.76	Default <input type="checkbox"/>
m.watson@my-first-shop.com	Mark Watson	1	\$0.00	\$271.82	Default <input type="checkbox"/>
steve@my-first-shop.com	Steve Irwin	4	\$102.51	\$443.47	Default <input type="checkbox"/>

Overview

The page has the following sections:

- **Quick Customer Navigation**
- **Search Customers**
- **Customer list**

The **Quick Customer Navigation** section lets you quickly find a customer by the first letter of either their last name or their e-mail. Select the type of search from the '**Filter by**' drop-down list and then click a letter. All customers whose last name/e-mail starts with the selected letter will display in the **Customer list**.

Using the **Search Customers** section, you can find a customer based on just a few letters of their name, email, or login. Type the characters in the search field and click the **Search** button. All customers whose name, e-mail or login matches these characters will display in the **Customer list**.

Customer List

The **Customer list** shows the following information about every customer:

Status	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Registered - The customer has successfully registered with your store and activated their account. • Not Activated - The customer has registered with your store and has been sent a confirmation message or is awaiting manual activation (depending on the Store Settings / Customer Account Settings / Account activation scheme setting). The customer must activate their account by following the instructions in the message, or you need to activate the corresponding account manually. • Password reset - The customer forgot their password and requested a password reset, or the password was reset by you (using the Reset passwords button). The customer cannot sign in to your store until they set a new password by clicking the link they were sent. • Quick Checkout - The customer hasn't created an account and instead used the Quick Checkout procedure to buy your products.
Login/E-mail	The identifier (username) that the customer uses to sign in to your store. In most cases this is the customer's e-mail address. If you enabled the ' Automatically create a Customer Account after an order is placed by Quick Checkout ' setting in Store Settings / Customer Account Settings , the login string can be automatically generated by shopping cart as a sequence of digits.
Name	The customer's first and last name entered during registration.
Orders	The total number of orders that the customer has placed at your store, regardless of their status (paid, declined, etc).
Total Amount Paid	The total amount of money that you have received from the customer since they registered with your store. Sorting the list by this column can help you identify your most valuable customers.
Total Amount	The total cost of all orders placed by the customer. The amount in this column can be higher than Total Amount Paid .

Membership	<p>Customer membership level. You can manage all existing membership levels by using the Customer Groups button.</p> <p>It is possible to manually assign products to a certain membership level, so that these products will be available only to a specific membership group.</p>
-------------------	--

You can sort the list according to any of these columns by clicking the column title.

To view complete information about a customer in the list, click their **Login/E-mail**. A new window will open where you can view the customer's address, billing and shipping information, and the complete list of their orders and current order statuses.

Resetting customer passwords

Select the necessary customers in the list and click the **Reset passwords** button. The customer status will be changed to **Password reset**.

The customer will be emailed a link which they can click to set a new password (the e-mail message can be customized on the **Store Settings / E-mail Notifications** page). Until the new password is set, the customer will not be able to sign in to your store.

Note: The old password cannot be restored.

Activating customers

You can activate any non-activated customers manually by selecting them in the list and clicking the **Activate** button. The corresponding accounts will be assigned the **Registered** status.

Deleting customers

To delete one or more customers, select them in the list and click the **Delete** button.

Customer groups

You can manage customer groups (customer memberships) by using the **Customer groups** button.

Export Customer List

You can export all customer information to a CSV file and download it to your local computer. CSV is a convenient format for storing spreadsheet data in a simple text file. This format is widely supported by different spreadsheet editors, including Microsoft Excel, OpenOffice Calc and [Google Docs & Spreadsheets](#). See the Wikipedia article [Comma-Separated Values](#) for a

detailed description.

To export customer data, click the **Export** button. A new window will open to help you in the process.

Step 1 of 2. Choosing attributes

On the first page you will be able to see the total number of customers that will be exported and choose what data will be included in the resulting CSV file. Check the necessary attributes and then click the **Start** button to create the CSV file.

Step 2 of 2. Exporting

On the next page, it will show you the details of the exporting process. The information will display in the **Export log**.

When the process completes, the **Download CSV** button will be activated. Click the button to download the resulting CSV file to your computer.

To cancel exporting and close the window at any time, click the **Cancel** button.

5.9 Reports

Starting from version 1.8.2, the shopping cart system collects various statistical data and can present them in convenient and clear charts and numbers.

All reports are available on the **Reports** tab in the Admin Area.

They are broken down in two columns: **Sales Reports** and **Visitor Reports**, representing the two main types of collected data.

The screenshot shows the 'Reports' section of the Avactis Shopping Cart Admin Area. The navigation bar at the top includes links for Home, Catalog, Customers, Reviews, Orders, Marketing, and Reports. The Reports section is divided into two columns: Sales Reports and Visitor Reports. The Sales Reports column lists: Sales Totals (Shows sales totals by day/month/year for a given date range), Tax Total (Displays tax total due for a given date range), Sales Conversion Rates (Shows different sales conversion rates for a given date range), Abandonment Rates (Shows abandonment rates based on shopping carts or items abandoned for a given date range), Top 10 Products (Displays top 10 product lists according to various criteria), Items Sold (Shows product sales statistics (using the number of items sold) for a given date range), and Items Viewed (Shows total number of products viewed by day/month/year for a given date range). The Visitor Reports column lists: Recent 100 Visitors (Shows recent 100 visitors statistics), Top Referrers (Displays the hottest referrers to your online store), Top Viewed Pages (Displays the most popular pages statistics), Visitor statistics (Overall statistics for your online store visitors), Browsers and OS (Shows your visitors' browser and operating system statistics), and Recent 100 Web Crawlers Visits (Shows recent 100 web crawlers statistics).

General report information

You can export the data of any chart to a file. Click the **Export to Excel** link and then choose the file processing options using your browser's dialog box. The exported file will not be a copy

of the chart, but will only contain its source data. You can also choose the file format.

The set of data used to generate charts, as well as some other settings, are based on the options selected in **Admin / Advanced Settings & Configuration**.

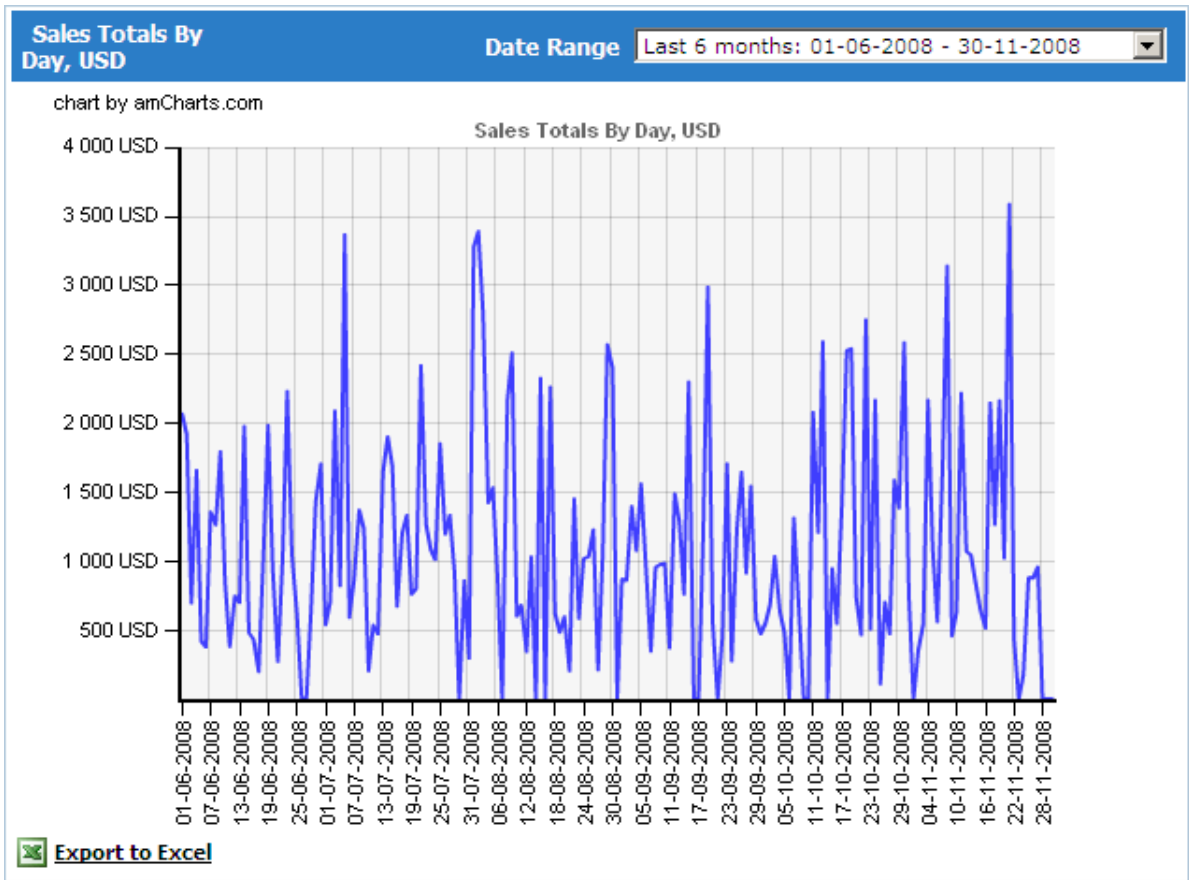
The **Order Statuses for Reports** section allows you to specify which orders are taken into account when generating specific charts.

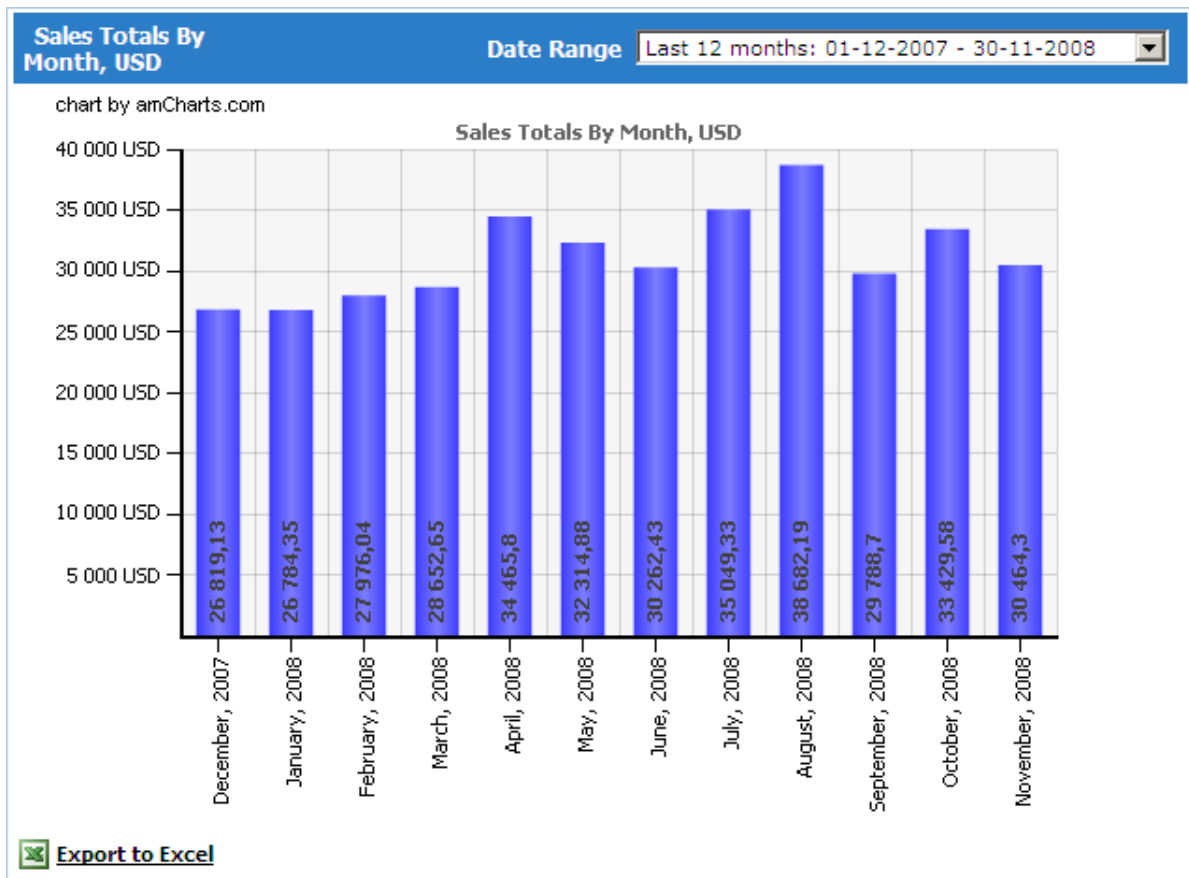
The **Reports and Statistics** section lets you define additional settings.

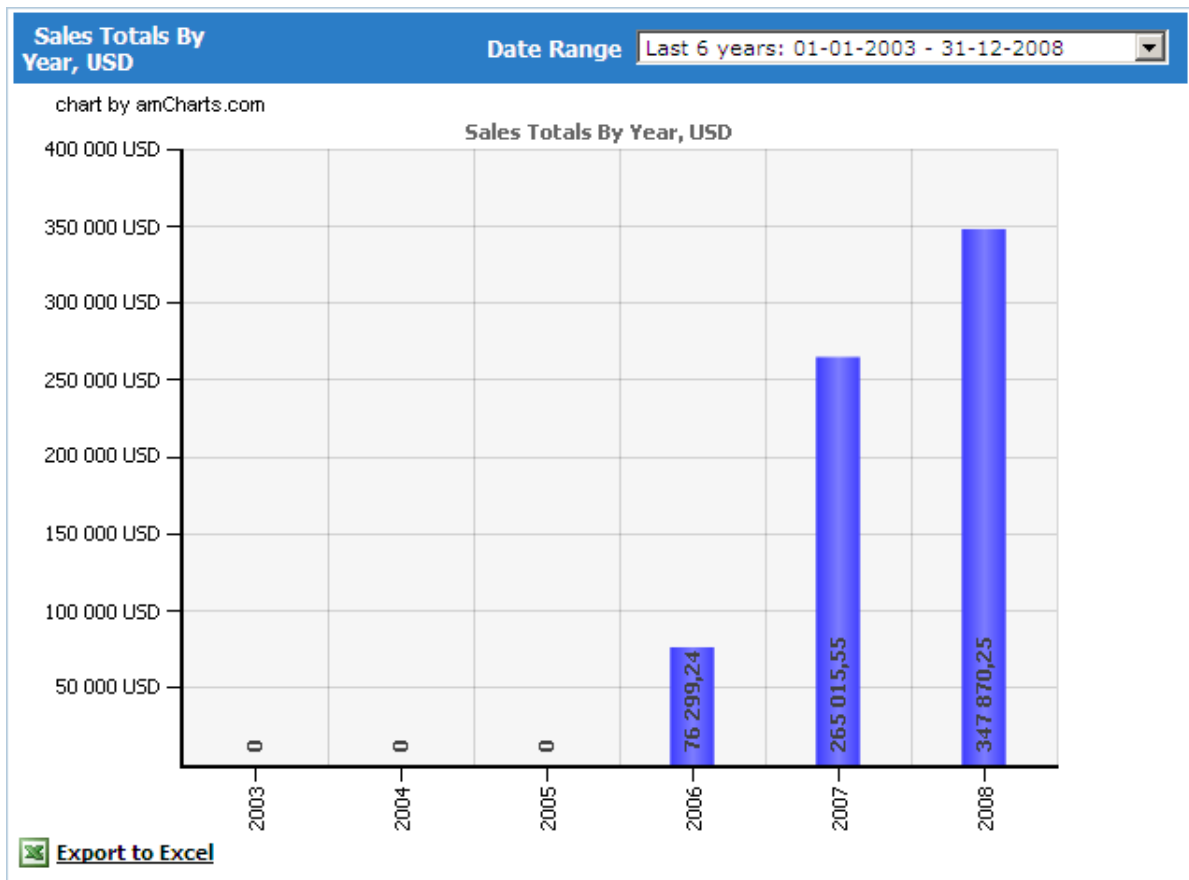
Sales Reports

This report shows three charts with vertical bars representing your store's order amounts, grouped by days, months and years, respectively.

A chart's appearance depends on the period selected. If the period is short, order amounts are shown as vertical bars – one bar for every day/month/year. If the period you selected is too broad to allow an individual bar for every day/month/year, then the chart will look like a graph – a continuous line.

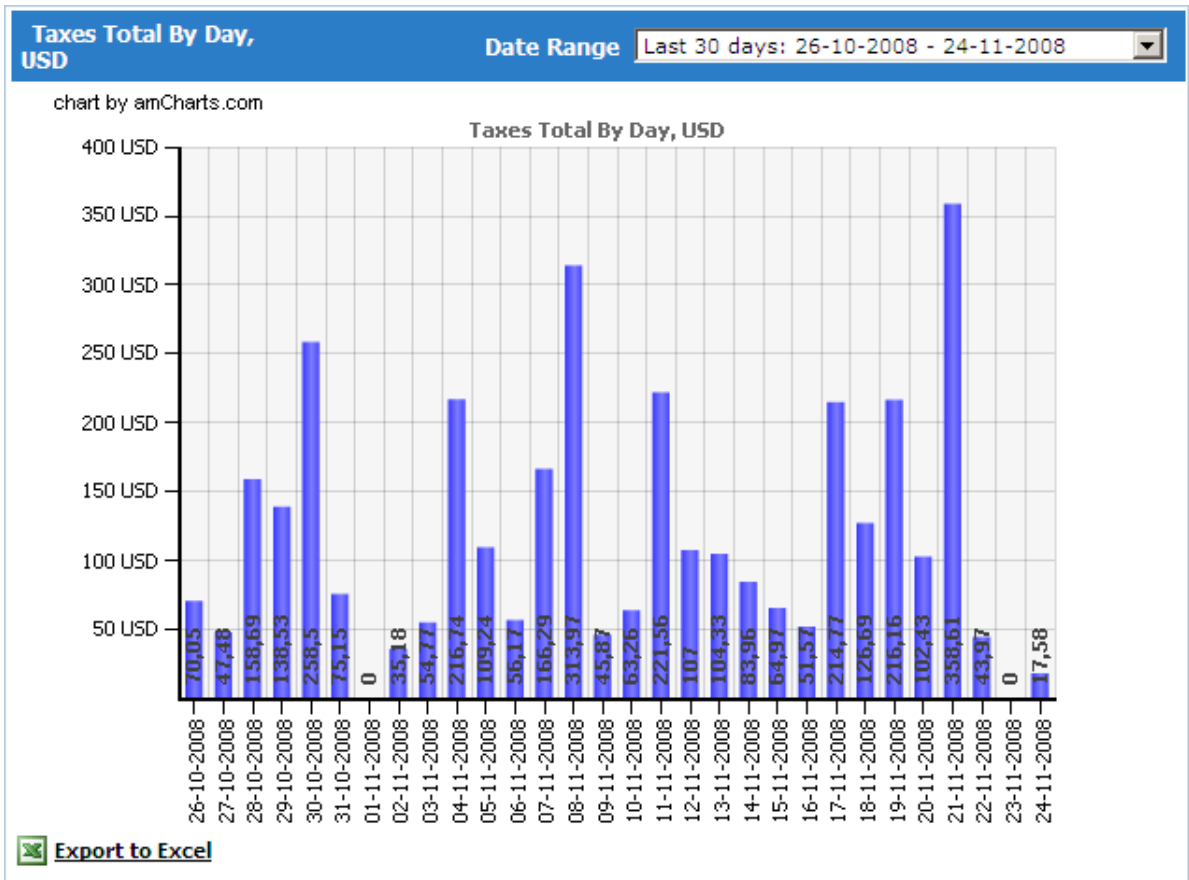


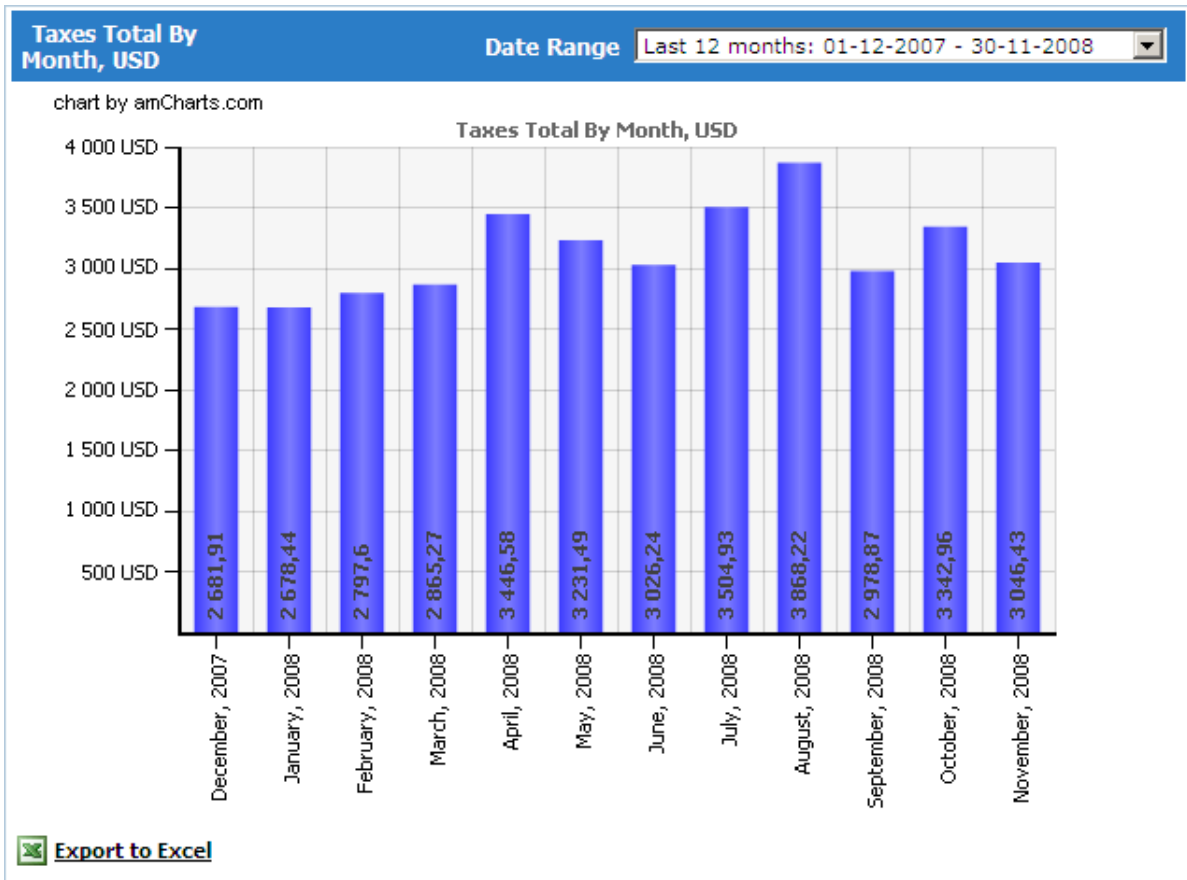


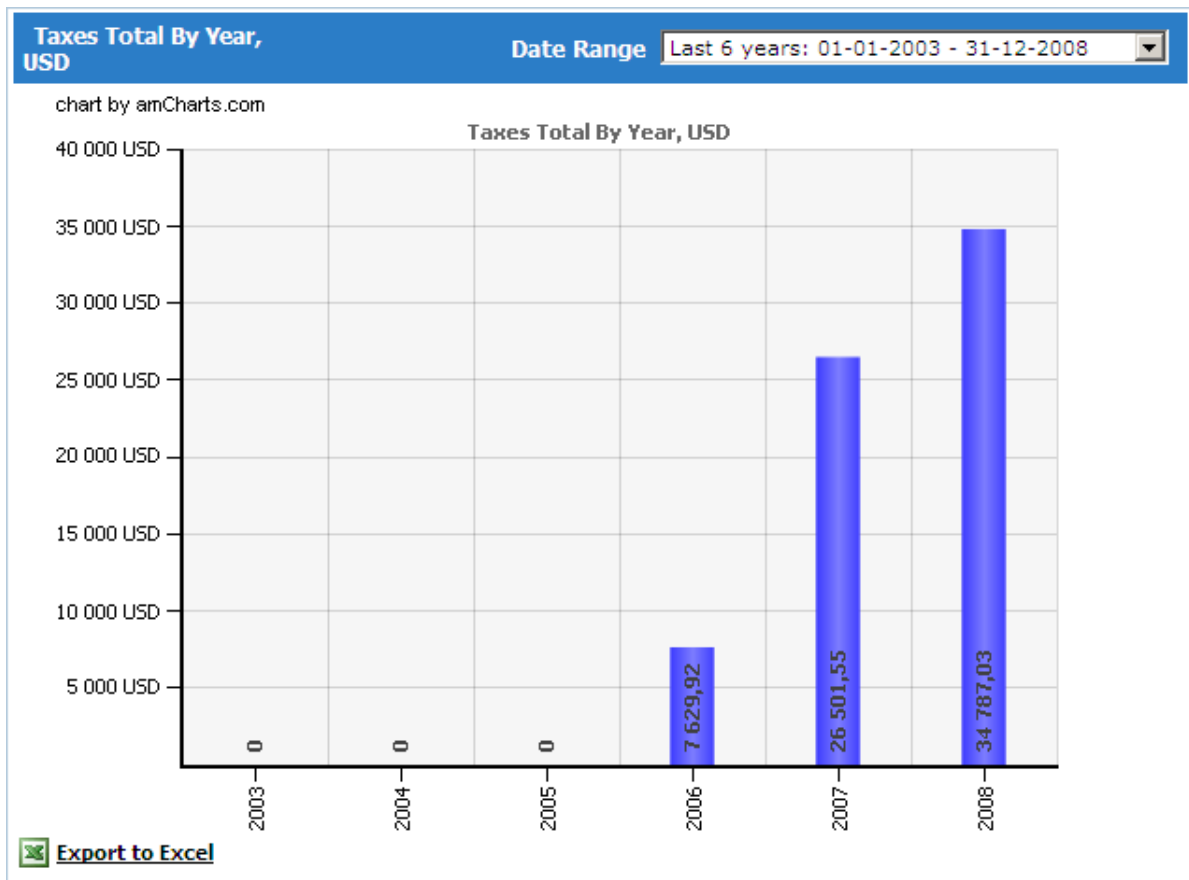


Taxes Total

This report shows all tax amounts calculated by the system for orders placed in your store within the specified period. The report generates three charts, where the first chart sums the tax totals by day, the second one – by month, and the third one – by year.







Sales Conversion Rates

This report shows several different charts. All of them use the same time unit, days.

All charts on this page are interactive. When you hover the mouse cursor over a chart, the corresponding point (day) is highlighted, and the top part of the chart shows its values.

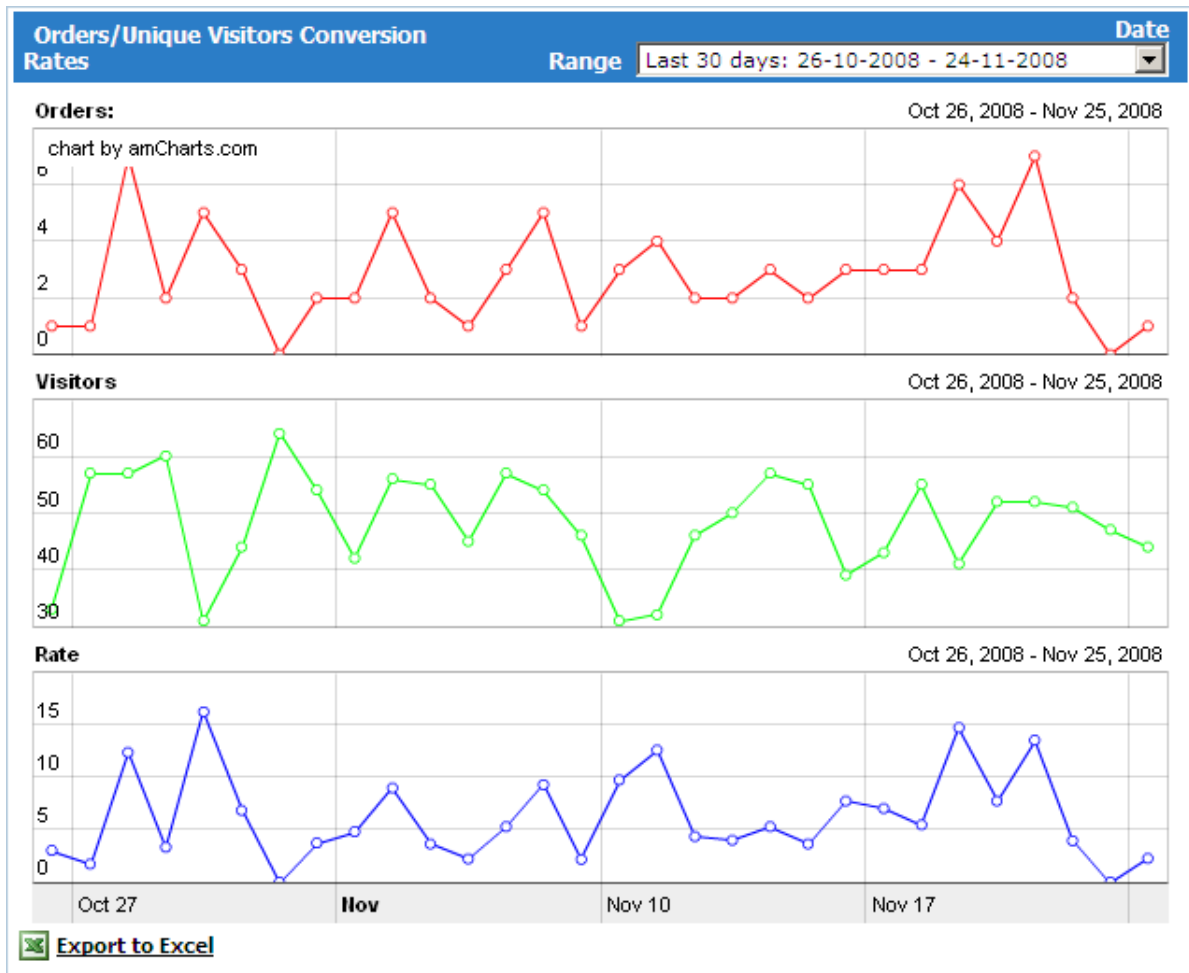
Orders/Unique Visitors Conversion Rates

The **Orders** chart shows the number of orders placed in your store.

The **Visitors** chart shows the total number of unique visitors to your store. If a user visited your store 5 times in the course of one day, this will be counted as 1 unique visitor for that day.

The **Rate** chart shows the average percentage of your store's unique visitors who placed an

order.



Orders/Visits Conversion Rates

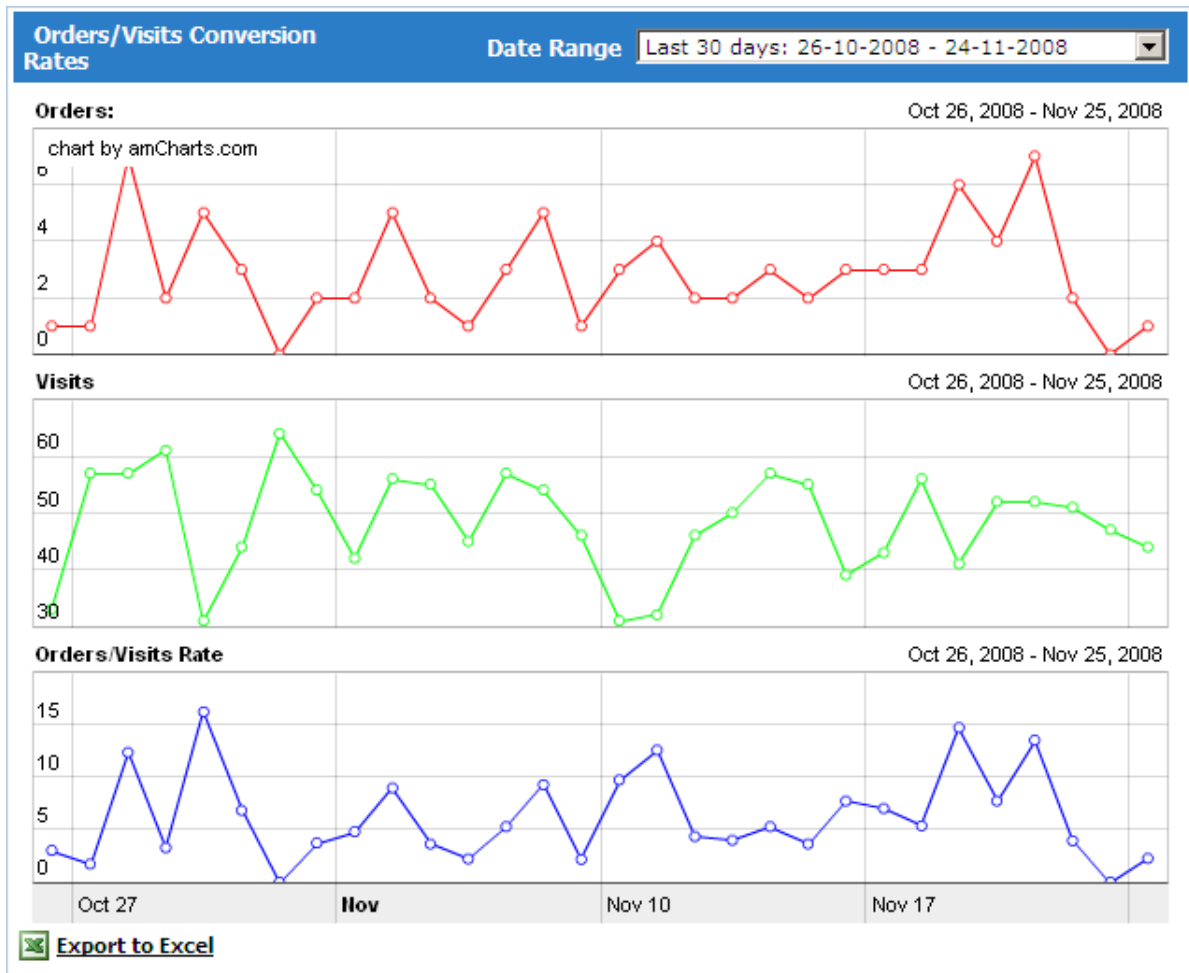
The **Orders** chart shows the number of orders placed in your store.

The **Visits** chart shows the total number of visits to your store, including repeat visits. If a user visited your store 5 times in the course of one day, this will count as 5 visits for that day.

To configure Visits, use the 'Session duration (Visits)' setting in **Admin >> Advanced Settings & Configuration >> Reports and Statistics**.

Suppose that Session duration equals 1 hour. Then, if a visitor leaves your online store and comes back within 50 minutes, this will be considered as 1 visit. If the visitor comes back in 1 hour and 2 minutes, that will count as a second visit.

The **Rate** chart shows the average percentage of your store visits that led to an order placement.

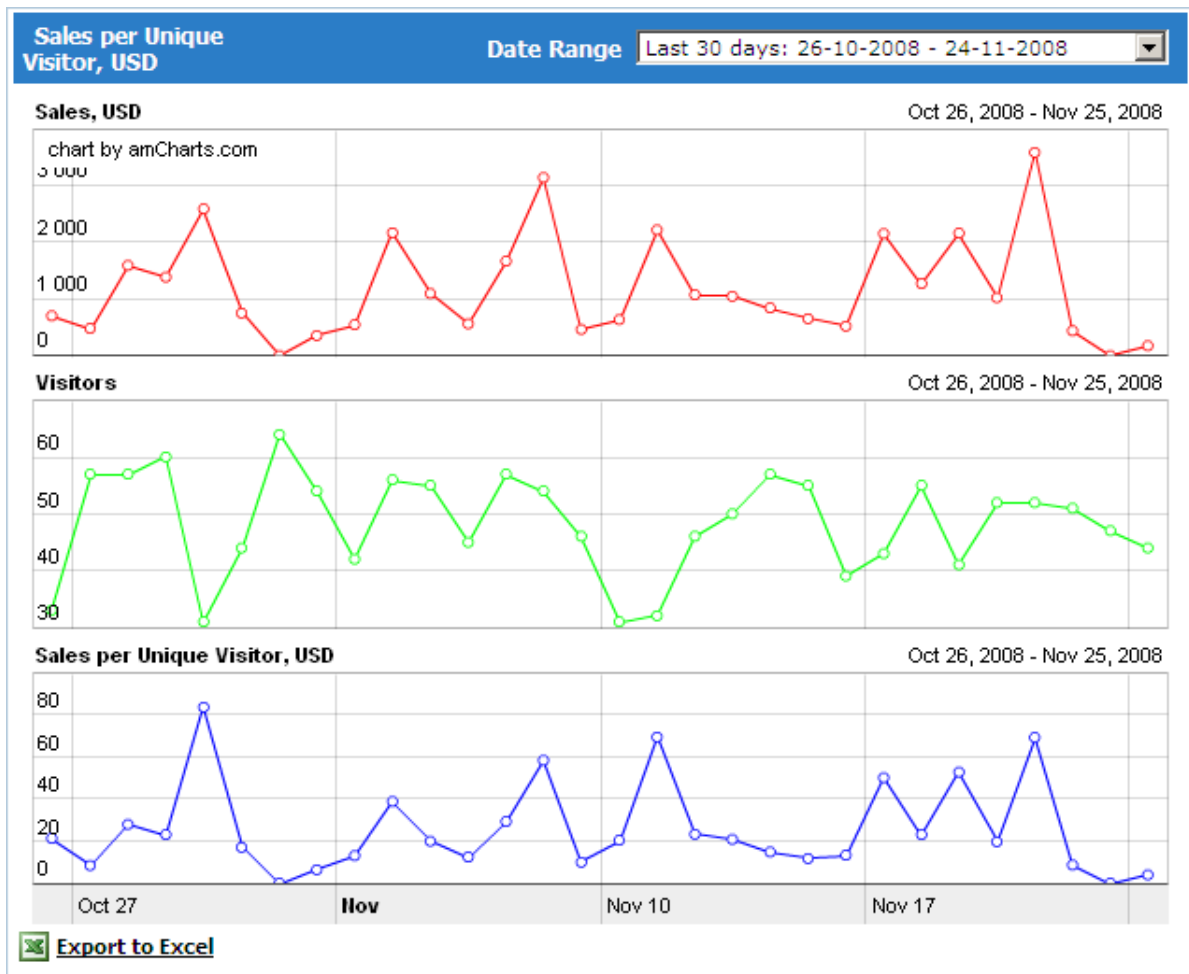


Sales per Unique Visitor

The **Sales** chart shows the total amount of orders placed in your store.

The **Visitors** chart shows the total number of unique visitors to your store. If a user visited your store 5 times in the course of one day, this will be counted as 1 unique visitor for that day.

The **Sales per Unique Visitor** chart shows the average order amount per unique store visitor.



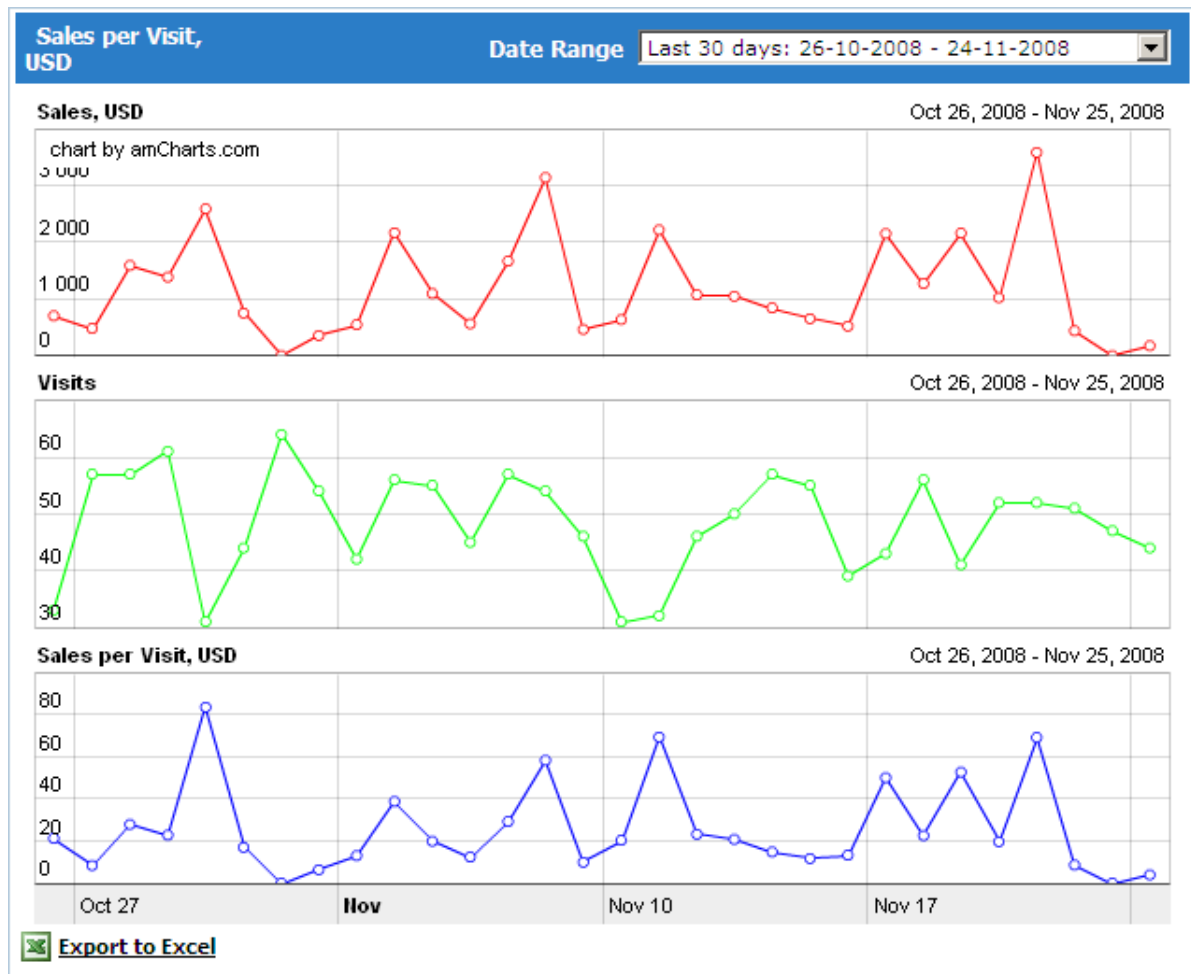
Sales per Visit

The **Sales** chart shows the total amount of orders placed in your store.

The Visits chart shows the total number of visits your store, including repeat visits. If a user visited your store 5 times in the course of one day, this will count as 5 visits for that day.

To configure **Visits**, use the 'Session duration (Visits)' setting in **Admin >> Advanced Settings & Configuration >> Reports and Statistics**. Suppose Session duration equals 1 hour. Then, if a visitor leaves your online store and comes back within 50 minutes, this will be considered as 1 visit. If the visitor comes back in 1 hour and 2 minutes, that will count as a second visit.

The **Sales per Visit** chart shows the average order amount per store visit.

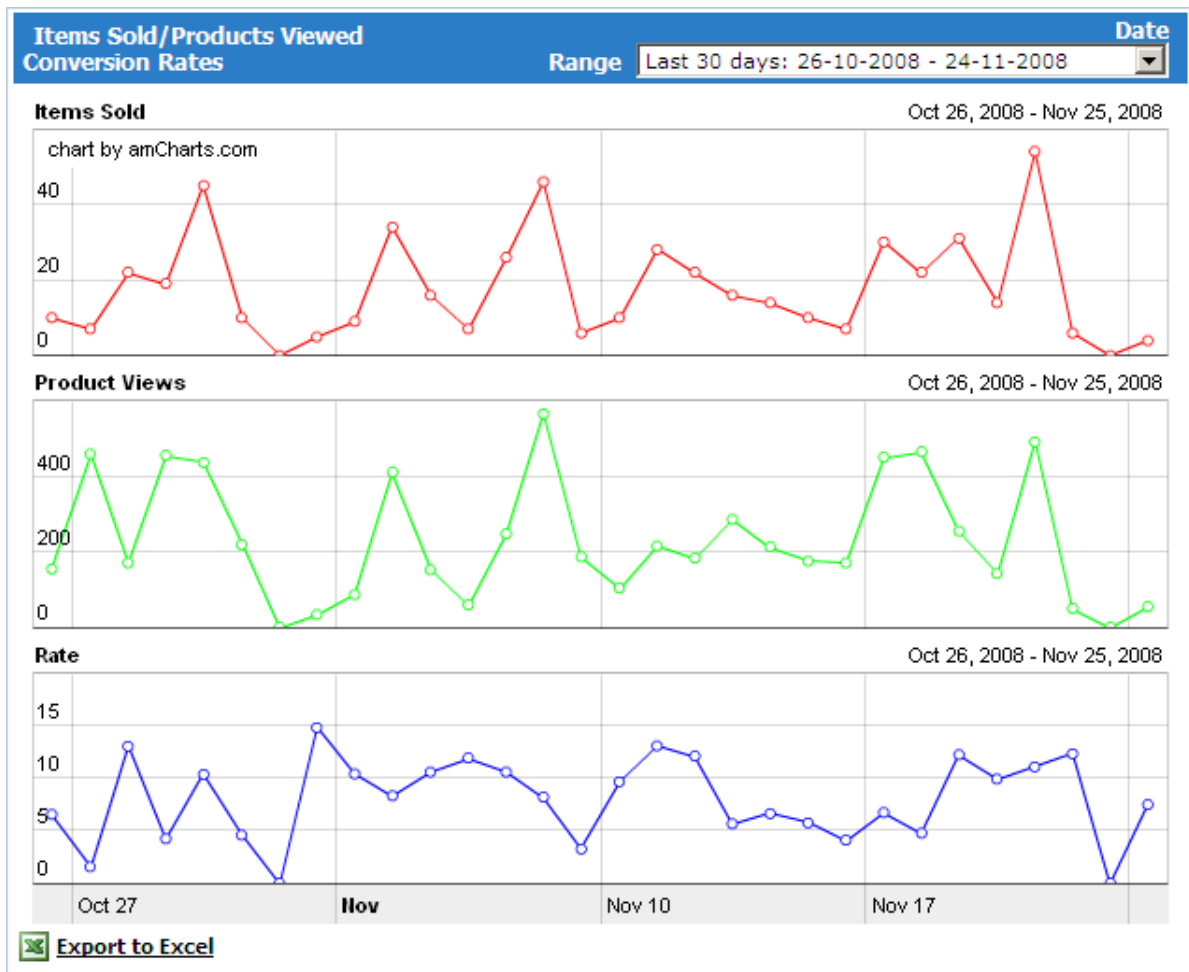


Items Sold/Products Viewed Conversion Rates

The **Items Sold** chart shows the total number of products within the orders placed in your store.

The **Product Views** chart shows the total number of product views in your store. To define the pages used to collect views statistics, use the settings on the page **Admin >> Advanced Settings & Configuration >> Reports and Statistics**.

The **Rate** chart shows the average percentage of product views that led to a sale.



Abandonment Rates

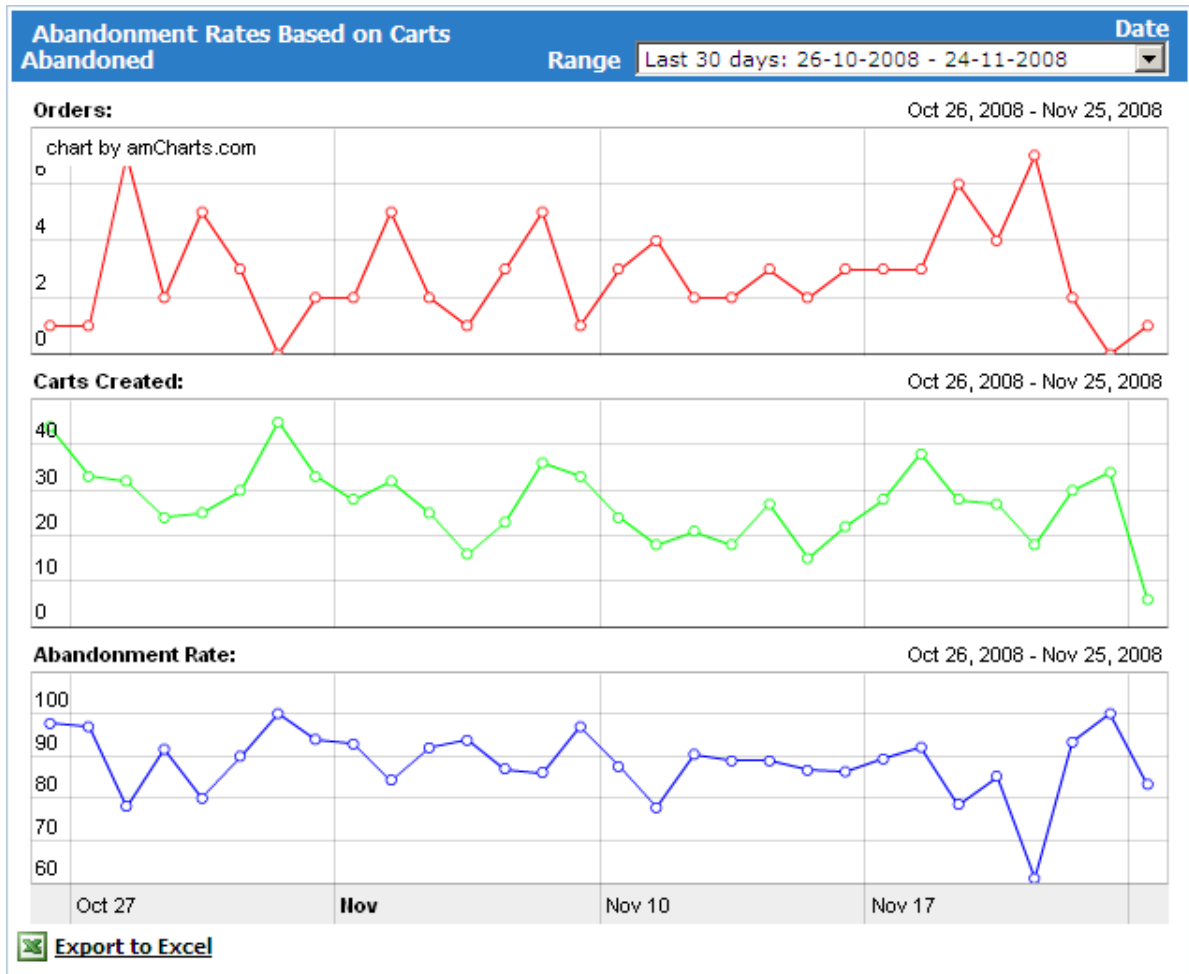
This page contains two charts, which show information about abandoned shopping carts and abandoned products.

1. Abandonment Rates Based on Carts Abandoned

The **Orders** chart shows the total number of order placed in your store.

The **Carts Created** chart shows the total number of created carts. A cart is created when a customer adds at least one product to it. If a customer adds a product to cart, clears it, and then adds a product again, then this counts as two carts created.

The **Abandonment Rate** chart shows the average percentage of carts created but did not lead to an order.

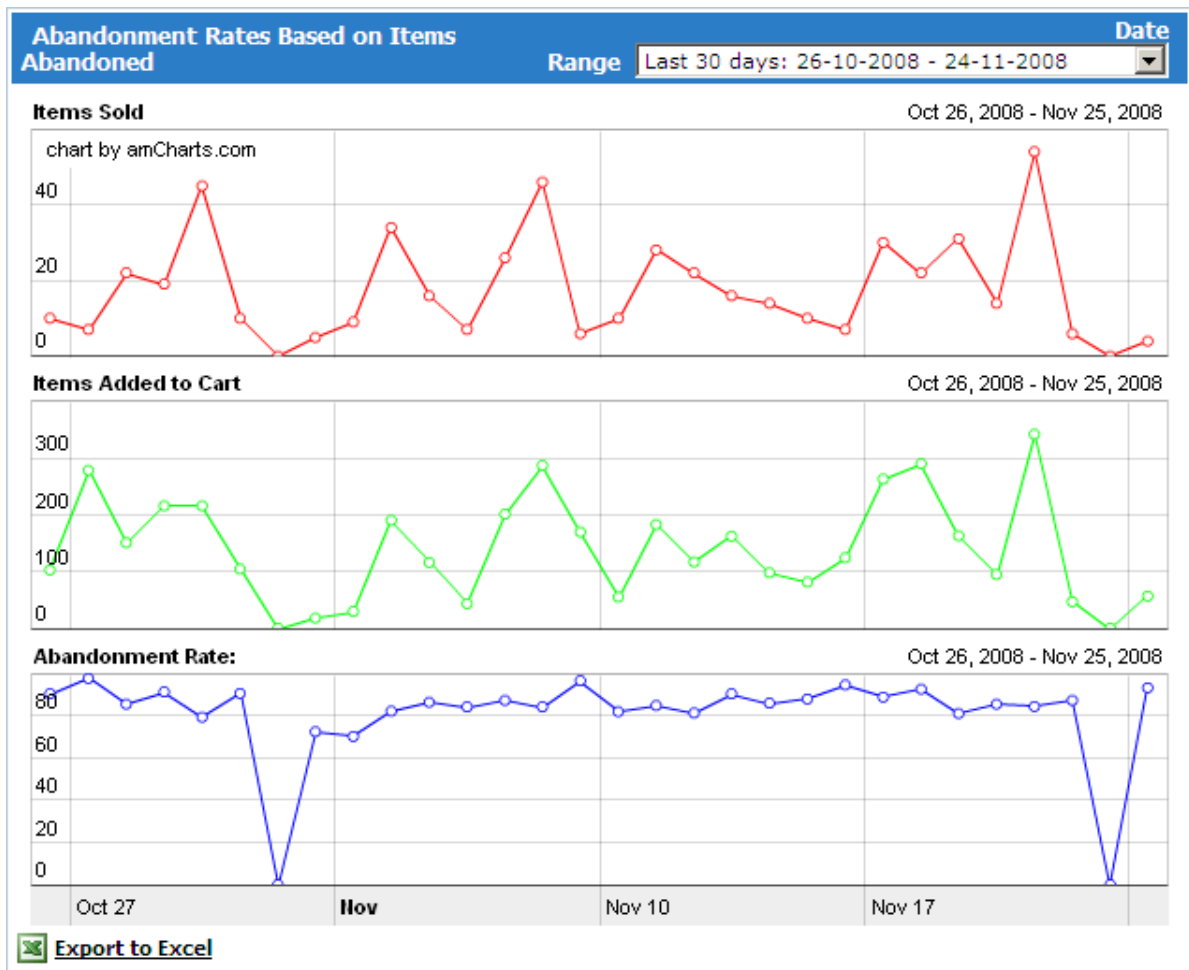


2. Abandonment Rates Based on Items Abandoned

The **Items Sold** chart shows the total number of products within the orders placed in your store.

The **Items Added to Cart** chart shows the total number of products (number of items) added to all carts – including abandoned ones.

The **Abandonment Rate** chart shows the average percentage of products added to carts were abandoned (added but not ordered).

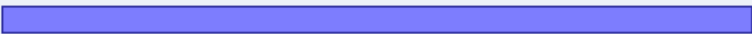












Top 10 Products

This report shows several charts, each of which includes the most popular products from your catalog based on different criteria.

1. Top 10 Sellers By Items

Products with the highest number of items sold. The **Items Sold** column shows the number of products within orders placed within the selected period.

Top 10 Sellers By Items		Date Range	Last 30 days: 26-10-2008 - 24-11-2008
#	Product Name	Items Sold	
1.	Teleflora's Crystal Baby Block	40	
2.	Teleflora's Be Happy Bouquet	35	
3.	Lavender Essence	34	
4.	A Lavender Dozen	33	
5.	Perfectly Peachy Roses	31	
6.	Teleflora's Precious Hot Pink Tulips	29	
7.	Plum Crazy	28	
8.	Teleflora's Clear Day Bouquet	28	
9.	Burst of Yellow	28	
10.	Premium Long Stemmed Roses	28	

 [Export to Excel](#)

2.Top 10 By Views


Products that your store visitors viewed the most. The **Views** column shows the number of views for each product. To define the pages used to collect views statistics, use the settings on the page **Admin >> Advanced Settings & Configuration >> Reports and Statistics**.

Top 10 By Views		Date Range	Last 30 days: 26-10-2008 - 24-11-2008
#	Product Name	Views	
1.	A Lavender Dozen	455	
2.	Burst of Yellow	444	
3.	Teleflora's Just Ducky Bouquet	423	
4.	Teleflora's Crystal Baby Block	422	
5.	Plum Crazy	388	
6.	Teleflora's Be Happy Bouquet	371	
7.	Perfectly Peachy Roses	368	
8.	Teleflora's Uniquely Chic Bouquet	368	
9.	Lavender Essence	355	
10.	Teleflora	351	

[Export to Excel](#)

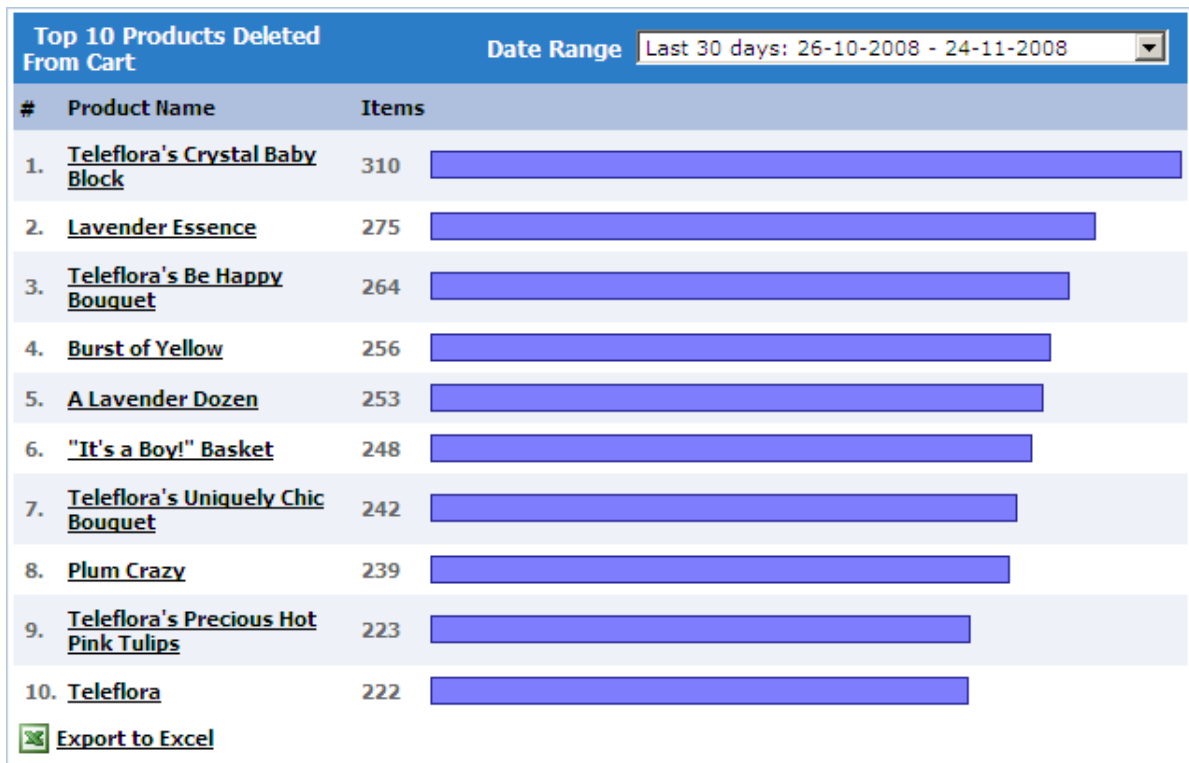
3.Top 10 Products Added to Cart

Products that your store visitors have added to cart most often. The **Items** column shows the total number of product additions to cart, regardless of whether an order was actually placed or the product was then removed from cart.

Top 10 Products Added to Cart		Date Range
		Last 30 days: 26-10-2008 - 24-11-2008
#	Product Name	Items
1.	Lavender Essence	334
2.	Teleflora's Crystal Baby Block	315
3.	Teleflora's Be Happy Bouquet	293
4.	A Lavender Dozen	283
5.	"It's a Boy!" Basket	239
6.	Teleflora's Uniquely Chic Bouquet	228
7.	Perfectly Peachy Roses	221
8.	Burst of Yellow	214
9.	Teleflora's Just Ducky Bouquet	213
10.	Plum Crazy	212
 Export to Excel		

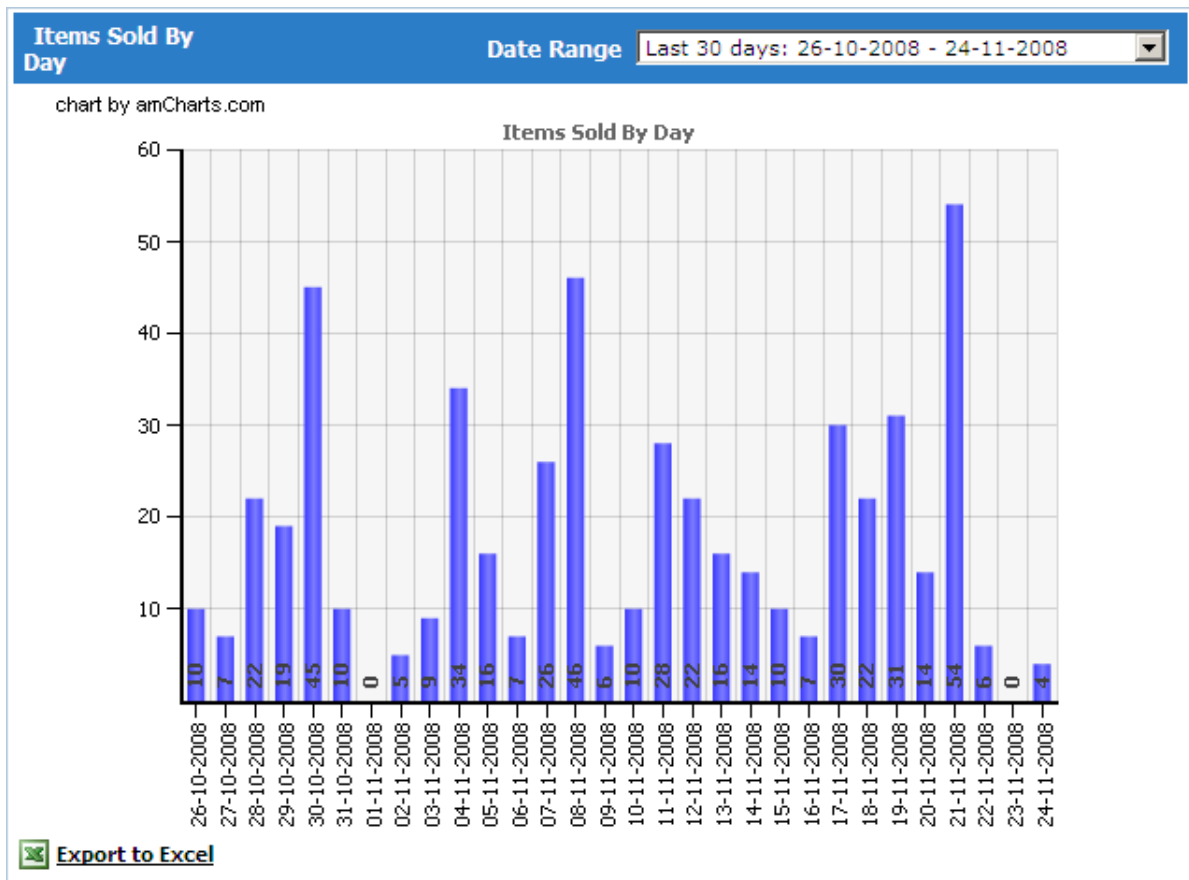
4. Top 10 Products Deleted From Cart

Products that your store visitors have most often removed from cart (after adding them). The **Items** column shows the total number of product removals from cart, regardless of whether it was then added to cart again.



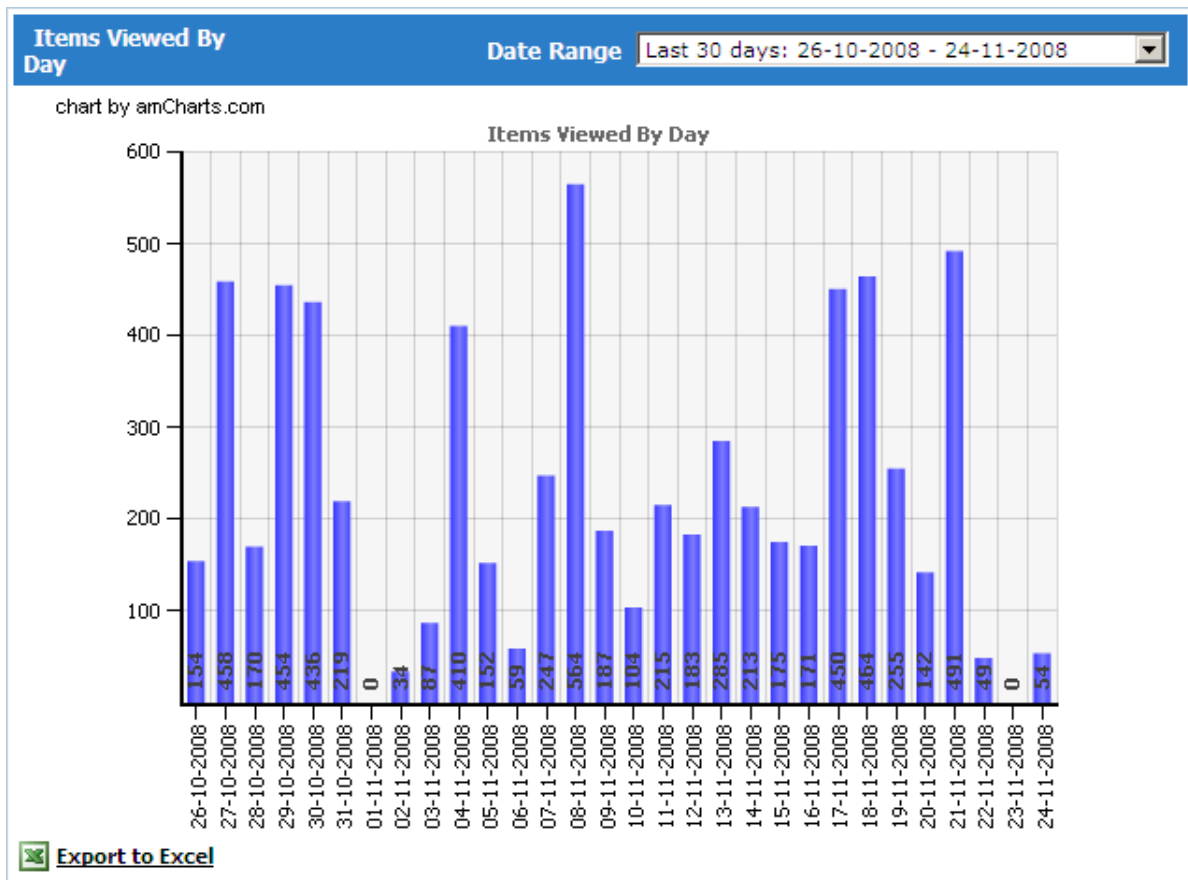
Items Sold

This report shows several charts with vertical bars representing the number of products (number of items) within the orders placed in your store. The first chart sums the total number of products by day, the second one – by month, and the third one – by year.



Items Viewed

This report shows several charts with vertical bars representing the number of products viewed by your store visitors. The first chart sums the total number of products by day, the second one – by month, and the third one – by year.



Recent 100 Visitors

This report shows detailed information about the 100 most recent visitors to your storefront, in chronological order. The top line shows the 100th most recent visitor.

Detailed information about the 100 most recent visitors								
#	Time stamp	Repeat visitor	Click path	Referrer	Entry page	IP #, Server name	Browser and OS	Status
100.	24-11-2008 22:26:15	No	Go: 11 pages	Go: www.live.com	/product-info.php	121.54.1.3 dynamic.dsl.as9105.com	Mac OSX Safari 12	Online
99.	24-11-2008 22:22:31	No	Go: 21 pages	Go: www.my-first-shop.com	/product-info.php	79.132.105.4 gw.smartbro.net	*nix linux Opera 6.	Online
98.	24-11-2008 20:10:40	No	Go: 5 pages	Go: www.google.com	/product-info.php	84.251.32.197 dyn.optonline.net	Windows NT 6.0 MSIE 7.0	Online
97.	24-11-2008 16:00:09	No	Go: 7 pages	Go: www.yahoo.com	/product-list.php	88.73.58.214 nj.comcast.net	*nix linux Mozilla 5.0	Offline

The table contains the following columns:

Time stamp	The date and time when the visitor opened their entry page (first accessed your store). For repeat visitors, the date and time refer to their last visit.															
Repeat visitor	Indicates whether the visitor had visited your store previously, and is so, shows the number of previous visits. A visitor is a repeat visitor if the time elapsed between their visits to any store pages is at least 'Session duration (Visits)' (this settings is defined in Admin >> Advanced Settings & Configuration >> Reports and Statistics , and its default value is 30 minutes). In this case, hover the mouse cursor over the "Yes" label to view a tooltip showing how much time has elapsed since this user's last visit.															
Click path	<p>Indicates the number of store pages the visitor viewed. Hover the mouse cursor over the cell contents to view a tooltip showing the complete list of pages viewed. Click the link provided to open the list in a new window, which, in addition to the URLs, will show the visit times for each visited page.</p> <p>For repeat visitors, the data shown represent only their last visit.</p> <table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th colspan="3">Visitor click path</th> </tr> <tr> <th>Click #</th> <th>URL visited</th> <th>Duration of Stay</th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>1.</td> <td>http://www.my-first-shop.com/product-i...eleflora_Just_Ducky_Bouquet-pid44.html</td> <td>26 seconds</td> </tr> <tr> <td>2.</td> <td>http://www.my-first-shop.com/home.php</td> <td>15 seconds</td> </tr> <tr> <td>3.</td> <td>http://www.my-first-shop.com/product-info.php?Fresh_Memories-pid40.html</td> <td>No further activity at this time</td> </tr> </tbody> </table>	Visitor click path			Click #	URL visited	Duration of Stay	1.	http://www.my-first-shop.com/product-i...eleflora_Just_Ducky_Bouquet-pid44.html	26 seconds	2.	http://www.my-first-shop.com/home.php	15 seconds	3.	http://www.my-first-shop.com/product-info.php?Fresh_Memories-pid40.html	No further activity at this time
Visitor click path																
Click #	URL visited	Duration of Stay														
1.	http://www.my-first-shop.com/product-i...eleflora_Just_Ducky_Bouquet-pid44.html	26 seconds														
2.	http://www.my-first-shop.com/home.php	15 seconds														
3.	http://www.my-first-shop.com/product-info.php?Fresh_Memories-pid40.html	No further activity at this time														
Referer	<p>The website from which the visitor came to your store. This shows only the website's domain name; to see the specific page that referred the visitor to your store, view the appropriate tooltip by hovering the mouse cursor over the cell contents. Click the link provided to open the webpage in a new window.</p> <p>If a visitor accessed your store by manually entering its URL in their browser or by using a Bookmark/Favorites link, the column reads "Direct access" and no link is provided.</p> <p>Note: Referer information is retrieved from the visitor's browser and can thus be inaccurate, because some browsers allow users to disable that feature.</p>															

Entry page	The first page in your store that the visitor accessed. For repeat visitors, this shows the first page accessed during their last store visit.
IP #, Server name	The IP address of the computer or another device the visitor used to access your store, as well as the domain name corresponding to the IP address. This information is retrieved from the system web server.
Browser and OS	Information about the browser and operating system the visitor used to access your store.
Status	Shows the visitor's current location within your store.

Top Referrers

This report provides an informative look at the websites and webpages who have referred the most visitors to your store.

The difference between the **Last 20 Top Referrer Details** and the **Last 20 Top Referrers** is that the latter groups results by domain, while the former shows the exact URLs of referer pages.

Note: Referrer information is retrieved from the visitor's browser and can thus be inaccurate, because some browsers allow users to disable that feature.

Last 20 Top Referrers		Date Range	Last 30 days: 26-10-2008 - 24-11-2008
Referrer	Number of visits	%	
Direct access	298	20.55%	
www.my-first-shop.com	296	20.41%	
www.yahoo.com	292	20.14%	
www.live.com	286	19.72%	
www.google.com	278	19.17%	

[Export to Excel](#)

Top Viewed Pages

This chart provides an informative look at your store pages that have been viewed the most times.

Last 20 Top Viewed Pages		Date Range
		Last 30 days: 26-10-2008 - 24-11-2008
Page	Views %	
/product-info.php?Teleflora_Uniquely_Chic_Bouquet-pid36.html	1,063 5.18%	
/product-list.php	1,060 5.17%	
/product-info.php?Teleflora_Crystal_Baby_Block-pid51.html	1,053 5.13%	
/product-info.php?Teleflora_Morning_Sunrise_Bouquet-pid5.html	1,050 5.12%	

Visitor Statistics

This section includes various statistics on your store visitors.

The system assigns every store visitor a unique ID, which is stored in the visitor's browser. When a visitor comes back to the store, the system recognizes them by their ID. This way the system always knows who has visited the store, how many times and at what times. In particular, first-time store visitors are identified by the lack of an ID.

Visitor Statistics

The **Visitors** chart shows the total number of unique visitors to your store.

The **First Time Visitors** chart how many visitors accessed your store pages for the first time.

The **Repeated Visitors** chart shows how many visitors visited your store for the second time or more.

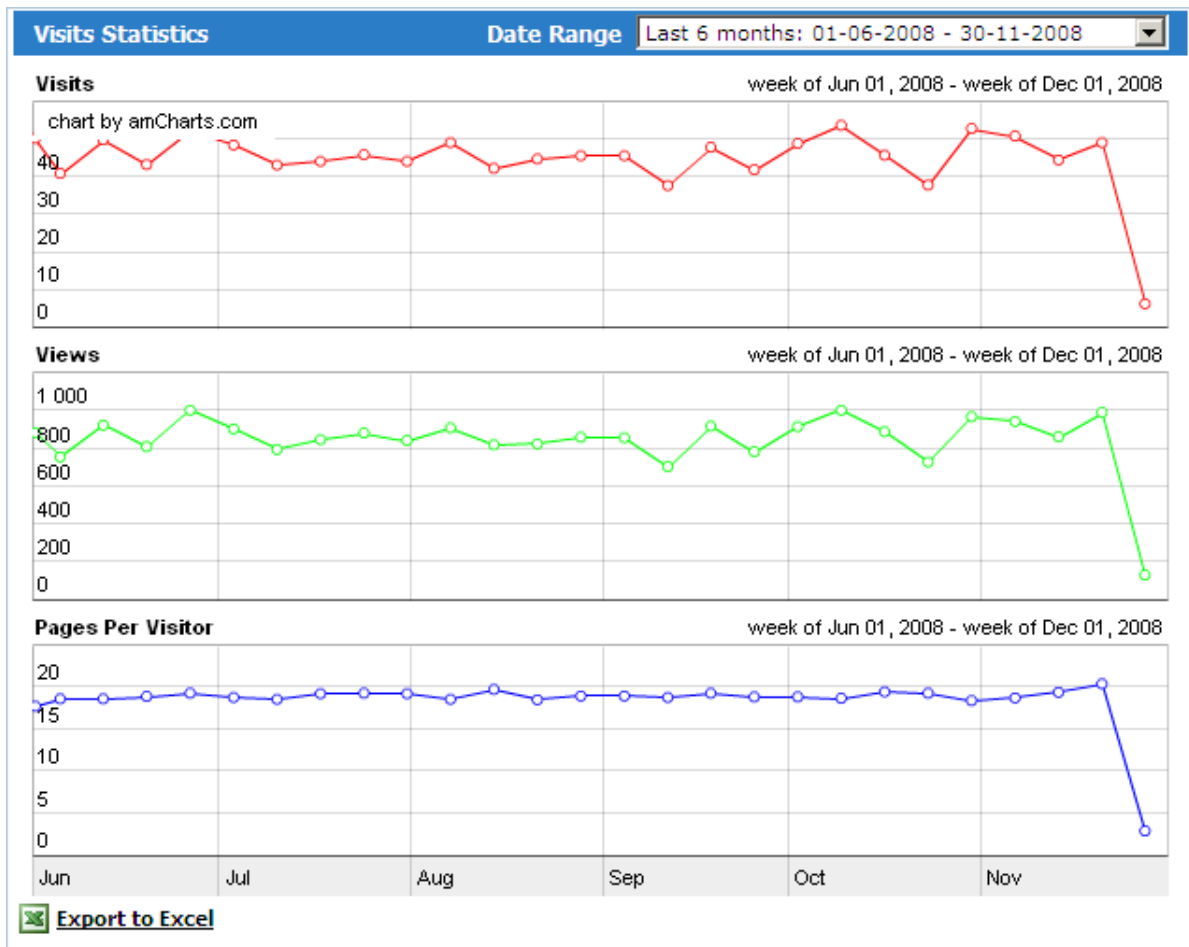


Visits Statistics

The **Visits** chart shows the total number of visits to your store – including repeat visits.

The **Views** chart shows the total number of page views in your store.

The **Pages Per Visit** chart shows the average number of pages viewed per visit.

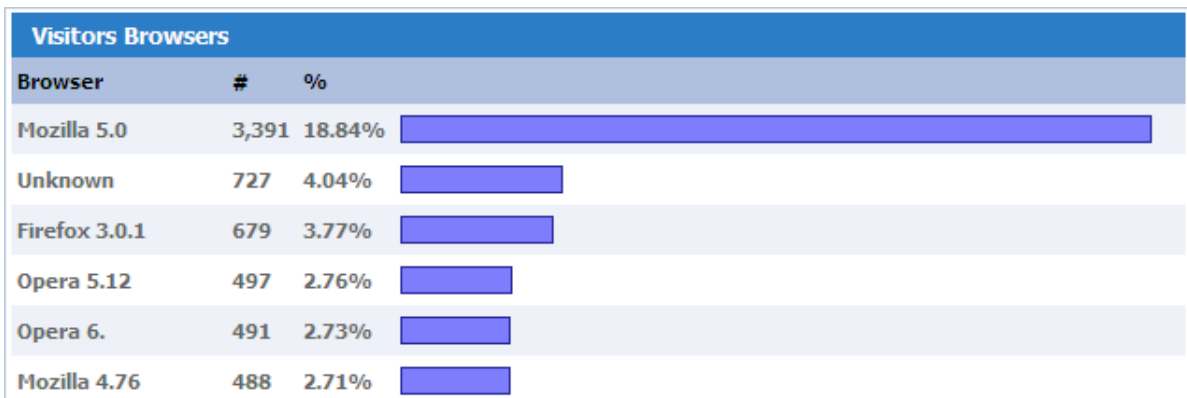


Browsers and OS

This report includes the following two charts:

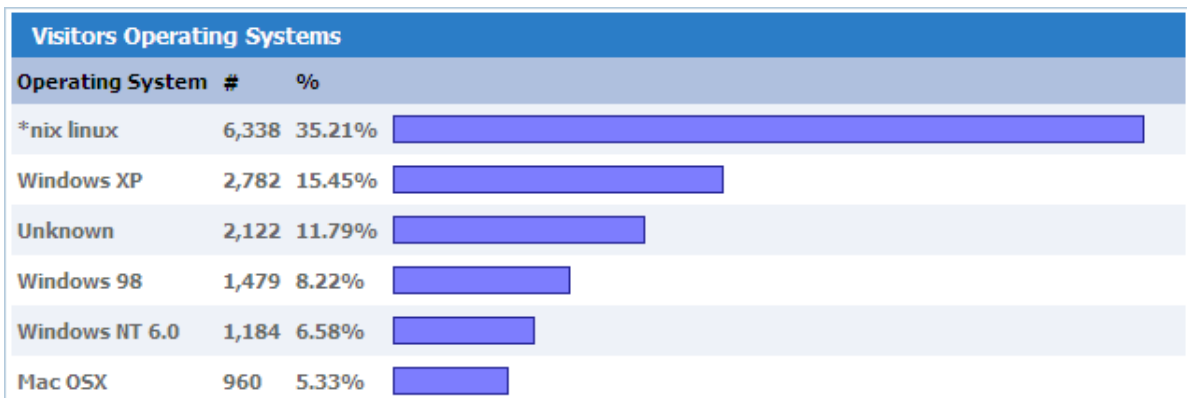
Visitor Browsers

This chart provides an informative look at the browsers that visitors use most often to access your store.



Visitor Operating Systems

This chart provides an informative look at the most popular operating systems among your store visitors.



Recent 100 Web Crawlers Visits

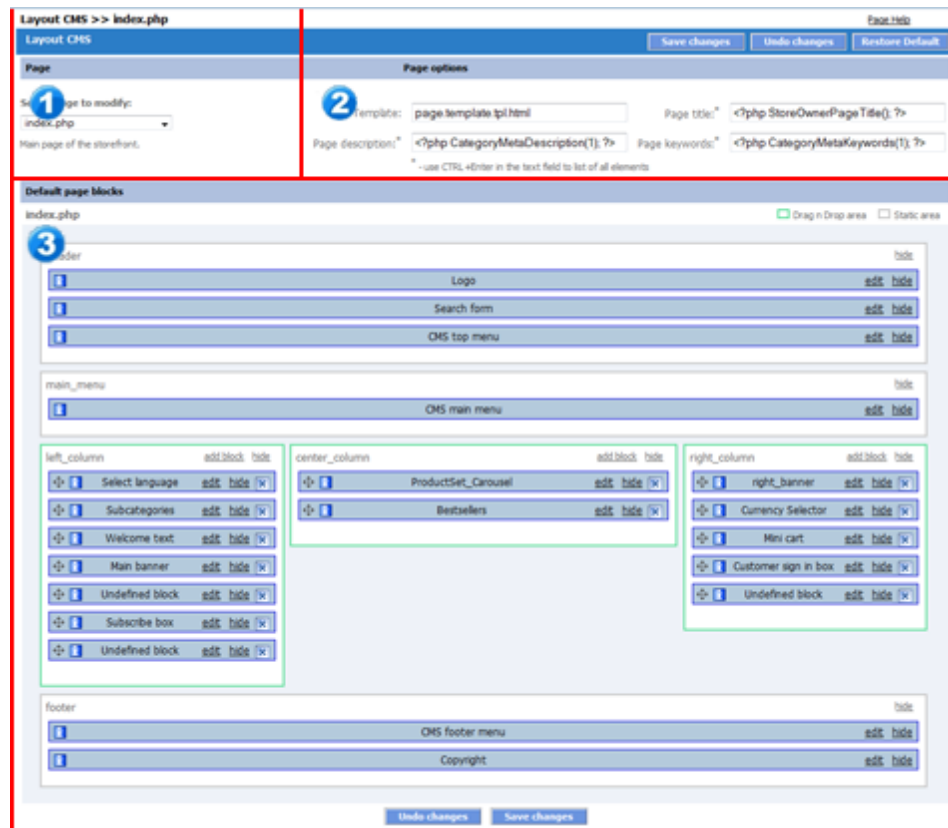
Shows the 100 most recent web crawler statistics. If a line is green, search engine indexing is being performed at the moment.

Detailed information about the 100 most recent web search bots (crawlers)							
#	Visit Date	Web Crawler ID	Referer	Entry page	Scanned Pages	Remote IP	Hostname
1.	02-12-2008	Google robot	Direct access	/af/5616/product-info.php	Go: 1 page	66.249.73.201	crawl-66-249-73-201.googlebot.com
2.	30-11-2008	Google robot	Direct access	/af/5616/product-list.php	Go: 1 page	66.249.73.201	crawl-66-249-73-201.googlebot.com
3.	28-11-2008	Google robot	Direct access	/af/5616/product-info.php	Go: 2 pages	66.249.73.201	crawl-66-249-73-201.googlebot.com
4.	27-11-2008	Google robot	Direct access	/af/5616/product-info.php	Go: 1 page	66.249.73.201	crawl-66-249-73-201.googlebot.com
5.	25-11-2008	Google robot	Direct access	/af/5616/product-info.php	Go: 1 page	66.249.73.201	crawl-66-249-73-201.googlebot.com
6.	24-11-2008	Google robot	Direct access	/af/5616/product-info.php	Go: 1 page	66.249.73.201	crawl-66-249-73-201.googlebot.com
7.	23-11-2008	Google robot	Direct access	/af/5616/register.php	Go: 2 pages	66.249.73.201	crawl-66-249-73-201.googlebot.com

5.10 Page Manager

The Page Manager allows a store administrator to move page elements in drag-n-drop mode.

Page Manager has the following sections:



1 - Page selector

You can select any Avactis page in the page selector drop down list. After making a selection you will see a short page description.

2 - Page options

The page options section contains additional information about the page's META tags and template.

You can modify page options e.g. replace the META title tag with any other available tag or text.

Note:

In order to view the list of all available tags, click on the text field and press **Ctrl+Enter**. After this you will see the list of all available tags.

Click on the tag you want to use and it will be added to the option field.

3 - Page blocks

The page layout scheme is divided into placeholders (e.g. header, right column, and center column) and blocks inside these placeholders.

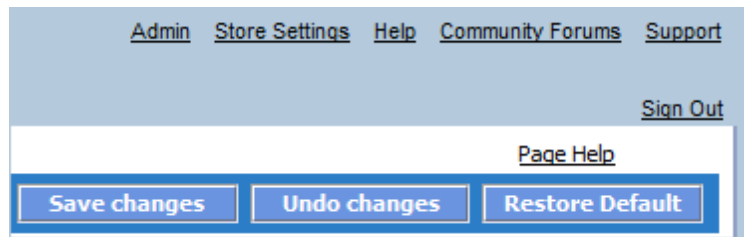
Placeholders are divided into 2 types:

- Static placeholders (header, main_menu and footer)
- Editable placeholders (left_column, center_column and right_column)

Note:

Adding or removing blocks in static (or system) placeholders is not permitted.

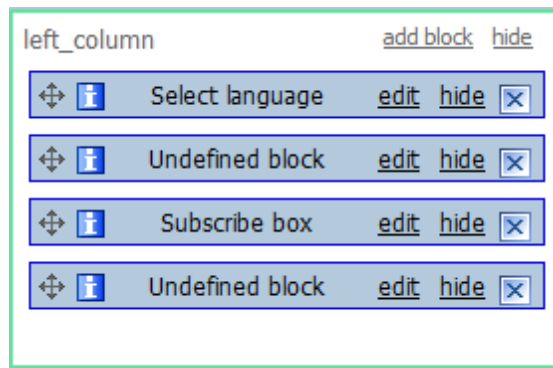
You can save the layout, restore the default layout or undo your last changes using the buttons in the top right corner:



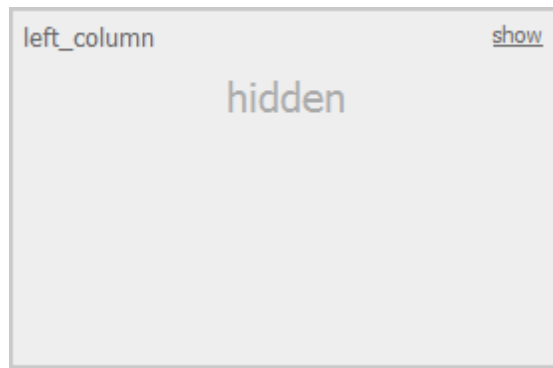
How to use Placeholders and Blocks

Placeholders

In the top right corner of a placeholder you can find the show-hide link. Using this link you can show or hide a placeholder:

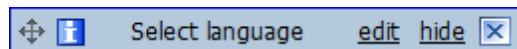


The visible placeholder has a white background, and the hidden placeholder has a gray background (and hidden blocks):



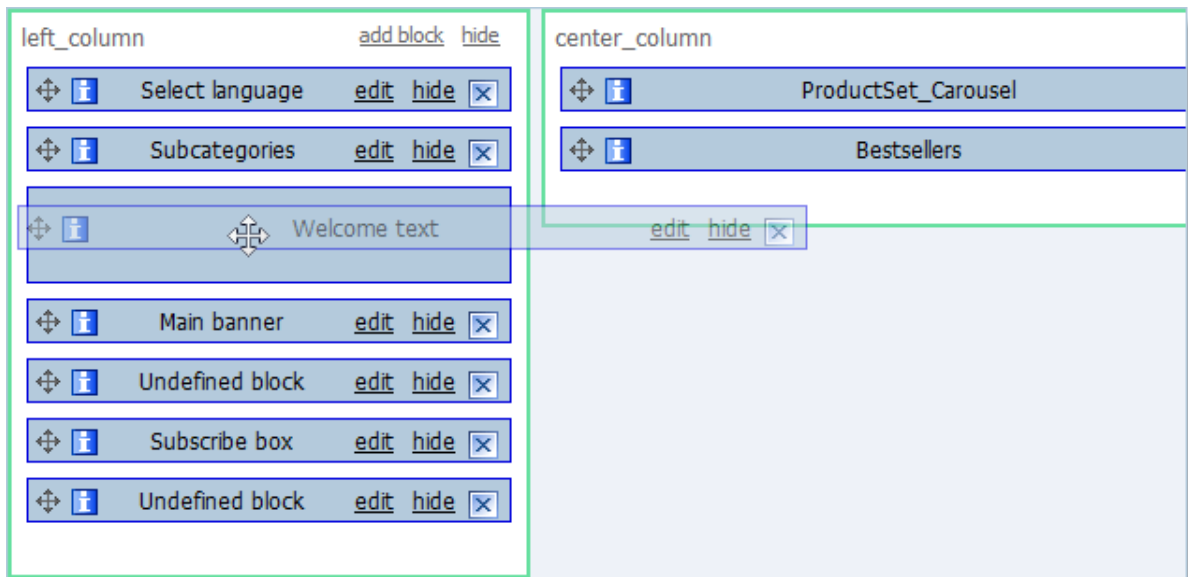
Blocks

Each block looks like a schematic rectangle with a title:



You can modify the content of a block, show and hide a block, view a block description and remove a block if needed.

It is possible to move blocks from one placeholder to another in drag-n-drop mode:



You can add a new block to a placeholder using the **add block** link. New blocks can only be added to editable placeholders.

In **add block** form you can create your own blocks. Just enter your content to these fields: Block title, Block description, and Block content.

You can also select any system block from the list.

Note:

It is possible to add PHP or HTML code to the **Block content** field.

How to modify the page layout using Page Manager

Add a system block:

- 1 - Select the page you want to modify in the **Select page to modify** drop down. The selected page layout will be loaded automatically.
- 2 - Click the **add block** link of, for example, the left_column placeholder.
- 3 - Select any block from the available blocks list, e.g. Bestsellers, and add it to the placeholder.
- 4 - Save your changes.

Add a custom block:

- 1 - Select the page you want to modify in the **Select page to modify** drop down. The selected page layout will be loaded automatically.
- 2 - Click the **add block** link of, for example, the left_column placeholder.
- 3 - Enter the block title, description and block content (any HTML or PHP code) and add that to the placeholder.
- 4 - Save your changes.

5.11 Look & Feel

The Look & Feel page allows a store administrator to activate a design template and modify the selected template design using the built-in visual CSS editor:

The screenshot displays the 'Look & Feel' administration page. At the top, there is a navigation menu with links for Home, Catalog, Customers, Reviews, Orders, Marketing, Reports, and Sign Out. The main content area is titled 'Look & Feel' and 'Storefront Design Management'. Under 'Current Skin', the 'Coffee' skin is shown with a version of 1.0 and a dropdown menu for 'Current Active Theme' set to 'Skin Default Theme'. A 'Launch CSS Editor' button is present. The 'Available skins' section features five thumbnails: 'Black', 'Blue (default)', 'Green', 'Orange', and 'Sea'. Each thumbnail includes a 'Preview' button and an 'Activate' button.

Select design theme

You can select any installed Avactis template for your storefront.

Click the **Activate** button under the template thumbnail in order to activate your preferred template:

**Note:**

The Avactis templates are located in the **/Avactis-themes** folder. You can add new themes there if needed.

Themes will be automatically visible in the **Look & Feel** section.

CSS editor

After activating a template, you can modify the design using the built-in CSS editor.

Click on the **Open CSS editor** button and you will see the CSS editor wizard:

The screenshot displays the 'CSS Editor' interface for the Avactis Shopping Cart Admin Area. The interface is divided into several sections:

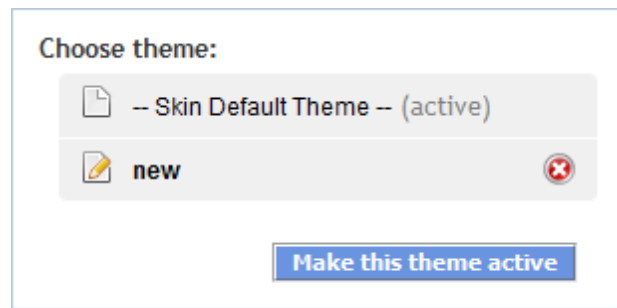
- Header:** Features the 'Avactis' logo and navigation links for 'HOME', 'MY ACCOUNT', and 'MY CART'.
- Left Sidebar:**
 - CSS Editor:** Includes 'Save', 'Undo', 'Redo', and 'Edit' buttons.
 - Manage Themes:** Contains an 'Add new theme' input field with an 'Add theme' button. Below it, a 'Choose theme:' section lists '-- Skin Default Theme -- (active)' and 'new' (with a delete icon). A 'Make this theme active' button is positioned below the list.
 - Theme Customization:** Includes 'Style Properties' and 'Bookmarks' options.
- Main Content Area:**
 - Catalog:** Lists product categories: Apparel, Computers, Books, DVD, Flowers, Music, Furniture, Sport, and Digital Distribution.
 - Subscribe:** Features an email input field, checkboxes for 'Special Offers' and 'New Products', and an 'Update' button.
 - Featured Products:** A section for showcasing products.
 - Categories:** A sidebar section showing a product image (a t-shirt) and a partial 'Add' button.

1 - To modify a design, you should create a theme.

Enter any theme name to the **Add new theme** field and click **Add theme:**

This close-up view of the 'Manage Themes' section shows the 'Add new theme' input field containing the text 'new' and the 'Add theme' button.

You will see your new theme in the list of available themes in the **Manage Themes** section of the wizard. Activate your new theme to modify it:



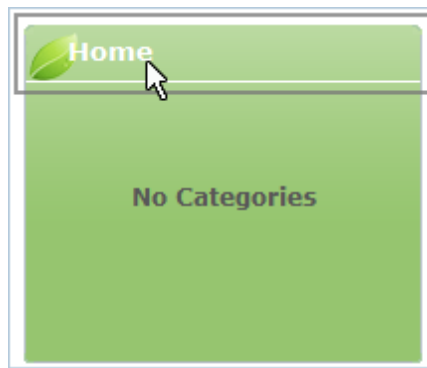
2 - Make sure that **Edit** mode is enabled in the CSS editor control panel:



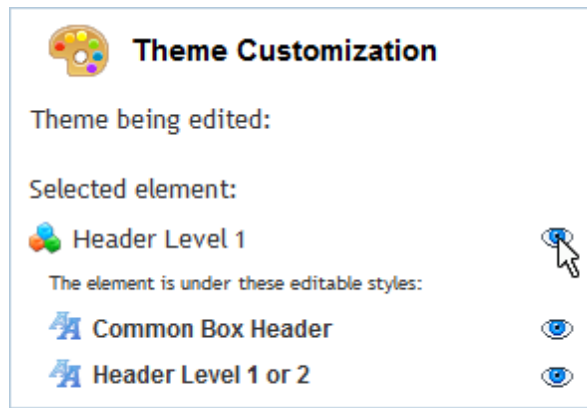
Note:

To modify CSS classes, edit mode must be enabled. If it is not enabled, you can navigate in the main window to the pages you want to modify. To enable edit mode again, just click the **Edit** button.

3 - Use the mouse to select the element on the main screen that you want to modify:

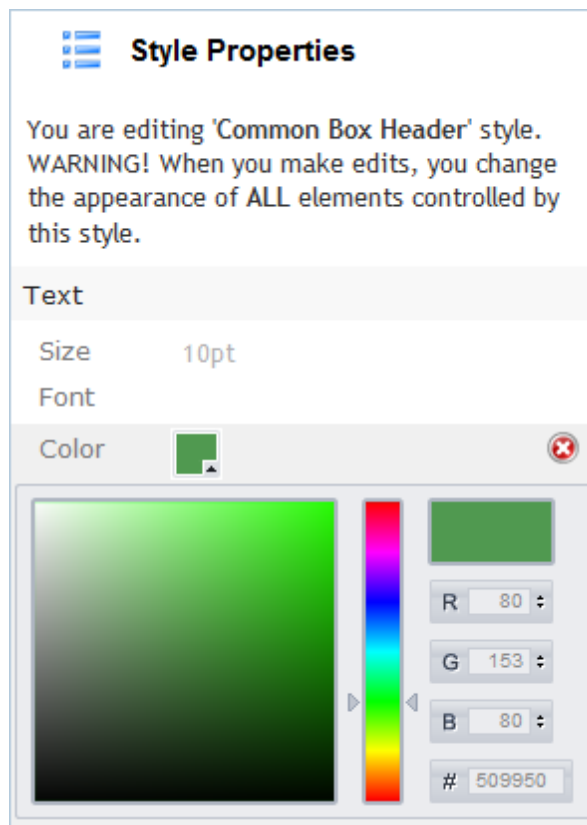


You can also select an element you want to modify from the list:

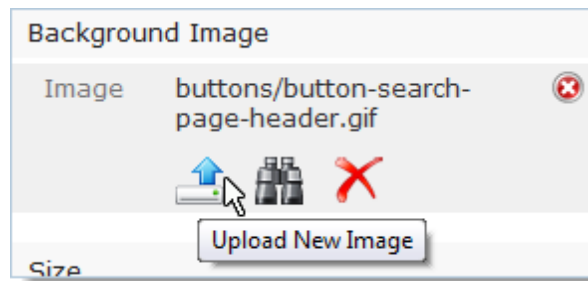


Using the  icon, you can highlight an element in the main window.

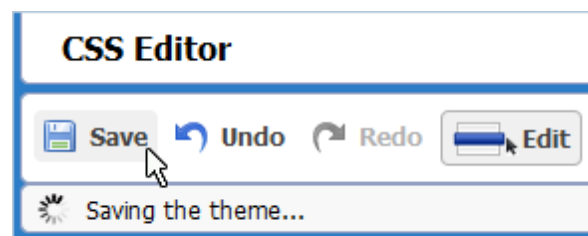
4 - You can see the list of CSS element properties that can modify your visual effects, for example, you can choose a color element:



You can also upload your own image from your computer or the /images folder of the current theme:



5 - Save your changes after modifying the theme:



Chapter

VI

6 FAQs

Frequently Asked Questions

Installation Problems

- [Question: During installation I got the following error message: "The amount of memory available to PHP processes should be at least 64MB".](#)
- [Question: During installation I received an error message telling me the system cannot install \(write\) some files. How do I fix this?](#)

How to Setup Taxes

Canada

- [Question: How do I configure sales taxes in Quebec, Canada?](#)

UK/European Union

- [Question: How do I configure taxes in the UK?](#)

USA/International

- [Question: How do I configure my sales tax?](#)
- [Question: How do I configure ZIP-code-based taxes?](#)
- [Question: How do I setup multi-state tax rules?](#)

How to Move Store to Another Server

- [Question: I installed the shopping cart on my test website. Then I customized the design, added products, defined taxes and configured other settings. Now my test store is all ready to go live. How do I transfer it to my working site?](#)

6.1 Installation Problems

Question:

During installation I got the following error message: "The amount of memory available to PHP processes should be at least 64MB". I have checked my server's PHP settings and I see that it does have enough memory available. What are the possible issues here?

Answer:

Normal operation of the shopping cart software requires 64 MB of memory available for PHP. The installer checks the actual available memory before proceeding. Available memory can be limited either by PHP or by Apache (usually, only *nix systems can have memory limits).

PHP limits available memory with the `memory_limit` directive, defined in `php.ini` (for more info go to <http://php.net/manual/ini.core.php#ini.memory-limit>).

However, if memory is limited by Apache with the `RmemLimit` directive (for more info go to <http://httpd.apache.org/docs/2.0/mod/core.html>), then the `memory_limit` setting in `php.ini` makes no difference. The actual amount of available memory will be determined solely by `RMemLimit`.

To determine the actual available memory for a PHP process, use the following script:

http://www.Avactis.com/tools/_memory_test.php

Upload it to your server and open it in a browser window.

Note: Make sure PHP has the write permission for the folder where `_memory_test.php` is located.

This script works as follows:

- Creates a file 1048576 bytes or 1 MB in size.
- Runs a loop, on each iteration reading the created file and adding it to an array (i.e. to memory).
- At every step (64 total), it outputs the amount of consumed memory using the PHP function `memory_get_usage()` (http://php.net/memory_get_usage).
- Each iteration uses 1 MB of memory, excluding the overhead of running the script itself.
- The script keeps working until it either uses up 64 MB of memory or hits the memory limit set by PHP or Apache, in which cases the script stops. As a result, the available memory will display on the screen, precise up to ± 2 MB.

If less than 64 MB of memory is available, you should contact your hosting provider (ISP) and find out the memory limit on the server and how it is enforced (PHP, Apache or something else),

and raise the memory limit if possible. If memory limit cannot be raised, we suggest switching to a different hosting provider.

Question:

During installation I received an error message telling me the system cannot install (write) some files. How do I fix this?

Answer:

To install the shopping cart on your web server and operate it properly, the PHP process must have a write permission for the installation folder of the shopping cart software. For details about file permissions, refer to http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/File_system_permissions.

If you received an installation error message saying that PHP doesn't have the permission to write to the current folder, you need to change this permission accordingly. You can consult your hosting provider (ISP) for help or do it yourself.

To change permissions, first you have to find out what operating system your server runs on. If it is UNIX or a similar OS, you should set the permission to 777 for the shopping cart installation folder. After installation is complete, you can reset the permission (the default value is usually 755).

There are several ways to do this:

- Use the File Manager of your Hosting Control Panel (contact your web hosting provider for assistance).
- Use any FTP client if you have FTP access. A suitable FTP client can be found here: http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/FTP_clients.
- Use the system command 'chmod' (<http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Chmod>) if you have SSH access. This can be determined by asking your web hosting provider.

If your server runs on Windows with IIS, then refer to the following guide to set the appropriate folder permissions: http://www.webwizguide.com/kb/asp_knowledgebase/server_permissions.asp

After installation is complete, normal operation of Avactis Shopping Cart requires that PHP have write permissions for the following folders:

```
Avactis-downloads
Avactis-images
Avactis-system/cache
Avactis-system/backup
Avactis-uploads
```

Permissions may change if you migrate your software from one server to another. If write permissions are missing, set permissions to 777.

6.2 How to Move an Avactis Store

Question:

- I first installed the shopping cart on my test server. Then I customized the design, added products, defined taxes and configured other settings. Now my test store is all ready to go live. How do I transfer it to my live server?

Answer:

You should transfer 2 things:

1. Store database
2. Store files

Store database should be transferred in full.

Store files must also be transferred in full, but there are **7** configuration files that have to be *changed after the transfer* because they contain absolute paths to some system files and URLs and they will most likely be different on the live server:

1. **init.php** - contains absolute path to store.php script
2. **js_http_request_frontend.php** - contains absolute path to JsHttpRequest.php script (since version 2)
3. **avactis-system/config.php** - contains database connection info and store URL
4. **avactis-system/https_config.php** - contains HTTPS URL of the store when HTTPS is enabled
5. **avactis-layouts/storefront-layout.ini** - contains absolute path to store root folder and store URL(s)
6. **avactis-system/admin/mod_rewrite_test_01/.htaccess** - contains URL-path to its own folder

7. **avactis-system/admin/mod_rewrite_test_02/.htaccess** - contains URL-path to its own folder

So after transferring all the files, you should edit these configuration files and replace URLs and paths of the test server with those of the live server.

The complete procedure of transferring the store is as follows:

1. Clear application cache
2. Dump the database from the test server to a SQL file in store folder
3. Compress the store folder, including the SQL file on the test server
4. Copy the archive to the live server
5. Create a new, empty database on the live server
6. Extract the archive on the live server
7. Import the SQL file to the database on the live server
8. Edit the 7 configuration files to reflect changes in paths and URLs

Detailed instructions for each step

1. Clear application cache

This can be done in a number of ways:

- *From shell:* `rm -rf avactis-system/cache/*`
- *From admin area:* Admin > Clear Cache > Clear.
- *From a file manager:* delete all contents of **avactis-system/cache** folder (you can leave **.htaccess** file).

If the test server is running Unix or Linux OS and you can run shell scripts on it, next steps **2** and **3** can be done with **backup.sh** script included in Avactis. Just run **avactis-system/backup.sh** and you will get an archive with all store files and database dump in **avactis-system/backup/** folder. The file is named **backup_YYYY-MM-DD_hh-mm-ss.tar.gz** (has time of creation in its name). It has an accompanying **.abi** file with meta information.

2. Dump the database from the test server to a SQL file in store folder

Depending on your setup, the following tools may be available to you:

- *In shell:* `mysqldump -uusername -p databasename > database.sql`
- *In hosting control panel:* look for a **phpMyAdmin** or **Web Admin** icon in **Databases** section. If you do not find anything like a database web management, refer to hosting company help & support.
- *Via FTP:* upload [this PHP script](#) to your test server, open it in your web browser and use the **Dump** link.

3. Compress the store folder, including the SQL file on the test server

- *In shell:* `tar czf store.tgz *`
- *In hosting control panel:* select all files and folders in store folder and click **Zip** or **Archive** button. This function is different in different control panels, so look around to find it. Some control panels may lack this function completely.

4. Copy the archive to the live server

- *In shell on the live server:* use either **ftp** (interactively) or **wget** to retrieve the archive from the test server.
- *Via FTP:* download the archive (or all uncompressed files if you could not compress them) from the test server and upload it (them) to the live server.

If you've made a full backup using **backup.sh**, copy both **.tar.gz** and **.abi** files from **avactis-system/backup/** folder.

5. Create a new, empty database on the live server

- *In hosting control panel:* look for a **Databases** section and an **Add New** or **Create New** button in it.

If you have **.tar.gz** and **.abi** files with backup, the next steps **6** and **7** can be done with **restore.sh** script from Avactis 2.0 (users of earlier versions can [download the updated scripts](#)). Run the script with 3 arguments:

```
restore.sh backup_YYYY-MM-DD_hh-mm-ss.tar.gz path_to/  
store_folder/ empty_database_name
```

If database username or password is different from the test server, the script may fail to import the database. Then do step **7** manually.

6. Extract the archive on the live server

- *In shell:* `tar xzf store.tgz`
- *In hosting control panel:* select the archive file and click **Unzip** or **Extract** button. This function is different in different control panels, so look around to find it. Some control panels may lack this function completely.

7. Import the SQL file to the database on the live server

- *In shell:* `mysql -uusername -p databasename < database.sql`
- *In hosting control panel:* look for a **phpMyAdmin** or **Web Admin** icon in **Databases** section - it has the **Import** tab where you can upload the SQL file.
- *Via FTP:* upload [this PHP script](#) to your test server, open it in your web browser and use the **SQL command** link.

8. Edit the 7 configuration files to reflect changes in paths and URLs

- *In shell:* `vim filename` or `vi filename`
- *In hosting control panel / Via FTP:* select each configuration file, click **Edit** button, make changes and save the file.

You can find out absolute paths to enter in the configuration files from the helper.php script (open it in your browser).

6.3 How to Setup Taxes?

This section provides information about tax settings for different countries.

Available topics:

[Canada](#)

- [Question: How do I configure sales taxes in Quebec, Canada?](#)

[UK/European Union](#)

- [Question: How do I configure taxes in the UK?](#)

[USA/International](#)

- [Question: How do I configure my sales tax?](#)
- [Question: How do I configure ZIP-code-based taxes?](#)
- [Question: How do I setup multi-state tax rules?](#)

6.3.1 Canada

Question: How do I configure sales taxes in Quebec, Canada?

In Quebec we have federal 5% GST, as well as the provincial rate which is nominally 7.5% and is applied on top. So, PST = 7.5% * (GST + Sale Price + Shipping Cost - Discount) and GST = 5% * (Sale Price + Shipping Cost - Discount). How do I configure these taxes?

Answer:

1. To define tax rates, go to **Store Settings >> Location/Taxes/Localization >> Taxes**.
2. In the **Tax Names section**, create a **GST** and a **PST**.

Tax Names			Add	Edit	Delete
Name	Address To Use				
GST	Shipping Address	<input type="checkbox"/>			
PST	Shipping Address	<input type="checkbox"/>			

3. Don't make any changes in **Tax Display Options**.

Tax Display Options			Add	Edit	Delete
Tax & Display Rule	Displayed Text				
GST (always display)	GST:	<input type="checkbox"/>			
PST (always display)	PST:	<input type="checkbox"/>			

4. In the **Tax Rules on Shipping Costs** section, define the tax rule for shipping. Exclude those shipping methods for which delivery services are not taxed.
5. In the **Tax Rates. Product Tax Class – Taxable** section, first define the **GST** tax for Canada, then define the **PST** tax as shown on the picture:

Tax Rates. Product Tax Class - Taxable		Add	Edit	Delete
Address	Tax Formula			
Canada	GST = 5% * (Sale Price + Shipping Cost - Discount)			<input type="checkbox"/>
Quebec	PST = 7.5% * (GST + Sale Price + Shipping Cost - Discount)			<input type="checkbox"/>

All other addresses are not subject to taxation

6. Finally, your page should look similar to this:

Storefront Admin **Store Settings** Help Community Forums Support

Home Catalog Customers Reviews Orders Marketing Reports Sign Out

Store Settings >> Taxes Page Help

Manage Taxes Settings

This page allows you to define tax settings. Use the Tax Names section to create names for taxes that will be used in your online store. Use the Tax Display Options section to determine how these taxes will display to your customers. Then, create Product Tax Classes, which will be used when you enter products into the catalog. Finally, in the Tax Rates section, define tax formulas for each Product Tax Class. For more details, see Page Help at any time.

Tax Names		Add	Edit	Delete
Name	Address To Use			
GST	Shipping Address			<input type="checkbox"/>
PST	Shipping Address			<input type="checkbox"/>

Tax Display Options		Add	Edit	Delete
Tax & Display Rule	Displayed Text			
GST (always display)	GST:			<input type="checkbox"/>
PST (always display)	PST:			<input type="checkbox"/>

Product Tax Classes		Add	Edit	Delete
Product Tax Class	Description			
Nontaxable	Nontaxable Products			<input type="checkbox"/>
Taxable	Taxable Products			<input type="checkbox"/>

Tax Rules on Shipping Costs Edit

DON'T apply taxes to shipping charges if shipping cost is calculated by this method:

Tax Rates. Product Tax Class - Nontaxable		Add	Edit	Delete
Address	Tax Formula			
Tax Rates are not defined				
Tax Rates. Product Tax Class - Taxable		Add	Edit	Delete
Address	Tax Formula			
Canada	GST = 5% * (Sale Price + Shipping Cost - Discount)	<input type="checkbox"/>		
Quebec	PST = 7.5% * (GST + Sale Price + Shipping Cost - Discount)	<input type="checkbox"/>		
All other addresses are not subject to taxation				

IMPORTANT! This explanation is only an example, and tax values and rates may change over time. To determine the exact tax rates and tax formulas in your case, please consult your accountant.

6.3.2 UK/European Union

Question: How do I configure taxes in the UK?

Our online shop is based in the UK. In addition to the UK, we ship to France, Belgium, Germany and the US. Right now the UK VAT is set at 15.00%. I would like my displayed prices to include the VAT. How do I set up the UK VAT in this situation?

Answer:

1. Go to **Store Settings >> Taxes**. In the section **Tax Names**, set two taxes: **VAT** (check included into product price) and **VAT adjustment**.

Tax Names		Add	Edit	Delete
Name	Address To Use			
VAT	<i>(Included Into Product Price)</i> Address not required	<input type="checkbox"/>		
VAT Adjustment	Shipping Address	<input type="checkbox"/>		

2. Go to the **Tax Display Options** section. For displayed text "**VAT:**" set the tax "**VAT+VAT adjustment**" (see the picture below) by clicking the **Add** button. For the tax **VAT adjustment** select "**never display**". **VAT adjustment** is used only to adjust taxes for shipping and handling charges and discounts, and is not visible at checkout.

Tax Display Options		
		Add Edit Delete
Tax & Display Rule	Displayed Text	
VAT+VAT Adjustment (always display)	VAT:	<input type="checkbox"/>
VAT Adjustment (never display)	VAT Adjustment	<input type="checkbox"/>

Taxes

Edit Tax Display Options Update Cancel

Tax & Display Rule * ? Clear

Select Tax: Add

Select Option:

Displayed Text (visible to customer) * ?

* = Required Field

Update Cancel

3. Now, go to the section **Tax Rates. Product Tax Class - Taxable** and set up taxes as shown below:

Tax Rates. Product Tax Class - Taxable		
		Add Edit Delete
Address	Tax Formula	
Address not required	VAT = 15% * (Sale Price)	<input type="checkbox"/>
Belgium	VAT Adjustment = 15% * (Shipping Cost - Discount)	<input type="checkbox"/>
France	VAT Adjustment = 15% * (Shipping Cost - Discount)	<input type="checkbox"/>
Germany	VAT Adjustment = 15% * (Shipping Cost - Discount)	<input type="checkbox"/>
United Kingdom (Great Britain)	VAT Adjustment = 15% * (Shipping Cost - Discount)	<input type="checkbox"/>
All other addresses are not subject to taxation		

4. Also in the tax setting section (use the Tax Settings button at **Store Settings >> Taxes**), set "**Display product prices including taxes**" to **YES** as shown below.

Advanced Settings

Tax settings

Allow full tax exemption
 If this is set to 'Yes', the customer will be able to use full tax exemption during checkout (which means that all taxes, including taxes built into product prices, will be calculated as null) Yes ▾

Display product prices including taxes
 Display product prices including taxes in Product List, Product Info, Shopping Cart, and Checkout pages of storefront. Yes ▾

NOTE: This option only affects taxes included in the product prices.

So, with these settings all your products in the storefront will have VAT-inclusive prices. When you go to checkout, VAT will be adjusted by adding **VAT adjustment** for the shipping cost and deducting VAT for discounts (both global and quantity discounts), depending on the country of destination. VAT adjustment is set for EU countries to which you ship (Belgium, France, and Germany); for the US, VAT will be zero.

Finally, your tax page should look similar to this:

[Storefront](#) | [Admin](#) | [Store Settings](#) | [Help](#) | [Community Forums](#) | [Support](#)

[Home](#)
[Catalog](#)
[Customers](#)
[Reviews](#)
[Orders](#)
[Marketing](#)
[Reports](#)
[Sign Out](#)

Store Settings >> Taxes [Page Help](#)

Settings

This page allows you to define tax settings. Use the Tax Names section to create names for taxes that will be used in your online store. Use the Tax Display Options section to determine how these taxes will display to your customers. Then, create Product Tax Classes, which will be used when you enter products into the catalog. Finally, in the Tax Rates section, define tax formulas for each Product Tax Class. For more details, see Page Help at any time.

Tax Names		Add	Edit	Delete
Name	Address To Use			
VAT <i>(Included Into Product Price)</i>	Address not required	<input type="checkbox"/>		
VAT Adjustment	Shipping Address	<input type="checkbox"/>		

Tax Display Options		Add	Edit	Delete
Tax & Display Rule	Displayed Text			
VAT Adjustment (never display)	VAT Adjustment:	<input type="checkbox"/>		
VAT+VAT Adjustment (always display)	VAT:	<input type="checkbox"/>		

Product Tax Classes		Add	Edit	Delete
Product Tax Class	Description			
Nontaxable	Nontaxable Products	<input type="checkbox"/>		
Taxable	Taxable Products	<input type="checkbox"/>		

Tax Rules on Shipping Costs	Edit
DON'T apply taxes to shipping charges if shipping cost is calculated by this method:	

Tax Rates. Product Tax Class - Nontaxable		Add	Edit	Delete
Address	Tax Formula			
Tax Rates are not defined				
Tax Rates. Product Tax Class - Taxable		Add	Edit	Delete
Address	Tax Formula			
Address not required	VAT = 15% * (Sale Price)			<input type="checkbox"/>
Belgium	VAT Adjustment = 15% * (Shipping Cost - Discount)			<input type="checkbox"/>
France	VAT Adjustment = 15% * (Shipping Cost - Discount)			<input type="checkbox"/>
Germany	VAT Adjustment = 15% * (Shipping Cost - Discount)			<input type="checkbox"/>
United Kingdom (Great Britain)	VAT Adjustment = 15% * (Shipping Cost - Discount)			<input type="checkbox"/>
All other addresses are not subject to taxation				

IMPORTANT! This explanation is only an example, and tax values and rates may change over time. To determine the exact tax rates and tax formulas in your case, please consult your accountant.

6.3.3 USA/International

Question: How do I configure my sales tax?

I am based in Los Angeles, California. The current Los Angeles sales tax is 8.25%. For all orders shipped within California, the sales tax is 8.25%, and for those shipped outside the state it's 0%. So, how should I define my sales tax?

Answer:

1. To define tax rates, go to **Store Settings >> Location/Taxes/Localization >> Taxes.**

Storefront Admin **Store Settings** Help Community Forums Support

Home Catalog Customers Reviews Orders Marketing Reports Sign Out

Store Settings >> Taxes Page Help

Manage Taxes Settings

This page allows you to define tax settings. Use the Tax Names section to create names for taxes that will be used in your online store. Use the Tax Display Options section to determine how these taxes will display to your customers. Then, create Product Tax Classes, which will be used when you enter products into the catalog. Finally, in the Tax Rates section, define tax formulas for each Product Tax Class. For more details, see Page Help at any time.

Tax Names			Tax Display Options	
Name	Address To Use		Tax & Display Rule	Displayed Text
Sales Tax	Shipping Address	<input type="checkbox"/>	Sales Tax (display if applicable)	Sales Tax: <input type="checkbox"/>

Product Tax Classes			Tax Rules on Shipping Costs
Product Tax Class	Description		
Nontaxable	Nontaxable Products	<input type="checkbox"/>	DON'T apply taxes to shipping charges if shipping cost is calculated by this method:
Taxable	Taxable Products	<input type="checkbox"/>	
VAT-included-into-price	VAT-included-into-price	<input type="checkbox"/>	
VAT-not-included-into-price	VAT-not-included-into-price	<input type="checkbox"/>	

2. In the **Tax Names** section, create a **Sales Tax**.

Taxes

Add Tax Name Add Cancel

Tax Name *	?	<input type="text" value="Sales Tax"/>
Included Into Product Price	?	<input type="checkbox"/>
Address To Use	?	<input type="text" value="Shipping Address"/>

* = Required Field

Add Cancel

Tax Names		
Name	Address To Use	
Sales Tax	Shipping Address	<input type="checkbox"/>

3. In the **Tax Display Options** section, select the **Sales Tax** and click the **Edit** button. For **Displayed Text (visible to customer)**, enter "**Sales Tax:**" or any other text you want customers to see at checkout.

For "**Select Option:**", select "**Display if applicable**". This means that the "**Sales Tax:**" text will display for customers only when **Sales Tax** is defined. You can choose different display options as needed.

4. By default, there are two classes of catalog products: **Taxable** and **Non-Taxable**. In the **Product Tax Classes** section, you can create additional product classes in case your applicable tax policies are more complex.

Product Tax Classes		Add	Edit	Delete
Product Tax Class	Description			
Nontaxable	Nontaxable Products			<input type="checkbox"/>
Taxable	Taxable Products			<input type="checkbox"/>

5. In the **Tax Rules on Shipping Costs** section, define the tax rule for shipping. At the time this document was created (December 2008), California's policy stated that shipping costs ARE taxed if delivery is made using your own vehicle, but are NOT taxed if using a third-party delivery service (see section **10. Are delivery and handling charges taxable?** at <http://www.boe.ca.gov/sutax/faqpurch.htm>). According to this policy, you should exclude **Federal Express, Freight101, InterShipper, United Parcel Service, and U.S. Postal Service**, while leaving taxes applicable to **Custom Shipping Rates** and **Standard Shipping Rates** (because these two methods imply delivery using your own vehicle). The list shown below is an example only – your

view may differ.

Tax Rules on Shipping Costs	
List of Shipping Methods	Save Cancel
Select Shipping Method(s) to which taxes do not apply	
Australia Post	<input type="checkbox"/>
Canada Post	<input type="checkbox"/>
Custom Shipping Rates	<input type="checkbox"/>
Federal Express	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
Standard Shipping Rates	<input type="checkbox"/>
Freight101	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
InterShipper	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
United Parcel Service	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
U.S. Postal Service	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
Save Cancel	

Tax Rules on Shipping Costs	Edit
DON'T apply taxes to shipping charges if shipping cost is calculated by this method:	
Federal Express, Freight101, InterShipper, United Parcel Service, U.S. Postal Service	

6. The section **Tax Rates. Product Tax Class - Nontaxable** should be left blank. This means that all products belonging to this tax class will not be taxed. Now, define the tax formula in the section **Tax Rates. Product Tax Class - Taxable**.

NOTE: The tax class for a product is defined when you add the product to the catalog, by using the **Tax Class** option.

To create the tax calculation formula, click the **Add** button and then enter the formula in the following window :

Taxes	
Add Tax Rate Page Help <input type="button" value="Add"/> <input type="button" value="Cancel"/>	
Product Tax Class ?	Sales Tax
Shipping/Billing Address * ?	United States <input type="button" value="v"/> California <input type="button" value="v"/>
Tax Name * ?	Sales Tax <input type="button" value="v"/> <input type="checkbox"/> Not Applicable
Rate (%) * ?	<input checked="" type="radio"/> 8.25 <input type="radio"/> Select ZIP Code Based Rates
Tax Formula * ?	Sales Tax = 8.25 % * (Sale Price + Shipping Cost - Discount) <input type="button" value="Undo"/> <input type="button" value="Clear"/>
	<input type="button" value="+"/> <input type="button" value="-"/> <input type="button" value="*"/> <input type="button" value="/"/> <input type="button" value("(")"=""/> <input type="button" value(")"=""/>
	Select Price: <input type="button" value="Discount"/> <input type="button" value="Add"/>
	Select Tax: <input type="button" value="Sales Tax"/> <input type="button" value="Add"/>
	Add Number: <input type="text"/> <input type="button" value="Add"/>
* = Required Field	
<input type="button" value="Add"/> <input type="button" value="Cancel"/>	

After you click **Add**, the section **Tax Rates. Product Tax Class - Sales Tax** will display the tax formula:

Tax Rates. Product Tax Class - Taxable		<input type="button" value="Add"/> <input type="button" value="Edit"/> <input type="button" value="Delete"/>
Address	Tax Formula	
United States	Tax = 8% * (Sale Price + Shipping Cost - Discount)	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
All other addresses are not subject to taxation		

According to this, all products of **Tax Class - Taxable** shipped within the state of **California** will be taxed based on the following formula:

Tax = 8% * (Sale Price + Shipping Cost - Discount).

IMPORTANT! This explanation is only an example, and tax values and rates may change over time. To determine the exact tax rates and tax formulas in your case, please consult your accountant.

Question: How do I configure ZIP-code-based taxes?

In Oklahoma, where I'm based, retailers must use destination-based sourcing rules to

correctly identify the local sales tax to charge on a retail sales transaction. Under the destination-based sourcing rules, sales generally are sourced to the location where the purchaser receives the item sold. Retailers who ship or deliver sold items to their customers' locations will be required to collect the local sales tax in effect where delivery is made. To calculate tax in my online store, I plan to use 5-digit zip code tax rate files available from <http://www.tax.ok.gov>. How do I configure these ZIP-based taxes?

Answer:

The Shopping Cart system allows you to calculate sales tax based on the ZIP code of the shipping address. First, go to **Store Settings >> ZIP Code Based Tax Rates** and upload a .csv file with the Oklahoma tax rates. The .csv file format is displayed on the page [Zip Code Based Tax Rates](#).

The screenshot shows the 'Store Settings >> ZIP Based Tax Rates' page. At the top, there are navigation links: Storefront, Admin, Store Settings, Help, Community Forums, and Support. Below that are tabs for Catalog, Customers, Reviews, Orders, Marketing, and Reports, along with a Sign Out button. The main content area has a title 'Store Settings >> ZIP Based Tax Rates' and a 'Page Help' link. Below the title is a table with columns: Tax Rates Description, Date Uploaded, and Number of Records. The table has one row with the following data:

Tax Rates Description	Date Uploaded	Number of Records
<u>Oklahoma Sales Tax Rates</u>	2008-12-22 14:24:47	2

Buttons for 'Add', 'Update', and 'Delete' are located to the right of the table header.

Then, as described in Answer 1, define the name, tax class and formula for this tax. When you add the tax calculation formula, select **ZIP Code Based Rates** for **Rate (%)** as shown below:

Taxes	
Add Tax Rate Page Help <input type="button" value="Add"/> <input type="button" value="Cancel"/>	
Product Tax Class ?	Sales Tax
Shipping/Billing Address * ?	United States <input type="button" value="v"/> Oklahoma <input type="button" value="v"/>
Tax Name * ?	Sales Tax <input type="button" value="v"/> <input type="checkbox"/> Not Applicable
Rate (%) * ?	<input type="radio"/> <input type="text"/> <input checked="" type="radio"/> Select ZIP Code Based Rates
Select ZIP Code Based Rates * ?	Oklahoma Sales Tax Rates <input type="button" value="v"/>
Tax Formula * ?	Sales Tax = [Oklahoma Sales Tax Rates] % * (Sale Price + Shipping Cost - Discount) <div style="text-align: right;"><input type="button" value="Undo"/> <input type="button" value="Clear"/></div> <div style="text-align: center;"> <input type="button" value="+"/> <input type="button" value="-"/> <input type="button" value="*"/> <input type="button" value="/"/> <input type="button" value("(")"=""/> <input type="button" value(")"=""/> </div> Select Price: <input type="button" value="v"/> Discount <input type="button" value="Add"/> Select Tax: <input type="button" value="v"/> Sales Tax <input type="button" value="Add"/> Add Number: <input type="text"/> <input type="button" value="Add"/>
* = Required Field	
<input type="button" value="Add"/> <input type="button" value="Cancel"/>	

After you click **Add**, the section **Tax Rates. Product Tax Class - Sales Tax** will display the tax formula:

Tax Rates. Product Tax Class - Sales Tax		<input type="button" value="Add"/> <input type="button" value="Edit"/> <input type="button" value="Delete"/>
Address	Tax Formula	
United States		<input type="checkbox"/>
Oklahoma	Sales Tax = [Oklahoma Sales Tax Rates]% * (Sale Price + Shipping Cost - Discount)	<input type="checkbox"/>
All other addresses are not subject to taxation		

Based on this, all products of **Tax Class - Taxable** shipped within the state of Oklahoma will be taxed according to the following formula:

Sales Tax = [Oklahoma Sales Tax Rates]% * (Sale Price + Shipping Cost - Discount),

where **[Oklahoma Sales Tax Rates]** will be substituted with the sales tax rate based on the ZIP code of the shipping address.

IMPORTANT! This explanation is only an example, and tax values and rates may change over time. To determine the exact tax rates and tax formulas in your case, please consult your accountant.

Question: How do I setup multi-state tax rules?

My client is required to charge tax to Kansas and Missouri residents. I have yet to find clear instructions on how this can be accomplished. How do you set up multi-state tax rules?

Answer:

At the time this document was created, sales tax within the state of Kansas are determined based on the shipping address. Retailers must use destination-based sourcing rules to correctly identify the local sales tax to charge on a retail sales transaction. Under the destination-based sourcing rules, sales generally are sourced to the location where the purchaser receives the item sold. Retailers who ship or deliver sold items to their customers' locations will be required to collect the local sales tax in effect where delivery is made. Therefore, for Kansas you should upload the ZIP-based tax rates file as explained in Answer 2, and then create a tax calculation formula for the state of Kansas.

When this document was created, current ZIP-code-based tax rates were available from the Kansas Department of Revenue website at <http://www.ksrevenue.org/5digitzip.htm>.

For Missouri, define the sales tax as explained in Answer 1.

If you want to apply a tax to a product for customers both in Kansas and in Missouri, the tax formula should look as follows:

Tax Rates. Product Tax Class - Sales Tax		Add	Edit	Delete
Address	Tax Formula			
United States				<input type="checkbox"/>
Kansas	Sales Tax = [Kansas Sales Tax Rates]% * (Sale Price + Shipping Cost - Discount)			<input type="checkbox"/>
Missouri	Sales Tax = 7.25% * (Sale Price + Shipping Cost - Discount)			<input type="checkbox"/>
All other addresses are not subject to taxation				

This means that if the product is shipped to Kansas, then the following formula is used:

Sales Tax = [Kansas Sales Tax Rates]% * (Sale Price + Shipping Cost - Discount),

where **[Kansas Sales Tax Rates]** is substituted with the sales tax rate based on the ZIP code of the shipping address in Kansas.

If this product is shipped to Missouri, then the following formula is used: **Sales Tax = 7.25% * (Sale Price + Shipping Cost - Discount).**

IMPORTANT! This explanation is only an example, and tax values and rates may change over time. To determine the exact tax rates and tax formulas in

your case, please consult your accountant.

Index

- A -

Abandonment Rates 285
 Account activation
 Administrator-activated 268
 Is not required 268
 Scheme 268
 User-activated 268
 Admin Members 179
 Admin Session Duration 181
 Advanced Settings & Configuration 181
 Application/Server Info 210
 Attribute Description 116, 118
 Attribute List 113
 Attribute Name 116, 118
 Attribute Tag 116, 118

- B -

Bestsellers 126
 Billing
 Details 152
 Info 152
 Information 152
 Method 152

- C -

Catalog
 Management 56
 Search 144
 Catalog Search 59
 Categories
 Add 122
 Bestsellers 126
 Delete 119
 Edit 119, 123
 Included Categories 119
 Info 119
 Manage 119
 Move 119
 Subcategories 119
 Subcategory ID 119

Categories and Products 56
 Category
 Attributes Descriptions 124
 Featured Products 129
 Category links ID 259
 Checkout
 Form Editor 216
 Checkout Form Editor
 Description 264
 Required 264
 Text Label 264
 Visibility 264
 Checkout Process Types 268
 Clear Cache 211
 ClixGalor 167
 Comments
 Add 152
 Countries 216, 272
 Coupons 158
 Credit Card List Editor 216, 271
 CSV file formats for Tax Rates 228
 Currency
 Exchange rates 216
 Format 216, 281
 Store Currencies 216
 Current Category 59
 Custom Attributes 113
 Customer Account Settings 268
 Customers
 E-mail 281
 Filter 281
 Login 281
 Name 281
 Not Activated 281
 Registered 281
 Search 281
 Status 281
 Total Amount Paid 281

- D -

Database Name 15
 Database Server 15
 Date and Time Format 276
 Date/Time Format 216
 Default Attributes 113
 Detailed Product Images 216
 Digital Products/E-Goods 216

Digital Products/E-Goods 216
 Link lifetime 256
 Maximum download attempts allowed 256
 Disabling Attributes 113
 Discount 82, 85
 Discounts List 157

- E -

E-Goods 82, 85
 E-mail Notifications 216
 Active 251
 Add 251
 Delete 251
 Digital Products/E-Goods 251
 Low level in stock 251
 New Customers 251
 Order Cancelled 251
 Order Completed 251
 Order Declined 251
 Order In Progress 251
 Order Ready to Ship 251
 Order Shipped 251
 Payment Declined 251
 Payment Fully Paid 251
 Payment Waiting 251
 Enable 'Remember me' 181
 Export
 Google Base (Froogle) 134
 Products 131
 Export to Excel file format 181

- F -

Featured Products 129
 Featured products per line 231

- G -

General Products 111
 General Settings 231
 Global Discounts
 Add 157
 Order Discount 157
 Order Subtotal Range 157
 Remove 157
 Google Analytics 167

- H -

HTML URLs 259

- I -

Images 82, 85
 Import
 Products 137
 Import/Export 56
 Installation Progress 15
 Invoice 152

- L -

Large Text 113
 Large Text Attribute 116
 License 211
 License Agreement 15
 License Key 15
 Location/Taxes/Localization 216

- M -

Manage Coupons and Promo Codes 158
 Manage Product Types 111
 Manage Products 59
 Manage Transaction Tracking 167
 Manufacturers 135
 memory_limit 15
 mod_rewrite 259
 Multicategories 82, 85

- N -

Newsletters 162
 Number Format 216, 277
 Number of bestsellers per line 231

- O -

Order
 Amount 152
 Cancelled 152
 Comments 152

- Order
 - Completed 152
 - Declined 152
 - In Progress 152
 - Logs 152
 - New 152
 - Ready to Ship 152
 - Shipped 152
 - Status 152
 - View 152
- Orders
 - Cancelled 150
 - Completed 150
 - Declined 150
 - Delete 150
 - In Progress 150
 - New 150
 - Ready to Ship 150
 - Search 150
 - Shipped 150
 - Status 150
 - View 150
- P -**
- Packing Slip 152
- Payment
 - Declined 152
 - Fully Paid 152
 - Method 152
 - Status 152
 - Waiting 152
- Payment Methods 216
 - Available 239
 - Selected 239
- Payment Processor 152
- Payments
 - Declined 150
 - Fully Paid 150
 - Waiting 150
- Product
 - Add 59
 - Copy 59
 - Delete 59
 - Edit 59
 - Move 59
 - Sort 59
- Product Images
 - Automatically resize image 257
 - Detailed 257
 - Main 257
 - Side length 257
 - Thumbnail side size 257
- Product links ID 259
- Product Option Display Type
 - Checkbox + Simple Input 72
 - Checkbox + Text Area 72
 - Checkbox Group 72
 - Checkbox Text 72
 - Drop-Down 72
 - Multiple Select 72
 - Radio Group 72
 - Simple Input 72
 - Text Area 72
- Product Option Type
 - Custom Input 72
 - Multiple Select 72
 - Single Select 72
- Product Options
 - Add 62, 72
 - Combinations 62, 80
 - Delete 62
 - Edit 72
 - Handling cost 72
 - Inventory Tracking 62, 72, 78
 - Name 72
 - Price 72
 - Settings 62
 - Shipping cost 72
 - Tips and Tricks 62
 - Type 72
 - Weight 72
- Product Type
 - Description 113
 - Edit 113
 - ID 113
- Product Types 56
- Products
 - Add New 82
 - Attributes Descriptions 107
 - Copy 89
 - Delete 90
 - Detailed Images 99
 - Digital Products/E-Goods 92
 - Edit 85
 - Export 131

Products
 Import 137
 in Multicategories 103
 Move 88
 Quantity Discounts 103
 Related 105
 Sort 91
 Promo Codes 158

- Q -

Quick Checkout 268

- R -

Registration information 268
 Related Products 82, 85, 105
 Related products per line 231
 Reports
 Abandonment Rate 285
 Browsers 285
 Conversion Rate 285
 Items Sold 285
 Items Viewed 285
 Reset 193
 Sales 285
 Search Engine 285
 Taxes 285
 Top 285
 Top 10 285
 Top Referrers 285
 Top Viewed Pages 285
 Visitor Statistics 285
 Visitors 285
 Web Crawlers 285

- S -

safe_mode 15
 Sales Conversation Rates 285
 Search 144
 Search Engine Optimized URLs 216, 259
 SEO 216, 259
 Settings
 Blocking Sign In to Admin Area 231
 Checkout 216
 Checkout Process 181

Coupons and Promo Codes 181
 Currency 216
 Customer Account 181, 216, 268
 Digital Products/E-Goods 216
 File Upload for Product Options 181
 First day of the week 181
 General 216
 HTTPS 212
 Miscellaneous 231
 Order Statuses for Reports 181
 Paginators in Admin Area 231
 Paginators in Storefront 231
 Quantity Discount 181
 Reports and Statistics 181
 Set up the drop-down list 231
 Shopping Cart 231
 Store Block Debug Info 181
 System Log 181
 Tax 181
 Shipping
 Details 152
 Info 152
 Information 152
 Method 152
 Shipping Methods 216
 Available 241
 Selected 241
 Shipping Settings
 Free Handling For Orders Over 241
 Free Shipping For Orders Over 241
 General 241
 Minimum Shipping Cost 241
 Per Order Handling Fee 241
 Per Order Shipping Fee 241
 Shopping Cart Installation 15
 Shopping Cart Storefront 22
 Single Line Attribute 118
 SSL 212
 States 216, 275
 Stock Control 231
 Store
 Configuration 216
 Settings 216
 Store Currencies and Exchange Rates 278
 Store Owner's Profile 216, 238
 Store status 231
 Store Time Settings 231
 Subcategories 56

Switch to Categories 59
System Logs 194

- T -

Tags Library

Category Info Tags 32
Product Info Tags 34
Shopping Cart Info Tags 37
Store Block Tags 44, 46, 49
Store Owner Info Tags 39

Tax

Allow full tax exemption 181, 225
Always display 219
Classes 219
Display if applicable 219
Display Options 219
Display product prices including taxes 181, 225
Formula 226
Name 219
Never display 219
Principles of Tax Assessment in Internet Sales
219
Rates 219
Rules on Shipping Cost 219
Settings 225

Tax Rate

Edit 226
ZIP Code Based 226

Tax Rates

ZIP Code Based 228

Taxes 216

Taxes Total 285

Text and Numbers (Single Line) 113

Top 10 Products 285

Total Amount

Paid 281

Transaction Tracking

ClixGalor 167
Google Analytics 167

- U -

URL scheme 259
US States Tax Rate Lookups 228

- W -

Weight Unit 216, 278

- Z -

ZIP Code Based Taxes 228

